



SECOND COPY,  
1899.

2nd COPY TO THE

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS.

Chap. .... Copyright No. ....

Shelf PR 1109  
.14

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.







AN INTRODUCTION TO THE  
STUDY OF LITERATURE



AN INTRODUCTION  
TO THE  
STUDY OF LITERATURE

*FOR THE USE OF  
SECONDARY AND GRADED SCHOOLS*

EDITED BY  
EDWIN HERBERT LEWIS, PH.D.  
ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR IN THE LEWIS INSTITUTE; AUTHOR OF  
"A FIRST BOOK IN WRITING ENGLISH"

New York  
THE MACMILLAN COMPANY  
LONDON: MACMILLAN & CO., LTD.

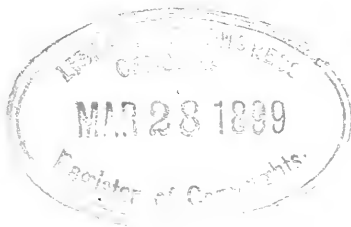
1899

*All rights reserved*

28595

COPYRIGHT, 1899,  
By THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

TWO COPIES RECEIVED.



Norwood Press  
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith  
Norwood Mass. U.S.A.

2243

1899 28 99

am p, Sept. 20, 1918  
Repr. A.M. 27 p. 30

To A. H. L.

I HAVE TRIED TO MAKE A BOOK THAT  
YOU WOULD HAVE APPROVED, HAD IT  
BEEN GIVEN ME AT FOURTEEN.

E. H. L.



## PREFACE

It would seem that literature ought to serve as a prime agency in the education of the emotions and, indirectly, of the will. This is particularly true of the early adolescent age, with which the upper grammar and the lower high school grades are concerned. If the study of English during this greatest crisis of the student's life is merely formal, he loses one of the best influences school can ever give him. To say so is not to underestimate the value, ethical or commercial, of formal training in composition. There is need for Spartan severity regarding chirography, orthography, punctuation, syntax, and logic. The task of securing correctness by Spartan methods, and, at the same time, of arousing an unconstrained love for noble literature, is the almost hopeless labor set for the English teacher. Gradgrind and enemy of Gradgrind he must be within the same hour. But there is no escaping the double duty, and no denying that the second part of it is the more important. No greater danger can beset secondary education than the notion that its true aim is merely the acquisition of instrument knowledges; but, of the twin evils resulting from the information cult, the neglect of ideals is worse than the neglect of scholarly method.

But literature is in the schools; the problem is, How should it be graded? There is no solution in following the procrustean principle of chronology. However valua-

ble an historical view of representative authors may be to the pupil of eighteen, it has little value for the younger pupil. Were the authors of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries interesting to fourteen-year-old boys and girls, the case would be different. Shakspeare interests this age, and so do very many authors of our own day; Milton and Pope and Addison usually do not. In grades eight to ten, systematic literary history is hardly a defensible subject; yet some such table as that appended to this volume may prove useful, on any indication that the student is becoming interested in the historical significance of a writer. If the instructor utilizes his chances to speak of the authors as men, the knowledge he conveys of such things as Lamb's heroism and Franklin's thrift will repay the student better than learning of Lamb's place in the Elizabethan revival, and of Franklin's relation to the English deists.

The student's *highest normal interests* are the chief things to regard in grading. It must be ascertained by what stages the imagination, the emotions, and the character develop. Imagination is strong throughout youth, but it is developed now by one interest, now by another. Emotions which are embryonic to-day are blossoming to-morrow. To discover the stages is the first task. The second is to furnish the particular masterpieces "indicated." Theoretically there is a masterpiece (written, or, alas! unwritten) for every month of the student's life. The surest way of learning where the masterpieces fit is to allow the student to "browse" in a library. Lamb and Ruskin approved this method, with limitations; for though Lamb would have all girls educated as Bridget Elia was educated, by being "turned loose in a roomful of *old books*," the phrase just quoted meant with Lamb the Elizabethan dramatists; and though Ruskin is thankful



for having been allowed the run of a library, it was a library carefully chosen by a man whose tastes were inherited by Ruskin. Various classes in the Lewis Institute have been encouraged "to browse," to see if they might not hit upon a body of literature that would remain a constant interest to their equals in age. However imperfect and incomplete these investigations, the sifting process, upon which the students entered actively and honestly, has been of the greatest value to all concerned. It has shown that noticeable differences of interest exist between ninth and tenth, tenth and eleventh grades. In the nature-sense, for instance, as it appears in the youth not hopelessly "hardened" by "business" aims, there are usually marked changes between thirteen and sixteen. The change is first from the child's scientific curiosity about nature to a half-poetic, but objective, interest in her; the boy becomes capable of direct, unreflecting joy in nature, or even of direct displeasure with her, in something of the Homeric manner; then he slowly grows to sympathize with the modern view, so much more imaginative and sometimes so much less wholesome than Homer's.

The present volume is offered as a tentative body of lyrics, ballads, and short stories, for the eighth, ninth, and even tenth grades. It draws mostly upon nineteenth-century authors. In spite of hundreds of rejections on the score of form alone, it includes pieces of very different value as to form, a fact which should never be allowed to escape the student's attention,—as it certainly will not the critic's. The works are grouped by subjects according to what are believed to be the healthy interests of the early adolescent period. An introduction is prefixed to each chapter with the aim of pointing out, not too ingeniously, a thread of meaning common to all the pieces. Although most of the hundred and fifty compositions are complete,

it is by no means supposed that short works should suffice for these years. Not later than the eighth grade the boy should doubtless become acquainted with Homer in rhythmical or metrical translation. Not later than the ninth he should doubtless be introduced to Cooper's Leatherstocking in at least one complete novel of the series. Not later than the tenth he should read a play of Shakspeare. Homer, Shakspeare, and Cooper are not only essential experiences of the youth, but by mere length compel him to consider the architectonics of art.

The present volume contains a great many poems, all of which should be read aloud, except the few (italicized in the table of contents) which are perhaps too delicate for oral interpretation by young students. Those starred are particularly good for learning by heart.<sup>1</sup> Difficult words should be pronounced by the instructor and doubtful passages orally interpreted before the pupil is asked to prepare (always overnight) the piece he is to read facing the class. It will be better still to rehearse the whole piece for the pupil before he studies it. The vigorous poems should be given to the vigorous; the swift poems to the sure of speech; the pathetic to the self-controlled; and the droll to those who are risible.

The best results will be secured with the book if it is not taken too rapidly. It will yield ample material for three hours a week of recitation for forty weeks; these weeks may be successive or may be divided into twenty for one year and twenty for another. Every precaution must be taken not to let the poetry pall, particularly in Chapters III and VI, where the emotional element is large, and wherever the didactic and artistic elements

<sup>1</sup> The songs may properly be sung, wherever good music is obtainable — like Schubert's for *Hark, hark, the lark*.

are imperfectly fused. It is assumed that the student is writing themes frequently, and perhaps on such questions as may be suggested by the notes. But he should not be allowed to lay violent hands on the poetry for topics. That is, paraphrasing and set criticisms should be discouraged. It is better for the teacher to do whatever paraphrasing is necessary for the understanding of the work, and to change the diction of the poet as little as possible. Three hours a week to the literature for its own sake, and two hours (on consecutive days) for composition, is probably a better division of time in these grades than half an hour daily to each subject.

Now a word as to the analytical parts of the book—the general introduction, the notes, and the “plans of summary.” Their perhaps overambitious purpose is to suggest a very elementary, but sound, method and vocabulary of criticism. They are here to be used or not used as every teacher thinks best. At fifteen the boy or girl persists in a certain amount of self-analysis, and perhaps a little analysis of literature may be a legitimate discharge for this impulse. Just how much of this kind of study is healthful in the eighth, ninth, and tenth grades is a question not for theorists, but for teachers. It is a question on which the experience of other teachers is entreated by the present editor. In the eighth grade it may be best to omit all the editorial matter. In the ninth it may be best to omit only the general introduction, or a part of it, or to give it after the literature has come to be liked and felt. One thing is certain, *that the analytic notes should not be studied by the student till he has read and enjoyed the piece itself.*

The editor's thanks are due to the following gentlemen, the publishers whose courtesy has made this work possible: Messrs. Charles Scribner's Sons, Messrs. Harper and

Brothers, Messrs. D. Appleton and Co., Messrs. Longmans, Green, & Co., Messrs. Little, Brown, & Co., Messrs. G. P. Putnam's Sons, Mr. John Lane, Messrs. Henry Holt and Co., Messrs. Small, Maynard, and Co., Messrs. Robert Bonner's Sons, Messrs. Doubleday and McClure Co., Messrs. The Macmillan Co. Detailed credit will be given in the proper places for permission to use the pieces printed. If any selection has been taken without securing permission from the owners, the mistake has been due to inadvertence.

In conclusion the editor must thank many friends for counsel. Particularly must he acknowledge the welcome assistance, criticism, and sympathy of his colleagues, Miss Jane L. Noble and Miss Charlotte N. Underwood, and of Director George N. Carman.

E. H. L.

CHICAGO, November 17, 1898.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE . . . . .	vii
GENERAL INTRODUCTION . . . . .	I

## CHAPTER I

### THE NOBILITY OF ANIMALS

INTRODUCTION . . . . .	14
The King of Denmark's Ride . . . . . <i>Caroline Elizabeth S. Norton</i>	18
* How they brought the Good	
News from Ghent to Aix . . . . . <i>Robert Browning</i>	20
Tray . . . . . <i>Robert Browning</i>	23
Helvellyn . . . . . <i>Sir Walter Scott</i>	25

## CHAPTER II

### THE HEROISM OF WAR

INTRODUCTION . . . . .	27
The Private of the Buffs . . . . . <i>Sir Francis Hastings Doyle</i>	34
The Charge of the Light Brigade . . . . . <i>Alfred, Lord Tennyson</i>	36
* The <i>Revenge</i> , a Ballad of the Fleet . . . . . <i>Alfred, Lord Tennyson</i>	38
The Loss of the <i>Birkenhead</i> . . . . . <i>Sir Francis Hastings Doyle</i>	45
Soldier and Sailor too (selection) . . . . . <i>Rudyard Kipling</i>	47
Midshipman Lanyon . . . . . <i>Theodore Watts-Dunton</i>	48
The Drums of the Fore and Aft (abridged) . . . . . <i>Rudyard Kipling</i>	49
Incident of the French Camp . . . . . <i>Robert Browning</i>	81
Hervé Riel . . . . . <i>Robert Browning</i>	83

	PAGE
The Deserter from the Cause . . . . . <i>Gerald Massey</i>	89
Heather Ale, a Galloway Legend . . . . . <i>Robert Louis Stevenson</i>	90
Adam of Gordon . . . . . <i>Anonymous (Folk ballad)</i>	93
A Plantation Heroine . . . . . <i>George Cary Eggleston</i>	96
<i>The Angels of Buena Vista</i> . . . . . <i>John Greenleaf Whittier</i>	98
Decoration . . . . . <i>Thomas Wentworth Higginson</i>	103
* The Burial of Sir John Moore . . . . . <i>Charles Wolfe</i>	104
* On the American Revolution (selection) . . . . . <i>William Pitt, Earl of Chatham</i>	105
* Concord Hymn . . . . . <i>Ralph Waldo Emerson</i>	107

## CHAPTER III

## THE HEROISM OF PEACE

INTRODUCTION . . . . .	109
Hannah the Quakeress . . . . . <i>Ednah Proctor Clarke</i>	117
<i>Reconciliation</i> . . . . . <i>Walt Whitman</i>	120
The Confederate Soldier after the War . . . . . <i>Henry Woodfen Grady</i>	121
The Arsenal at Springfield . . . . . <i>Henry Wadsworth Longfellow</i>	123
<i>The Three Fishers</i> . . . . . <i>Charles Kingsley</i>	125
A Sea Story . . . . . <i>Emily H. Hickey</i>	126
Patrolling Barnegat . . . . . <i>Walt Whitman</i>	127
An Incident of the Fire at Ham- burgh . . . . . <i>James Russell Lowell</i>	128
'Ware Holes . . . . . <i>A. Conan Doyle</i>	130
Enter Patient . . . . . <i>William Ernest Henley</i>	132
Operation . . . . . <i>William Ernest Henley</i>	133
In the Children's Hospital . . . . . <i>Alfred, Lord Tennyson</i>	134
<i>San Lorenzo Giustiniani's Mother</i> . . . . . <i>Alice Meynell</i>	139
Barclay of Ury . . . . . <i>John Greenleaf Whittier</i>	140
Landing of the Pilgrim Fathers in New England . . . . . <i>Felicia Browne Hemans</i>	145
The Twenty-Second of De- cember . . . . . <i>William Cullen Bryant</i>	146
* "A Man Must Live" . . . . . <i>Charlotte Perkins Stetson</i>	147
The Hero . . . . . <i>Robert Nicoll</i>	148

## CHAPTER IV

## THE ATHLETE

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	151
Swimming (from "The Two Foscari") . . . . .	<i>George Gordon Noël, Lord Byron</i> 156
The Physique of a Wood-cutter (from "The Toilers of the Field") . . . . .	<i>Richard Jefferies</i> . . . . . 157
The Runner . . . . .	<i>Walt Whitman</i> . . . . . 159
The Football Player . . . . .	<i>Edward Cracroft Lefroy</i> . . . 159
Childhood and Youth, a Contrast . . . . .	<i>Edward Cracroft Lefroy</i> . . . 160
The Great Winter (Chap. XLII of "Lorna Doone") . . . .	<i>R. D. Blackmore</i> . . . . . 161
Driven beyond Endurance (Chap. LXXIV of "Lorna Doone") . . . . .	<i>R. D. Blackmore</i> . . . . . 166
My Bath . . . . .	<i>John Stuart Blackie</i> . . . . 176
* Oh, Our Manhood's Prime Vigor (from "Saul") . . . .	<i>Robert Browning</i> . . . . . 178
The Haunted Palace . . . . .	<i>Edgar Allan Poe</i> . . . . . 179
Dialogue between Franklin and the Gout . . . . .	<i>Benjamin Franklin</i> . . . . 181
<i>The Lyra Prayer</i> . . . . .	<i>Richard Jefferies</i> . . . . . 188
<i>Sir Galahad</i> . . . . .	<i>Alfred, Lord Tennyson</i> . . . 191

## CHAPTER V

## THE ADVENTURER

INTRODUCTION . . . . .	195
The Cow-Boy (abridged) . . . .	<i>John Antrobus</i> . . . . . 198
Sand of the Desert in an Hour-Glass . . . . .	<i>Henry Wadsworth Longfellow</i> . 200
The Secret of the Sea. . . . .	<i>Henry Wadsworth Longfellow</i> . 202
The Voyage of Maeldune . . . .	<i>Alfred, Lord Tennyson</i> . . . 203
* Ulysses . . . . .	<i>Alfred, Lord Tennyson</i> . . . 211
A Meeting in the Heart of Africa (from "How I found Livingstone") . . . . .	<i>Henry Morton Stanley</i> . . . 214

## CHAPTER VI

## THE HEARTH

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	224
* The "Old, Old Song" . . . . . <i>Charles Kingsley</i>	229
Driving Home the Cows . . . . . <i>Kate Putnam Osgood</i>	230
There's Nae Luck about the House . . . . . <i>William Julius Mickle (?)</i>	232
<i>Mary-Ann's Child</i> . . . . . <i>William Barnes</i>	234
<i>David and Absalom</i> . . . . . <i>The Bible</i>	235
How's my Boy? . . . . . <i>Sydney Dobell</i>	236
The Forsaken Merman . . . . . <i>Matthew Arnold</i>	238
<i>The Toys</i> . . . . . <i>Coventry Patmore</i>	243
An Episode . . . . . <i>John Addington Symonds</i>	244
The Selling of Rhodopè (from "Rhodopè and Æsop, an Imaginary Conversation") . . . . . <i>Walter Savage Landor</i>	245
<i>The Merry Lark</i> . . . . . <i>Charles Kingsley</i>	252
Two Sons . . . . . <i>Robert Buchanan</i>	253
Sohrab and Rustum, an Episode . . . . . <i>Matthew Arnold</i>	254

## CHAPTER VII

## THE MORNING LANDSCAPE

INTRODUCTION . . . . .	283
Sympathy . . . . . <i>Thomas Ashe</i>	293
Changed Voices . . . . . <i>William Watson</i>	294
* Pippa Passes . . . . . <i>Robert Browning</i>	295
March . . . . . <i>William Wordsworth</i>	295
* I wandered Lonely as a Cloud . . . . . <i>William Wordsworth</i>	296
The Yellow Violet . . . . . <i>William Cullen Bryant</i>	297
The Rhodora . . . . . <i>Ralph Waldo Emerson</i>	298
Warble for Lilac-Time . . . . . <i>Walt Whitman</i>	299
The Crow . . . . . <i>William Canton</i>	300
* Hark, Hark, the Lark . . . . . <i>William Shakspeare</i>	301
The Lattice at Sunrise . . . . . <i>Charles Tennyson-Turner</i>	302
Dawn and Dark . . . . . <i>Norman Gale</i>	302
Sunrise on the Hills . . . . . <i>Henry Wadsworth Longfellow</i>	303



	PAGE
* My Heart Leaps up when I Behold . . . . .	<i>William Wordsworth</i> . . . . . 304
'Twas One of the Charmed Days (from "Voluntaries") . . . . .	<i>Ralph Waldo Emerson</i> . . . . . 305
June . . . . .	<i>William Cullen Bryant</i> . . . . . 305
* To the Dandelion . . . . .	<i>James Russell Lowell</i> . . . . . 307
The Humble-Bee . . . . .	<i>Ralph Waldo Emerson</i> . . . . . 309
The Humming-Bird . . . . .	<i>Emily Dickinson</i> . . . . . 311
* The Eagle, a Fragment . . . . .	<i>Alfred, Lord Tennyson</i> . . . . . 312
The Bird (from "The Queen of the Air") . . . . .	<i>John Ruskin</i> . . . . . 312
Song of the Chattahoochee . . . . .	<i>Sidney Lanier</i> . . . . . 313
The Railway Train . . . . .	<i>Emily Dickinson</i> . . . . . 315
The Sea . . . . .	<i>Barry Cornwall</i> . . . . . 316
The Shell . . . . .	<i>Alfred, Lord Tennyson</i> . . . . . 317
* Scythe Song . . . . .	<i>Andrew Lang</i> . . . . . 318
* Sweet Day, so Cool . . . . .	<i>George Herbert</i> . . . . . 319
The Death of the Flowers . . . . .	<i>William Cullen Bryant</i> . . . . . 320
November . . . . .	<i>William Cullen Bryant</i> . . . . . 321
The Snow-Storm . . . . .	<i>Ralph Waldo Emerson</i> . . . . . 322
Winter Harvests . . . . .	<i>Arthur Christopher Benson</i> . . . . . 323

## CHAPTER VIII

## THE GENTLEMAN

INTRODUCTION . . . . .	325
Of Vulgarly (Chap. VII of "Modern Painters," Vol. V, Part IX) . . . . .	<i>John Ruskin</i> . . . . . 329
The Young Montagu (from "The Praise of Chimney- Sweepers") . . . . .	<i>Charles Lamb</i> . . . . . 343
Tact . . . . .	<i>Ralph Waldo Emerson</i> . . . . . 345
Two Gentlemen at Petersburg . . . . .	<i>George Cary Eggleston</i> . . . . . 346
The Gentleman (from "The Idea of a University") . . . . .	<i>John Henry, Cardinal Newman</i> 349
A Fop . . . . .	<i>William Shakspeare</i> . . . . . 351
A Breach of Etiquette . . . . .	<i>George Cary Eggleston</i> . . . . . 353

	PAGE
Remarks concerning the Sav- ages of North America . . .	<i>Benjamin Franklin</i> . . . 355
Omâr and the Persian. . . .	<i>Sarah Williams</i> . . . 362
The Octopus of the Golden Isles	<i>Theodore Watts-Dunton</i> . . . 364
The Churl in Spirit (poem cxi from <i>In Memoriam</i> ) . . .	<i>Alfred, Lord Tennyson</i> . . . 365
The End of the Play (abridged)	<i>William Makepeace Thackeray</i> 366

## CHAPTER IX

## WIT AND HUMOR

INTRODUCTION . . . . .	370
Lamb's Salt Dips . . . . .	<i>Walter Jerrold</i> . . . 376
Mrs. Malaprop on Education for Girls . . . . .	<i>Richard Brinsley Sheridan</i> . . 378
When Moonlike ore the Hazure Seas . . . . .	<i>William Makepeace Thackeray</i> 378
Lapsus Calami . . . . .	<i>James Kenneth Stephen</i> . . 379
He is an Englishman . . . .	<i>William Schwenk Gilbert</i> . . 380
The Didactic Poem . . . . .	<i>Richard Garnett</i> . . . 380
The Height of the Ridiculous .	<i>Oliver Wendell Holmes</i> . . . 381
The Productions of Ceylon . .	<i>Sydney Smith</i> . . . 382
* The Last Leaf. . . . .	<i>Oliver Wendell Holmes</i> . . . 384

## CHAPTER X

## THE FAR GOAL

INTRODUCTION . . . . .	386
My Châteaux (selection from "Prue and I") . . . . .	<i>George William Curtis</i> . . . 391
One Grand, Sweet Song . . .	<i>Charles Kingsley</i> . . . 397
Sweet is the Rose . . . . .	<i>Edmund Spenser</i> . . . 397
Gaspar Becerra . . . . .	<i>Henry Wadsworth Longfellow</i> . 398
* Will . . . . .	<i>Alfred, Lord Tennyson</i> . . . 399
Habit (from "Principles of Psychology") . . . . .	<i>William James</i> . . . 400

# CONTENTS

xix

	PAGE
Forbearance . . . . . <i>Ralph Waldo Emerson</i> . . .	401
* Say not, the Struggle naught Availeth . . . . . <i>Arthur Hugh Clough</i> . . .	401
The Ladder of Saint Augustine <i>Henry Wadsworth Longfellow</i> .	402
To a Water-Fowl . . . . . <i>William Cullen Bryant</i> . . .	404
CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE . . . . .	406



# AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF LITERATURE

## INTRODUCTION

1. Literature is, etymologically, something written; *litera* is the Latin from which *letter* is derived. Yet it was late in the world's history that songs and stories were actually written down. Homer's poetry was the better for being tested a thousand times by audiences before any of the reciters of it (rhapsodes) thought of writing it out. In the dawn of the world there was only oral literature. To this day, old ballads, like *Adam of Gordon* (page 93), are handed down by Scotch women who can neither read nor write. The tales of Uncle Remus were literature even before Mr. Joel Chandler Harris conceived the admirable notion of giving literary form to what he had heard from the lips of illiterate negroes.

2. The songs and stories which we heard as children were literature, but we were probably unaware of the fact. In childhood we enjoy whatever appeals to us, but do not ask ourselves its scientific name, or why we like it. Nor are such questions vital. It is surely more important to enjoy a book than to know by what tricks the author makes us enjoy it. If no man ate his dinner till he understood why he liked it, the world would be a graveyard in a month. Yet in studying literature there are certain principles of appreciation which may help us in

getting the full flavor of what we read. First, then, let us ask ourselves what literature is.

3. Evidently such a question is not to be answered in a breath; yet we probably agree that literature is an art, — whatever that means. It is allied to painting, sculpture, and music. These are sometimes called the fine arts, to distinguish them from practical arts like cooking and architecture. Perhaps a better distinction would be that between higher arts and lower. Cooking is a lower art, — lower than it might be if cooks knew hygiene. Sculpture is a higher art, yet not unpractical; statues were often compelled by the Greeks to support roofs. Music is a useful art when it nerves soldiers for a righteous fight, or quiets a mob, or refines the vulgar, or puts a miser in a mood to think of eternity. Music is far from useful when it throws people into hysterical raptures and unstrings the will. Architecture is a useful art, but architecture would probably be more useful if it considered certain laws of beauty; if built of poor material and ornamented with tin cornices, a house is neither honest, useful, nor beautiful.

4. We must now define more closely what is meant by art, as applied to painting, sculpture, music, and literature. What is the chief end that these arts try to accomplish? The great artist aims at something better than tempting dishes and water-tight houses. Consider a line or two of real poetry: —

Golden lads and girls all must,  
As chimney-sweepers, come to dust.

What effect is Shakspeare trying to produce upon us? Clearly he is endeavoring to convey to us one of his personal feelings, or rather several of them. He has been thinking about one of his characters, a golden-haired woman, who, disguised as a boy, is lying unconscious in

the forest. The shepherds call her dead, and sing a dirge over her. Shakspeare is composing that song. As he looks with the shepherds upon poor Fidele,<sup>1</sup> he remembers that not all children are fair and white. The chimney sweepers, poor little imps, are both amusing and pitiful in their grime and soot. Suddenly it sadly flashes upon him, remembering his own dead child, that, golden-haired or grimy, all the children must one day turn to dust. Into his song he pours all this mixture of feeling — admiration, humor, pity, and grief. On reading, we suspect immediately that transmission of feeling is one chief function of the higher arts. We recall lines that pretended to be poetry, but that were prosy, because cold and unfeeling. To show that metre does not make poetry, Dr. Samuel Johnson improvised these verses: —

I put my hat upon my head  
And walked into the strand;  
And there I saw another man  
Whose hat was in his hand.

Here no emotion is conveyed — unless it be unintentional humor.

5. Let us see if the transmission of feeling is characteristic of the other fine arts. Certainly it is of music. Music makes us laugh, or weep, or quicken step. Something similar is true of painting. Before the Sistine Madonna the peasants shed tears, or stand in breathless awe. Sculpture, too, moves the feelings, though fewer than are reached through pictures. The statue of a Greek god awakes our admiration for the human form, and our appreciation of majestic repose. It rouses, too, a sense of awe, for it stands looking out on life to-day with the same divine steadiness it has shown for a thousand years. Evidently all artists aim at the heart. They may stir the merest quiver

<sup>1</sup> Three syllables, accent on the second.

of pleasure, regret, hope; or they may arouse the fiercest throbbings of joy, remorse, ambition.

6. Of course, with all these emotions thought is mingled, especially with those aroused by literature. Whereas music is the natural language of the heart, words are the natural language of the head. If the orchestra plays fear, you feel it at once; if the poet writes "fear," the word does not immediately move you; it is merely the idea of fear. Not until you fall to thinking on the subject, calling up the pictures of things that you fear, does literature get you to feel it. Literature therefore gives a calmer, a more thoughtful pleasure, and often a healthier pleasure, than does music. Literature is a sort of finer thinking about life, — the thinking that comes more from the heart than from the head. The poets tell us their wisest and tenderest thoughts about life.

7. It may seem unfortunate that the arts put so much weight on emotion; but only bad art makes people hysterical, or sentimental, or visionary. Good art, at least good art in reasonable quantity, never does that, for it does not forget to express all the stronger emotions that are noble, and these are the sworn enemies of the hysterical. Fine natures are bundles of feeling, though they seem outwardly calm. The coarse man does not show grief, because he does not feel it; the fine man feels it, but masters it with another emotion, — pride, faith, courage. Our sensibilities are numberless, and very few of them can receive expression; yet they are the most important part of us. Children do not think of their father as a walking volume, or a walking industry, though he may have written a profound book or built up a great business. They think of him as a person made chiefly of humor, patience, sympathy, and love. His learning is a mere adjunct to himself.



8. Obviously, our possibilities of noble feeling need development. Not to have experienced all the legitimate sensations of youth, beginning with the love of fun, the love of adventure, and the love of success, is to be uneducated. Literature is a recognized means of widening our range of feelings. How is a boy to know the hopes and fears of shipwreck but from *Crusoe* and *Jim Hawkins*? How is he to imagine the sensations of journeying to the moon, save by the help of *Verne*? Ordinary life will not invite us to dinner with the queen, or to go on secret messages after her diamonds, or to fight in armor, or to see ghosts, or to descend into the inferno. If we wish to imagine these experiences, we must turn to literature. If we are not to be content with drudgery, we must go to books for means of multiplying our imaginative pleasures. I say "imaginative" pleasures distinctly, not meaning the pleasures of information. The novel or poem that has no object except the sugaring over of useful information is usually poor stuff.

9. It is not pretended that every emotion transmitted by art is desirable. It would be a great mistake to suppose that every beautiful style embodies noble feeling. The photographer can use a lense that heightens the brutish forehead. So the novelist can disguise the bestial qualities of hatred, cruelty, cowardice, and lust, if he mixes a little courtesy with the hatred, a little wit with the cruelty, a little policy with the cowardice, a little nonsense about "wild oats" with the lust.

10. Have, then, these evil qualities no place in literature? Yes; but only in the hands of a few masters. *Shakspeare* and *Hawthorne* can show the horror of them; most writers merely succeed in presenting degrading pictures. The virus of hydrophobia will not more surely cause its victim to act like a dog, than will the memory of beauti-

ful images expressing bestial feelings degrade him who cherishes them.

11. Each time of life has its peculiar emotions. Old age has its pleasures of memory, its quiet sadness of sorrows dulled by time, and its serene hope of the future life. Middle age has its anxiety for the welfare of the young generation. Young manhood has its ambition, its sentiment, and its passion of love.

12. Perhaps we may say that the feelings normal to fourteen and fifteen are as follows: a wholesome sense of fun; a love of nature in her fresh and woodsy moods; courage, endurance, fidelity, loyalty; a reasonable sense of bodily vigor; love of adventure; a desire for practical success; aspiration, hope, perseverance, faith; a strong love of one's parents and home, if one is not treated like a child; admiration for courtesy, mercy, and heroism. All this does not mean that the youth is a saint with a formidable list of virtues. It does mean that he admires in others any manifestation of these emotions, many of which are among the noblest that human nature can feel; and that he is entirely capable of developing many of them in himself.

13. The poems and stories of this volume have been selected because they exhibit these feelings as they have appeared in actual men, or in personages of the imagination. Note that artistic exhibition is very different from preaching a moral. One can draw a moral from anything in this world, if one has the habit. Most of us are fortunately able to see the robin in the sunrise without reflecting that the early bird catches the worm. Perfect poetry, like nature, never preaches. If all the poetry in this book were perfect, there would not be a single moral, directly stated, in it. Nearly every piece included has been recommended by some hundreds of students of the age for which it is here intended. These did their best to keep out everything

unpleasantly didactic. They regret that they could not find more perfect expressions of some of the emotions, for example, those of football. The search convinced them that great poets must find it very hard to remember their boyhood. It is comparatively easy to remember one's thoughts, but it is hard, even for the poet, who recalls his emotions better than do other people, to remember feelings long since dead.

14. We have now seen that literature transmits thoughtful emotions. It does this not by stone, or pigment, or musical sounds, but by words. Yet how by words? Suppose that a dry philosopher one day feels the emotion of sadness at the thought that all things must perish. An emotion of any sort is so rare in him that he fancies his dreamy youth coming back, and sits down to express in poetry his sweet melancholy. He writes:—

Into primordial atoms, we discern,  
All sentient beings, though diverse, return.

Having proceeded at this rate for a hundred lines, he hands the fresh manuscript to his boy. Tom reads the lines respectfully, and declares them fine; but his wise old father sees that they touch no feeling whatever in Tom, except his pride at being consulted. Of course they have not. Who can weep over atoms?

15. Now suppose Master Will Shakspeare sitting at New Place, famous and lonely; famous because the queen and all her people like his plays; lonely, too, because remembering his golden-haired boy who lies in the churchyard by the river. How white that face was beneath the golden hair! not like those of the chimney-sweeps the poet had seen in London. Shakspeare feels a touch of humor at the memory of their impish black, and a touch of pity for their lives. Ah! but it will soon be

with them as it is with the golden head in the churchyard. The great man picks up his pen and goes on with the dirge he is writing, to be spoken in his new play of "Cymbeline":—

Golden lads and girls all must,  
As chimney-sweepers, come to dust,—

and here, I think, he must have laid the pen down again and gone out into the green fields; for the poet can write well of his emotions when he remembers them dimly, but not when they are choking him again. How did Shakespeare, unconsciously enough, produce, in those who heard these two lines next month at the theatre, the mingled emotions of humor, pity, and sorrow? Merely by transferring his own emotion through images. He makes us *see* the golden hair, the white skin, the impish black faces, and, lastly, the confined dust in the churchyard.

16. Let us take another example. Suppose we wish to convey a sense of the loneliness of a deserted house. If we write, "There were none of the accustomed sounds of busy life, and so all the minor noises of the deserted place were plainly audible," our sentence arouses no emotion. But when Tennyson treats the same subject, he calls up the sound-images, and produces at once the desired impression:—

All day within the dreamy house,  
The doors upon their hinges creak'd;  
The blue fly sung in the pane; the mouse  
Behind the mouldering wainscot shriek'd.

17. Sound-images and sight-images are preferred by the arts, but images of odor, touch, motion, muscular contraction, etc., are also employed. Images of odor are sometimes very effective in arousing forgotten feelings that once happened to be associated with the given odor. Thus, the

poet Owen Meredith makes the scent of a jasmine flower recall to a man his dead sweetheart:—

Oh, the faint, sweet smell of that jasmine flower!  
It made me start, and it made me cold.

18. If a poet is really great, his work is a tissue of images, though free from over-decoration. They are not merely memories of actual sights and sounds, filling his mind like tiny landscapes in a camera; some are new combinations. He sees the sky, and is about to call it "the starry sky," when it suggests to him a floor inlaid with bits of gold. Thus he enriches the reader with several impressions instead of one. The resemblances noted by the poet between different images give rise to "figures." Gazing upon the waves and listening to them, the poet sees points of resemblance to various other things: dancing children; galloping horses; a mass of beautiful hair; tears; a marching army; a turbulent mob; a symphony; laughing or moaning human voices; molten silver, or emerald, or turquoise (things that he never saw, but that he understood by combining various images). When he writes of the "dancing waves," or the "horses of Neptune," or the "waves of golden hair," or the "emerald depths," he is making "figures."<sup>1</sup> Figures, then, are compounds of images, and are made by the rare gift of seeing a resemblance where most persons fail to see it. We may call them a kind of invention.

19. Our definition has now advanced thus far: Literature is an art which transmits thoughtful emotion by images and inventions embodied in words. The word *invention*

<sup>1</sup> The two most important figures are metaphor and simile. "The wave is like a dancer" is simile, that is, the explicit statement of a resemblance between two things unlike in most respects. "The wave dances" and "the dancing wave" are metaphors. Metaphor *identifies* the two things compared.

ought to include more than figures of speech. If the artist can invent these, why may he not invent whole landscapes? The painter can take his sketches of different places, his memories of lights and lines, and by combining and rejecting can create a new landscape. So can the poet. Dreams sometimes permit ordinary persons to do the same thing, though usually there is not much reason in dream pictures. By observing many persons, the novelist is able to create a character like them all, yet different from any one of them. He wishes to draw a commercial traveller, let us say. He jots down notes of all the "drummers" he meets; by and by he compares notes and constructs a "type." What would be the details of dress and manner common to most "drummers"?

20. This making of composite photographs by the inventive imagination is not hard to understand when an imaginary landscape is the product. It is more difficult to grasp when a real person, not merely a type, seems to be created outright. The novelist sets his memory whirling, full of memories of a hundred men, and suddenly he hands you out a Crusoe or a Hamlet. The new character seems truer to life than one's own neighbors. Jim Hawkins never lived; nor Friday, nor Leatherstocking, nor Ivanhoe, nor Shylock; yet each is a strangely real unity, — entirely alive and responsible for his acts. It would puzzle Shakspeare himself to say how his character Lear came to be. We can only guess that the same inventive principle which produces figures of speech and composite landscapes is capable of creating Cordelias and Lears. Somehow that rare gift of seeing resemblances must have done the work. Newton, says some one, was the first man to see that the earth is like an apple falling toward the sun. Shakspeare was the first to see, in supremely beautiful and touching images, that he who is heartlessly self-willed is

very like a madman. Consequently, Shakspeare was the first and only man who could write the tragedy of Lear.

21. Having assured ourselves that literature is an art which transmits thoughtful emotion by language embodying images and inventions, we must ask, Should the images and the language be pleasing? We did not ask that question about emotion. We agreed that art may express any emotion, pleasant or not. We probably agree that we desire just as much beauty of style as the subject will permit. We know that, when Macbeth comes out from King Duncan's chamber, he comes a murderer; yet we like the excited poetic language in which he says:—

Here lay Duncan,  
His silver skin laced with his golden blood.

In a later act, Lady Macbeth, walking in her sleep, tries to wash the foul stains of blood from her hands. This scene rouses an extremely unpleasant feeling, but it is relieved by the beauty of Lady Macbeth's words:—

Here's the smell of the blood still: all the perfumes of Arabia will not sweeten this little hand.

Here Shakspeare has felt that he cannot give us only pleasant images, for he is portraying the mind of a murderer. He suggests the smell of blood, but tries to relieve it with the odors of Araby the blest.

22. In like manner, the very language of literature should sound as sweet as the emotion to be conveyed will permit. Without reference to what it means, it should itself be pleasant. A word like *mellow*, or *golden*, or *shadowy*, is more agreeable than one like *smash*, *recognize*, or *muggy*. The first examples are called *euphonious*, or well-sounding words; the second are called *cacophonous*, or ill-sounding. *Euphonious* is itself rather a pleasant word; *cacophonous* is as harsh as the quality it stands for.

Pick out the euphonious and the cacophonous words in the following list; never mind the meaning: *cragged, perfidious, hesperides, lovely, marble, celestial, glutton, cinnamon, ambrosia, lucent, argosies, Fez, manna, immemorial, litanies, silver, musquash, grate, martlet, tintinnabulation, croaks, billowy, Karshish, Felippa, Hakkadosh, delicate, acoustics, Magdeburg, dulcimer.*

23. Pick out the euphonious and the cacophonous combinations in the following list: *his is; as is the case; owns us as her sons; murmur of doves in immemorial elms; Dirck galloped; showery rain; vesper chime; songless lute; lute unswept; by the mirage is lifted; closing in slumbers the while; stately pleasure dome; white, white violet; silence in the atmosphere; quietly rested; drums and tramlings; molten, golden notes; the rust within their throats.*

24. From such a phrase as "myriad-starred mignonette," there is another pleasure to be had besides the presence of delicate vowels and the absence of harsh consonants. The phrase goes with a tripping rhythm, a lilt. It has four accents: "my'riad star'red mign'onette'." Rhythm is a pleasing thing to the human animal. If one leg had no chance to rest while the other took the step, walking would be as hard as convict labor. We are set to rhythm even in our heart-beats and our breathing. Now, speech depends on breath; and since breath is rhythmical, speech is rhythmical. Curiously enough, the more interested a speaker becomes in his subject the more rhythmical he becomes in speech. Emotion seems to express itself so, even in savage man.

25. The writer too finds rhythm an aid to the expression of feeling. With almost every breath he regularly pauses, thus giving us the line, or verse.<sup>1</sup> And he beats out the

<sup>1</sup>*Verse* properly means not stanza, but line. Note the force of the derivation from Latin *vertere*, "to turn," while *prose* is from Latin *prorsus*, "straight on."



line into metre, that is, into a definite number of feet, each consisting of one accented and one or more unaccented syllables. A trochaic foot, or trochee, consists of an accent followed by a rest, thus: *lovely*. If another unaccented syllable is added, we have a dactyl, thus: *merrily*. If, now, the rest precedes the accent, we get an iambus, thus: *above*; and if two unaccented syllables precede, the result is an anapest, thus: *indiscreet*. In English poetry not every line is all composed of one kind of foot, but there is in every poem a predominant foot. According to this we name the metre trochaic, iambic, dactylic, or anapestic. According to the number of accents in the line—two, three, four, five, six, or seven—we call the metre dimeter, trimeter, tetrameter, pentameter, hexameter, or heptameter. We shall find that each metre has its value; for example, iambic trimeter is a very rapid metre, while trochaic heptameter is a very slow one.

26. Our definition is now fairly complete. Literature is the art which transmits thoughtful emotion by language of pleasant sound, embodying images and inventions as pleasant as the given emotion permits. Poetry, in the ordinary sense, is that form of literature which employs metre.

## CHAPTER I

### THE NOBILITY OF ANIMALS

SCIENTISTS describe animals and classify them, sometimes cutting them up alive to be perfectly sure as to how their nerves and muscles work; but savages, children, and poets love animals. The savage is near enough to the beast not to think himself so very much the superior creature. Hiawatha talks of squirrels and birds as his brothers. Mr. Kipling's creation, the jungle-child Mowgli, understands what wild creatures say. Children get on famously with cats and dogs that are irritable toward the grown. Great artists find in the higher brutes many manlike qualities. Indeed, there are some animals so human and some men so brutal, that if the poet is properly to honor the former, he must neglect the latter. Animals have been known to die of grief on their master's grave; men have been known to grudge the time they spent at the funeral of a benefactor.

Horses and dogs are by common consent the noblest of the lower creatures, for they enter into the lives of their masters. Robert Browning has a poem which exhibits in a touching way the sympathy between the Arab and his courser. *Mulýkeh*, the Pearl, has never been beaten in speed, even by her sister *Buhýseh*. Both horses sleep in their owner's tent. One night the Pearl is stolen by a man who has in vain tried to buy or beg her. *Hóseyn* sees that the tether is cut which bound her to his ankle, and that the mare is gone. He springs on *Buhýseh* and follows like the wind. Now we see the problem: either he must lose

the Pearl or the Pearl must lose her record. Buhéyseh gains, frantic to beat her sister. The master cannot bear it. He shouts to the thief to touch the right ear and press the left flank. The Pearl hears the familiar voice and springs away beyond hope of recovery. The Arab returns, and is ridiculed by his friends. Had he kept his mouth shut, here would have been the Pearl again, the eyed like an antelope:—

“And the beaten in speed!” wept Hóseyn;  
 “You have never loved my Pearl.”

In reading of famous horseback rides we are often at loss to know which is the true hero of the hour, — the man or the animal. In Longfellow's *Ride of Paul Revere* it is the midnight message which we honor, but the poet cannot help saying that the spark struck out by that steed in his flight kindled the land into flame with its heat. In Buchanan Read's *Sheridan's Ride* the balance of praise is quite with the galloping black, although the poet hurrahs for horse and man. In O'Reilly's *Ride of Collins Grave* we forget all but the errand, — to save a town from death by flood. After reading the first two poems in this chapter, decide in each case whether the balance of honor is evenly divided or whether the horse is the hero.

The first of these two poems is by Mrs. Norton, an English poet of the last generation. The king and his thirty nobles mount in hot haste, and away they start for the castle where the king's betrothed lies dying. The nobles are beaten one by one; only the king and his little fair page win through. Even the page drops now, and the king rides in alone. His charger has strained every nerve, but it is too late. The king comes back into the courtyard. Choking with grief, he bows his head on the horse's neck.

The King  
 of Denmark's  
 Ride,  
 p. 18.

How they  
brought the  
Good News  
from Ghent  
to Aix,  
p. 20.

The second poem is by Browning. It tells of a ride made from Ghent, in the Netherlands, to Aix-la-Chapelle, in France, to bring word of the treaty, — a piece of news that, if in time, would save Aix from being burned by her own despairing citizens. Historically there was never such a ride, but the story is so magnificently told that there really ought to have been such an incident. According to Browning there were three messengers, — Joris, Dirck, and the unnamed man who tells the tale. They start at midnight and ride steadily till the next afternoon. They pass town after town, — Lokeren, Boom, Düffeld, Mecheln, Aershot, Hasselt, Looz, Tongres, Dalhem, — Dirck and Joris dropping out by the way, until at last the horse Roland gallops into Aix, and his hatless, bootless, beltless rider knows no more. When he comes to himself he is sitting on the ground, with Roland's head in his lap. He calls for wine to give the horse. Aix has used up her wine in the siege; but somehow a single last precious measure is found, and the burgesses instantly vote that it belongs to Roland.

The dog has fared in poetry almost as well as the horse. Even Homer, whose Greeks are always praising their swift steeds, introduces a dog at one of the most dramatic moments of the "Odyssey." After Ulysses has endured every manner of peril by land and sea, and managed to get back home, no one recognizes him without help except his old dog Argos. "He wagged his tail and dropped both ears, but toward his master had not strength to move." That Shakspere has little to say about dogs is perhaps due to the difficulty of introducing them on the stage. Tennyson has an old Rover — "Owd Roä" — who saves a child's life in the smoke of the burning building, and is in turn saved by his master. Telling his rescued boy how it happened, the old farmer says: —

“Sa I browt tha down, an’ I says ‘I mun  
 Gaw up ageän fur Roä.’  
 ‘Gaw up ageän fur the varmint?’  
 I tell’d ’er ‘Yeäs I mun goä.’”

Both Tennyson and Browning were bitterly opposed to vivisection — cutting into a live creature to observe the effect of drugs upon it, or to settle questions of anatomy. At times vivisection has furnished knowledge whereby human life has been saved; at other times it has been a profitless cruelty. Browning’s poem called *Tray* is an extremely sharp satire on vivisection. The poet represents himself as asking a group of friends to sing him the story of some real hero. One begins to recount a deed of Sir Olaf, the good knight; the poet cuts him short. A second starts to praise some hero not so righteous as Sir Olaf; the poet will not listen to him either. A third begins to speak of a beggar child who fell from a quay into the water. The poet is interested and attends. The bystanders on the quay did not come to the child’s assistance; their lives were too precious to their families to be risked. A dog, however, jumped in, saved the child with difficulty, and then returned for the little one’s doll, much to the amusement of the rational beings who looked on. Convinced that the second rescue was an absurd, a merely instinctive act, one bystander sent off to catch the animal and have its brain vivisectioned, to see how dog’s brain secretes dog’s soul!

Tray, p. 23

Sir Walter Scott was a great lover of animals; a list of noble dogs and horses could be made from his novels. The poem called *Helvellyn* concerns the heroism of a little terrier. Scott climbed the great mountain Helvellyn, in the English lake region, — how well the present writer remembers doing the same thing because Sir Walter wrote this poem, — and saw the place where, in 1805, a young man perished, and where, three months later, his body

Helvellyn,  
 p. 25.

was found, guarded by the faithful dog. They have raised a cairn of stones on the spot now; but Wordsworth's poem *Fidelity* and Scott's *Helvellyn* are the lasting memorials of that dumb hero.

## THE KING OF DENMARK'S RIDE

CAROLINE ELIZABETH S. NORTON

Word was brought to the Danish king

(Hurry!)

That the love of his heart lay suffering,

And pin'd for the comfort his voice would bring;

(Oh! ride as though you were flying!)

5

Better he loves each golden curl

On the brow of that Scandinavian girl

Than his rich crown jewels of ruby and pearl;

And his rose of the isles is dying!

Thirty nobles saddled with speed,

10

(Hurry!)

Each one mounting a gallant steed

Which he kept for battle and days of need;

(Oh! ride as though you were flying!)

2. Does *Hurry* rhyme with any word? Does it increase the speed of the poem? 3. Ordinarily where do you accent *suffering*? What two accents fall on this word in the poem? It is not good poetic art to force an unnatural accent upon a word. 5. This line closes without an accent. Such a line is said to have a feminine ending. In lines 5 and 9 do the feminine endings hasten or retard the motion of the poem? 9. Having read the stanza aloud, do you find the metre rapid enough to suggest a swift ride? 10. Note where the accents fall: Thirty nobles saddled with speed. Let us mark the unaccented syllables thus ∨. Then we have: Thirtȳ noblēs sáddlēd with spēd. Take your pencil and mark all the accented and unaccented syllables in the second stanza. You will find four accents to the line, and will recognize the metre as tetrameter (see page 13).

Spurs were struck in the foaming flank; 15  
Worn-out chargers stagger'd and sank;  
Bridles were slacken'd, and girths were burst;  
But ride as they would, the king rode first,  
For his rose of the isles lay dying!

His nobles are beaten, one by one; 20  
(Hurry!)

They have fainted, and falter'd, and homeward gone;  
His little fair page now follows alone,  
For strength and for courage trying.

The king look'd back at that faithful child; 25  
Wan was the face that answering smil'd;  
They passed the drawbridge with clattering din,  
Then he dropp'd; and only the king rode in  
Where his rose of the isles lay dying!

The king blew a blast on his bugle horn; 30  
(Silence!)

No answer came; but faint and forlorn  
An echo return'd on the cold gray morn,  
Like the breath of a spirit sighing.

The castle portal stood grimly wide; 35  
None welcom'd the king from that weary ride;  
For dead, in the light of the dawning day,  
The pale sweet form of the welcomer lay,  
Who had yearn'd for his voice while dying!

The panting steed, with a drooping crest, 40  
Stood weary.

The king return'd from her chamber of rest,  
The thick sobs choking in his breast;  
And, that dumb companion eying,

The tears gush'd forth which he strove to check; 45  
 He bowed his head on his charger's neck:  
 "O steed — that every nerve didst strain,  
 Dear steed, our ride hath been in vain  
 To the halls where my love lay dying!"

45. What trait of the king? In a few words sketch the character of the king as you now know it.

Has the poem unity — is all about one event? Has it climax — that is, does it become steadily more interesting? Is it clear, easy to understand? Has it a good deal of force — that is, does it stir the feelings? Do you learn anything about the horse except that it was swift and sympathetic?

## HOW THEY BROUGHT THE GOOD NEWS FROM GHENT TO AIX

ROBERT BROWNING

I sprang to the stirrup, and Joris, and he;  
 I galloped, Dirck galloped, we galloped all three;  
 "Good speed!" cried the watch, as the gate-bolts undrew;  
 "Speed!" echoed the wall to us galloping through;  
 Behind shut the postern, the lights sank to rest, 5  
 And into the midnight we galloped abreast.

Not a word to each other; we kept the great pace  
 Neck by neck, stride by stride, never changing our place;  
 I turned in my saddle and made its girths tight,

1. Name the metre according to the number of accents (see p. 13).
2. Does this line suggest a gallop? Would it be more like a gallop if, instead of *Dirck*, the word were *and*? Mark the accented and unaccented syllables in this line; it begins with an accented syllable. Turn back to the first stanza of Mrs. Norton's poem and see if any lines begin with an unaccented syllable. Which of the two poems is the more suggestive of a gallop? 8. Why is this line difficult to say rapidly? When said rapidly and well, does it help or hinder our getting the poet's thought?



Then shortened each stirrup, and set the pique right, 10  
 Rebuckled the cheek-strap, chained slacker the bit,  
 Nor galloped less steadily Roland a whit.

'Twas moonset at starting; but while we drew near  
 Lokeren, the cocks crew and twilight dawned clear;  
 At Boom, a great yellow star came out to see; 15  
 At Düffeld, 'twas morning as plain as could be;  
 And from Mecheln church-steeple we heard the half-chime,  
 So, Joris broke silence with, "Yet there is time!"

At Aershot, up leaped of a sudden the sun,  
 And against him the cattle stood black every one, 20  
 To stare thro' the mist at us galloping past,  
 And I saw my stout galloper Roland at last,  
 With resolute shoulders, each butting away  
 The haze, as some bluff river headland its spray:

And his low head and crest, just one sharp ear bent back 25  
 For my voice, and the other pricked out on his track;  
 And one eye's black intelligence, — ever that glance  
 O'er its white edge at me, his own master, askance!  
 And the thick heavy spume-flakes which aye and anon  
 His fierce lips shook upwards in galloping on. 30

By Hasselt, Dirck groaned; and cried Joris, "Stay spur!  
 Your Roos galloped bravely, the fault's not in her,  
 We'll remember at Aix" — for one heard the quick wheeze

11. Hard or easy to pronounce? Was the action itself hard or easy?

12. Hard or easy to pronounce? Do lines 11 and 12 make a good contrast between the horse's action and the man's? 25-30. Would not these lines be more pleasant to the ear if there were fewer monosyllables and more such polysyllables as *steadily*, *resolute*, *galloper*, *galloping*, *Joris*, *yellow*, *shoulders*?

Of her chest, saw the stretch'd neck and staggering knees,  
And sunk tail, and horrible heave of the flank, 35  
As down on her haunches she shudder'd and sank.

So, we were left galloping, Joris and I,  
Past Looz and past Tongres, no cloud in the sky;  
The broad sun above laugh'd a pitiless laugh,  
'Neath our feet broke the brittle bright stubble like chaff; 40  
Till over by Dalhem a dome-spire sprang white,  
And "Gallop," gasped Joris, "for Aix is in sight!

"How they'll greet us!" — and all in a moment his roan  
Roll'd neck and croup over, lay dead as a stone;  
And there was my Roland to bear the whole weight 45  
Of the news which alone could save Aix from her fate,  
With his nostrils like pits full of blood to the brim,  
And with circles of red for his eye-sockets' rim.

Then I cast loose my buffcoat, each holster let fall,  
Shook off both my jack-boots, let go belt and all, 50  
Stood up in the stirrup, lean'd, patted his ear,  
Call'd my Roland his pet name, my horse without peer;  
Clapp'd my hands, laugh'd and sang, any noise, bad or  
good,  
Till at length into Aix Roland gallop'd and stood.

And all I remember is, friends flocking round 55  
As I sat with his head 'twixt my knees on the ground;  
And no voice but was praising this Roland of mine,

34-36. Do these lines suggest by their movement the action of the horse? 37-42. Compare this stanza in speed with that beginning at line 25. 43-44. Do these lines suggest the fall of the horse? 49-54. Which is the quickest line? Why?

Having read the poem, say whatever you can concerning the character of Roland, quoting every word on which you base your inferences. Has the poem unity? climax? clearness? force?

As I pour'd down his throat our last measure of wine,  
 Which, the burgesses voted by common consent, 59  
 Was no more than his due who brought good news from  
 Ghent.

## TRAY

ROBERT BROWNING

Sing me a hero! Quench my thirst  
 Of soul, ye bards!

Quoth Bard the first:

"Sir Olaf, the good knight, did don  
 His helm and eke his habergeon" . . .  
 Sir Olaf and his bard —— !

"That sin-scathed brow" (quoth Bard the second),  
 "That eye wide ope as though Fate beckoned  
 My hero to some steep, beneath  
 Which precipice smiled tempting death" . . . 10  
 You too without your host have reckoned!

"A beggar-child" (let's hear this third!)  
 "Sat on a quay's edge: like a bird  
 Sang to herself at careless play,  
 And fell into the stream. 'Dismay! 15  
 Help, you the standers-by!' None stirred.

"Bystanders reason, think of wives  
 And children ere they risk their lives.  
 Over the balustrade has bounced  
 A mere instinctive dog, and pounced 20  
 Plumb on the prize. 'How well he dives!

1-3. Whose words? 5. *habergeon*, a coat of mail (*hab'erjon*).  
 15. 'Dismay! Help, you the standers-by!' The Third Bard is exclaiming  
 this as he thinks of the scene.

“Up he comes with the child, see, tight  
 In mouth, alive too, clutched from quite  
 A depth of ten feet — twelve, I bet!  
 Good dog! What, off again? There’s yet  
 Another child to save? All right!

25

“How strange we saw no other fall!  
 It’s instinct in the animal.  
 Good dog! But he’s a long while under:  
 If he got drowned I should not wonder —  
 Strong current, that against the wall!

30

“Here he comes, holds in mouth this time  
 — What may the thing be? Well, that’s prime!  
 Now, did you ever? Reason reigns  
 In man alone, since all Tray’s pains  
 Have fished — the child’s doll from the slime!’

35

“And so, amid the laughter gay,  
 Trotted my hero off, — old Tray, —  
 Till somebody, prerogated  
 With reason, reasoned: ‘Why he dived,  
 His brain would show us, I should say.

40

“John, go and catch — or, if needs be,  
 Purchase — that animal for me!  
 By vivisection, at expense  
 Of half an hour and eighteenpence,  
 How brain secretes dog’s soul, we’ll see!’ ”

45

39. *prerogated with reason* — privileged (to say so and so).

Having read the poem, do you find the metre smooth and flowing, or abrupt and difficult? Name it according to number of accents (see p. 13). Has the poem unity? climax? perfect clearness? force?

## HELVELLYN

SIR WALTER SCOTT

I climb'd the dark brow of the mighty Helvellyn,  
 Lakes and mountains beneath me gleam'd misty and  
 wide;

All was still, save by fits, when the eagle was yelling,  
 And starting around me the echoes replied.

On the right, Striden-edge round the Redtarn was bending,  
 And Catchedicam its left verge was defending. 6

One huge nameless rock in the front was ascending,  
 When I mark'd the sad spot where the wanderer had died.

Dark green was that spot 'mid the brown mountain-heather,  
 Where the Pilgrim of Nature lay stretch'd in decay, 10  
 Like the corpse of an outcast abandoned to weather,  
 Till the mountain winds wasted the tenantless clay.

Nor yet quite deserted, though lonely extended,  
 For, faithful in death, his mute favorite attended,  
 The much-loved remains of her master defended, 15  
 And chased the hill-fox and the raven away.

How long didst thou think that his silence was slumber?  
 When the wind waved his garment, how oft didst thou  
 start?

How many long days and long weeks didst thou number,  
 Ere he faded before thee, the friend of thy heart? 20  
 And oh! was it meet, that — no requiem read o'er him —

1. Trimeter, tetrameter, pentameter, hexameter, or heptameter? 2. Masculine or feminine ending? 3. A very bad rhyme. 5. Masculine or feminine ending? 8. Is the variety of endings in this stanza pleasant? 10. *Pilgrim of Nature* evidently means that the young man who was lost had been in the habit of taking solitary rambles to study nature.

No mother to weep, and no friend to deplore him,  
 And thou, little guardian, alone stretch'd before him —  
 Unhonor'd the Pilgrim from life should depart?

When a Prince to the fate of the Peasant has yielded, 25  
 The tapestry waves dark round the dim-lighted hall;  
 With scutcheons of silver the coffin is shielded,  
 And pages stand mute by the canopied pall:  
 Through the courts, at deep midnight, the torches are  
 gleaming;  
 In the proudly-arch'd chapel the banners are beaming, 30  
 Far adown the long aisle sacred music is streaming,  
 Lamenting a Chief of the people should fall.

But meeter for thee, gentle lover of nature,  
 To lay down thy head like the meek mountain lamb,  
 When, wilder'd, he drops from some cliff huge in stature,  
 And draws his last sob by the side of his dam. 36  
 And more stately thy couch by this desert lake lying,  
 Thy obsequies sung by the gray plover flying,  
 With one faithful friend but to witness thy dying,  
 In the arms of Helvellyn and Catchedicam. 40

35. *wilder'd*, bewildered. *Stature*, *nature*, an imperfect, but not unpleasant rhyme.

Enumerate the sounds suggested in this poem. What two pictures does Scott contrast?

---

**Plan of Summary.** — Reviewing the chapter, (1) enumerate the kinds of metre, naming them merely by the number of accents in the line. Then (2) say which poem is most noticeable for melody; (3) which for beauty of suggested sights; (4) which for pleasure of suggested sounds; (5) which for pleasure of suggested activity; (6) which is most easily understood; (7) which moves the reader most deeply; (8) which shows most skill in character drawing; (9) which, your critical judgment tells you, is the best piece of work; (10) which you like the best, — without regard to its deserved rank, or its fame.

## CHAPTER II

### THE HEROISM OF WAR

WHETHER righteous or unrighteous, every war is a terrible thing. The boy dreams of it, is haunted by the thought of it, dreads it. He imagines himself leading forlorn hopes, sustaining hideous wounds, or meeting death with fortitude ; but he thanks his stars when he remembers that he is not yet called to arms. It is therefore extraordinary that, when war actually breaks out, boys are not slow to enlist. They become different persons. Reserve powers, that not even they suspected, have been called out. Yesterday they thought death the most horrible thing in the world ; to-day they regard it as an incident. Suppose they die ; they will do their duty first. If they cannot control death, they will defy him ; put them in a hopeless fight, and they will sell their lives as dearly as possible. This defiance of the uncontrollable we call sublimity of character.

Emerson's lines beginning, "In an Age of Fops and Toys," remind us that a possibility of the sublime is in every boy.

So nigh is grandeur to our dust,  
So near is God to man,  
When Duty whispers low, *Thou must*,  
The Youth replies, *I can*.

This was often demonstrated in 1860, in the case of tender boys who, as Emerson elsewhere puts it, "had never encountered any rougher play than a baseball match."

Once in the war, the youth has no lack of chances to live the same first experience over. One day he is a common-

The  
Private of  
the Buffs,  
p. 34.

place soldier, the next, a hero. Perhaps he is anything but the educated and refined youth of Emerson's thought, and yet have splendid possibilities. The British soldier, as Mr. Kipling has shown him to us, is rather a rough piece of humanity, even when he is fighting for "The Widow." The first poem in this chapter, by Sir Francis Doyle, exhibits exactly this kind of fellow, poor, reckless, rude, low-born, untaught, who last night jested, quaffed, and swore, but who to-day would not flinch, though torn limb from limb. He dies like a Spartan, for his soul is great.

He probably would deny that he is brave. Emerson writes as follows in his essay on *Courage* :—

"I knew a young soldier who died in the early campaign, who confided to his sister that he had made up his mind to volunteer for the war. 'I have not,' he said, 'any proper courage, but I shall never let any one find it out.' And he had accustomed himself always to go into whatever place of danger, and do whatever he was afraid to do, setting a dogged resolution to resist this natural infirmity."

The  
Charge of  
the Light  
Brigade,  
p. 36.

If the young soldier must fight, he prefers to charge. When elbow touches elbow in a double-quick, or stirrup grazes stirrup in a gallop, then nobody stops to reckon the chances of coming out alive. Mr. Edmund Clarence Stedman and the late Lord Tennyson have celebrated the glorious rush of the cavalry charge. The incident of the latter's poem is historic, belonging to the Crimean War, where dogged English met savage Russians. Six hundred British horsemen charged what was practically an army; a few came back.

The  
*Revenge*,  
p. 38.

The English soldier is good at this kind of thing. He has no serious objection to fighting against a few odds, and he is said not to know when he is beaten. A braver deed than the charge of the light brigade was the attack made by a single English ship, the *Revenge*, on fifty-three galleons of



the Spanish Armada. Sir Walter Raleigh, a cousin of Sir Richard Grenville, who commanded the *Revenge*, has a fine prose account of the exploit, and Tennyson, keeping very close to the facts, has written on the same subject one of the best of war ballads. It seems that when the Spaniards were reported to Sir Richard at Flores, in the Azores, there were five other English ships with him, under command of Lord Thomas Howard. This gentleman had the reputation of a brave soldier, but he was no Grenville; so he got away with his five ships, to mend them for a battle. Grenville, delaying to bring his sick aboard, could not escape meeting the enemy. He made straight at the galleons, fought them for a day and a night, sank some and shattered many, and yielded only when wounded to the death.

Fighting is not the only duty of war. Sometimes it is a soldier's business to stand very still and be shot at. Sometimes it is to bear privation or disease gracefully. Sometimes it is to wait for months for reënforcements, as Gordon waited at Khartoum, only to lose his life by his government's delay. Waiting to be rescued is not always blessed by such relief as came to the British soldiers shut up in Lucknow. Robert Lowell and Whittier have both sung that story, with its honorable mention of the Highland girl whose keen ear caught the sound of the Highland pipes before any one else in that despairing garrison could hear them. Sometimes it is a soldier's business to die as those of the *Birkenhead* died, whom Sir Francis Doyle has commemorated. The *Birkenhead* went on the rocks of the African coast, in 1852. Five hundred persons — soldiers and their families — were on board, besides the crew. The water was full of sharks. The soldiers were marshalled on deck and stood at attention while the women and children were carried ashore in the boats. The ship did not hold

The Loss of  
the *Birkenhead*, p. 45.

together long, but when she keeled over and went down, nearly all the soldiers were still standing at attention.

This "disciplined heroism," as Lowell termed it, has come to be called "the Birkenhead drill." When the magnificent new battleship *Victoria* capsized, a few years ago, the Birkenhead drill was easily enforced. Admiral, officers, and marines went down together. Mr. Kipling wrote a dialect poem celebrating the behavior of the marines on this occasion, and Mr. Watts-Dunton made a noble sonnet on the conduct of two officers, one of the highest rank in the service, the other of the lowest, who stood shoulder to shoulder at the wheel.

Soldier and  
Sailor Too,  
p. 47.

Midship-  
man Lan-  
yon, p. 48.

The Drums  
of the Fore  
and Aft,  
p. 49.

Such deeds as these tax the courage of the bravest, but it must be remembered that one ship is not one man. Courage is contagious. Probably it is easier to die with many than venture alone against a few. Even the superb exploit of rallying an army by the sound of fife and drum, an exploit achieved by the two boys in Mr. Kipling's story, would hardly have been dared by one alone. There is nothing in fiction more stirring than the account of how these fourteen-year-old gamins, the very scourgings of the street, watched with disgust the flight of their regiment before the terrible Afghan knives, and then sallied out across an exposed valley, within easy range of hundreds of Martinis, to see if their discordant little strains of music might not save the day. That music did save the day, though both drummers had to seal the bargain with their lives. Into this act there entered several elements: first, the inborn heroic courage which distinguished these little martyrs; then the pride and confidence that grows out of comradeship; and lastly, I regret to say, the fumes of a certain amount of canteen rum. Lonely and fine as this bravery was, Browning's *Incident of the French Camp* exploits a lonelier and finer bravery as it appeared in a boy of the

'Incident of  
the French  
Camp,  
p. 81.

Napoleonic wars. He rode alone on a dangerous mission to acquaint the emperor with the fall of Ratisbon, an important post of the enemy. He made his report in erect military fashion, and the despondent Napoleon was instantly encouraged in his plans—they soared up again like fire. But presently the keen eye of the great man perceived that the lad was hurt. “You’re wounded!” “Nay, I’m killed, sire,” replied the proud boy, as he fell at his emperor’s feet.

The last poem by Browning in this chapter indicates the worth of the unassuming hero, and the many kinds of skillful individual service required in war. In the English war with the French, 1692, a French squadron was almost chased ashore at Saint-Malo. It begged for harbor, but the pilots of the place declared that ships of such burthen could not clear the rocks at the narrow river mouth. In this dilemma a simple Breton sailor, Hervé Riel, offered to get the squadron safely in or forfeit his head. The commander, Damfreville, let him try. Riel saved the twenty-two ships, and would take no other reward than release from the service for the rest of his life. Browning, who likes to sharpen dramatic effects, makes him ask and get nothing but a single holiday.

Hervé  
Riel, p. 83

It is fine to see what a high sense of loyalty is developed in war. At the very time when camp and field are ruining many of the soldiers, turning them into cruel, profane, and drunken brutes, the sense of duty to the flag is the last quality of character to degenerate. A deserter is a rare thing, whether in an Anglo-Saxon or in a Spanish army. Mr. Gerald Massey makes use of the soldier’s hatred for desertion to exhibit the detestable quality of a deserter from any cause.

The  
Deserter  
from the  
Cause,  
p. 89.

In the account of the Birkenhead we had a story of passive heroism, noble endurance. Two poems in this chapter

Heather  
Ale, p. 90.

exhibit endurance unhelped by the stimulus of comradeship. The old man in Stevenson's ballad refuses to disclose to the enemy the secret of the famous ale, though they slay his son and torture him. Pretending that he hesitates to debase himself before his son by treacherously giving up the secret, he advises the enemy to drown the boy. When this is done he stifles his paternal anguish, and declares that he feared the boy's ability to keep the secret. The child is silent forever, and torture of the father will be in vain. Adam Gordon's lady, in the folk ballad, gives her own life and those of her bairns rather than surrender the castle to her husband's enemy. The passive heroism of woman is greater than that of man. Woman is timid in little matters, but intrepid in great.<sup>1</sup>

Adam of  
Gordon,  
p. 93.

A Plan-  
tation  
Heroine,  
p. 96.

Decora-  
tion, p. 103.

Women are as brave in war time in our own century as they ever were in the past. Mr. Eggleston, once a Confederate soldier, tells how women starved themselves to furnish food for the Confederate army. Mr. Higginson, once a Union soldier, declares that she who, staying uncomplainingly at home, sent her husband and sons to war, was the bravest of the brave. The courage of the army nurse, who faces pestilence and death, has been sung again and again. Longfellow, among other poets, wrote of Florence Nightingale, whose shadow the soldiers kissed. Whittier sang of the Mexican women who worked on the field of Buena Vista. In his note on the subject he says: "A letter-writer from Mexico states that, at the terrible fight of Buena Vista, Mexican women were seen hovering near the field of death, for the purpose of giving aid and

The Angels  
of Buena  
Vista, p. 98.

<sup>1</sup> When the ill-fated French liner, the *Bourgogne*, went down, July 4, 1898, one woman was saved; nearly two hundred men saved themselves. Of the scores of women who were left to drown, two were members of the Lewis Institute, — Miss Evelyn Reeves, one of the faculty, and Miss Frances Hess, a student-teacher. All the survivors admitted that the women behaved very calmly and bravely.

succor to the wounded. One poor woman was found surrounded by the maimed and suffering of both armies, ministering to the wants of Americans as well as Mexicans, with impartial tenderness."

There is something inexpressibly sad in a soldier's burial in a foreign land. He has fought for his country and his family, but these are denied the consolation of burying him. Tennyson, grieving for his friend Arthur Hallam, the wonderful youth who died at twenty-three, is partly consoled when the ship brings Arthur home:—

'Tis well; 'tis something; we may stand  
Where he in English earth is laid,  
And from his ashes may be made  
The violet of his native land.

But it is rarely thus with the soldier or the sailor. The one, like Sir John Moore, of whose sad fate in Spain Charles Wolfe wrote, is buried darkly at dead of night, and left alone, afar. The other's

The Burial  
of Sir John  
Moore,  
p. 104.

heavy-shotted hammock-shroud  
Drops in his vast and wandering grave.

Tears for such a death cannot be too bitter if the cause the soldier fought for was unrighteous. But the soldier of a good cause cannot be killed. His body may moulder, but his soul goes marching on. A thousand will rally to the flag he tried to protect. When America was forced to free herself from England, there were two Englands, one of George the Third and one of Chatham. The second of these was the sane England, and Chatham told the truth when he shouted, "You cannot, my lords, you *cannot* conquer America." It is a pity that the British regulars had to die for the first of these two Englands. Lowell, standing beside the grave of a British soldier, at Concord, reflects thus:—

The  
American  
Revolution  
p. 105.

These men were brave enough, and true  
 To the hired soldier's bull-dog creed;  
 What brought them here they never knew,  
 They fought as suits the English breed;  
 They came three thousand miles, and died,  
 To keep the Past upon its throne;  
 Unheard, beyond the ocean tide,  
 Their English mother made her moan.

Concord  
 Hymn,  
 p. 107.

But the king and Lord North did not hear the shot, which, Emerson tells us, was heard round the world. They did not understand that embattled farmers, fighting anywhere for their homes and justice, will dare to die and leave their children free. Strangely enough, the English whose grandfathers belonged to the side of Lord North could not understand, before 1865, that Americans have something more than dollars to fight for. Says Lowell, in his delightful essay, *On a Certain Condescension in Foreigners*: "Till after our Civil War it never seemed to enter the head of any foreigner, especially of an Englishman, that an American had what could be called a country, except as a place to eat, sleep, and trade in. Then it seemed to strike them suddenly. 'By Jove, you know, fellahs don't fight like that for a shop-till!' No, I rather think not."

## THE PRIVATE OF THE BUFFS

SIR FRANCIS HASTINGS DOYLE

Last night, among his fellow-roughs,  
 He jested, quaff'd, and swore :  
 A drunken private of the Buffs,  
 Who never look'd before.

To-day, beneath the foeman's frown, 5  
 He stands in Elgin's place,  
 Ambassador from Britain's crown,  
 And type of all her race.

Poor, reckless, rude, low-born, untaught,  
 Bewilder'd, and alone, 10  
 A heart, with English instinct fraught,  
 He yet can call his own.  
 Ay, tear his body limb from limb,  
 Bring cord, or axe, or flame ;  
 He only knows, that not through him 15  
 Shall England come to shame.

Far Kentish hop-fields round him seem'd,  
 Like dreams, to come and go ;  
 Bright leagues of cherry-blossom gleam'd,  
 One sheet of living snow ; 20  
 The smoke, above his father's door,  
 In gray soft eddyings hung :  
 Must he then watch it rise no more,  
 Doom'd by himself, so young?

Yes, honor calls ! — with strength like steel 25  
 He put the vision by.  
 Let dusky Indians whine and kneel ;  
 An English lad must die.

Note the metre : there are eight syllables in the line, with four accents. That gives four feet, thus:  $\cup' | \cup' | \cup' | \cup' |$ . In each foot the unaccented syllable comes first, and the foot is therefore an iambus (see p. 13). The verses are alternately iambic tetrameter and iambic trimeter.

Note the rhyme-scheme ; it may be marked algebraically thus : a b a b, c d c d.

6. Lord Elgin (the *g* is hard) was a famous English ambassador. 16. In a few words describe the physical appearance and bearing of the hero from what you have thus far read. 24. Does this third stanza contain any suggestion of sounds? What colors are there in the soft Kentish landscape?

And thus, with eyes that would not shrink,  
 With knee to man unbent, 30  
 Unflinching on its dreadful brink,  
 To his red grave he went.

Vain, mightiest fleets, of iron fram'd;  
 Vain, those all-shattering guns;  
 Unless proud England keep, untam'd, 35  
 The strong heart of her sons.  
 So, let his name through Europe ring —  
 A man of mean estate,  
 Who died, as firm as Sparta's king,  
 Because his soul was great. 40

32. What is the strongest adjective in the fourth stanza?

Select from the entire poem all the words that appeal to the sense of muscular tension. Which of the following adjectives best describes the tone of the poem — vigorous, pleasing, rugged, stirring, charming?

## THE CHARGE OF THE LIGHT BRIGADE

ALFRED, LORD TENNYSON

Half a league, half a league,  
 Half a league onward,  
 All in the valley of Death  
 Rode the six hundred.  
 "Forward, the Light Brigade!" 5  
 Charge for the guns!" he said:  
 Into the valley of Death  
 Rode the six hundred.

1. Dimeter, trimeter, tetrameter, pentameter, hexameter, or heptameter?  
 Trochaic or dactylic? (See p. 13.)



“Forward, the Light Brigade!”

Was there a man dismay'd? 10

Not tho' the soldier knew

Some one had blunder'd:

Theirs not to make reply,

Theirs not to reason why,

Theirs but to do and die: 15

Into the valley of Death

Rode the six hundred.

Cannon to right of them,

Cannon to left of them,

Cannon in front of them 20

Volley'd and thunder'd;

Storm'd at with shot and shell,

Boldly they rode and well,

Into the jaws of Death,

Into the mouth of Hell 25

Rode the six hundred.

Flash'd all their sabres bare,

Flash'd as they turn'd in air

Sabring the gunners there,

Charging an army, while 30

All the world wonder'd:

Plunged in the battery-smoke

Right thro' the line they broke;

Cossack and Russian

Reel'd from the sabre-stroke 35

Shatter'd and sunder'd.

Then they rode back, but not —

Not the six hundred.

14-16, 19-21, 27-29, 39-41, 53-54. Are the repetitions pleasing? Do they hasten the movement? 34-36. Why does this stanza have extra lines?

Cannon to right of them,  
 Cannon to left of them, 40  
 Cannon behind them  
     Volley'd and thunder'd;  
 Storm'd at with shot and shell,  
 While horse and hero fell,  
 They that had fought so well 45  
 Came thro' the jaws of Death,  
 Back from the mouth of Hell,  
 All that was left of them,  
     Left of six hundred.  
  
 When can their glory fade? 50  
 O the wild charge they made!  
     All the world wonder'd.  
 Honor the charge they made!  
 Honor the Light Brigade,  
     Noble six hundred. 55

### THE REVENGE

#### A BALLAD OF THE FLEET

ALFRED, LORD TENNYSON

#### I

At Flores in the Azores Sir Richard Grenville lay,  
 And a pinnacle, like a flutter'd bird, came flying from far  
     away:

“Spanish ships of war at sea! we have sighted fifty-three!”

1. Dimeter, trimeter, tetrameter, pentameter, hexameter, or heptameter? What is the predominant foot? (See p. 13.) 1. *Flores* has two syllables.  
 2. *Pinnacle*, here a sailboat. 3, 4, 5, 6, etc. Note the rhyme in the middle of the line—medial rhyme. In reading, pause a bit after each rhyme. What unpleasant effect would be given if the half-lines were printed as lines? Note that we enjoy these rhymes in poetry, though spoken by sailors, whereas we should laugh at them in real conversation.

Then sware Lord Thomas Howard: "'Fore God I am no  
 coward;  
 But I can not meet them here, for my ships are out of  
 gear, 5  
 And the half my men are sick. I must fly, but follow quick.  
 We are six ships of the line; can we fight with fifty-three?"

## II

Then spake Sir Richard Grenville: "I know you are no  
 coward;  
 You fly them for a moment to fight with them again.  
 But I've ninety men and more that are lying sick ashore. 10  
 I should count myself the coward if I left them, my Lord  
 Howard,  
 To these Inquisition dogs and the devildoms of Spain."

## III

So Lord Howard past away with five ships of war that day,  
 Till he melted like a cloud in the silent summer heaven;  
 But Sir Richard bore in hand all his sick men from the  
 land 15  
 Very carefully and slow,  
 Men of Bideford in Devon,  
 And we laid them on the ballast down below;  
 For we brought them all aboard,  
 And they blest him in their pain, that they were not left  
 to Spain, 20  
 To the thumbscrew and the stake, for the glory of the Lord.

7. *Ships of the line*, warships large enough for the line of battle.  
 12. *Inquisition*: the Spanish Inquisition was a Roman Catholic tribunal for punishing heretics. *Devildoms* seems to be a vague uncomplimentary name for Spanish localities. 16-17. Why are these lines short? 17. *Devon* has a short ē. 20-21. Why are the lines long, as before?

## IV

He had only a hundred seamen to work the ship and to  
 fight,  
 And he sail'd away from Flores till the Spaniard came in  
 sight,  
 With his huge sea-castles heaving upon the weather bow.  
 "Shall we fight or shall we fly? 25  
 Good Sir Richard, tell us now,  
 For to fight is but to die!  
 There'll be little of us left by the time this sun be set."  
 And Sir Richard said again: "We be all good English men.  
 Let us bang these dogs of Seville, the children of the  
 devil, 30  
 For I never turn'd my back upon Don or devil yet."

## V

Sir Richard spoke and he laugh'd, and we roar'd a hurrah,  
 and so  
 The little *Revenge* ran on sheer into the heart of the foe,  
 With her hundred fighters on deck, and her ninety sick  
 below;  
 For half of their fleet to the right and half to the left were  
 seen, 35  
 And the little *Revenge* ran on thro' the long sea-lane between.

## VI

Thousands of their soldiers look'd down from their decks  
 and laugh'd,  
 Thousands of their seamen made mock at the mad little  
 craft  
 Running on and on, till delay'd

24. *Weather bow* means the side toward the wind. 25-27. Why are these lines short? 30. *Seville* always rhymes with *devil*. 31. *Don*, a Spanish nobleman. 36. Why are there no short lines in this stanza? 39. Why a short line?

By their mountain-like *San Philip* that, of fifteen hundred  
tons, 40  
And up-shadowing high above us with her yawning tiers of  
guns,  
Took the breath from our sails, and we stay'd.

## VII

And while now the great *San Philip* hung above us like a  
cloud  
Whence the thunderbolt will fall  
Long and loud, 45  
Four galleons drew away  
From the Spanish fleet that day,  
And two upon the larboard and two upon the starboard lay,  
And the battle-thunder broke from them all.

## VIII

But anon the great *San Philip*, she bethought herself and  
went 50  
Having that within her womb that had left her ill content;  
And the rest they came aboard us, and they fought us hand  
to hand,  
For a dozen times they came with their pikes and musketeers,  
And a dozen times we shook 'em off as a dog that shakes  
his ears  
When he leaps from the water to the land. 55

## IX

And the sun went down, and the stars came out far over the  
summer sea,  
But never a moment ceased the fight of the one and the  
fifty-three.

44-45. Why short lines? 46. *Galleons*, large Spanish ships. 46-47. Do these short lines suggest the gradual process of drawing away?

Ship after ship, the whole night long, their high-built  
galleons came,  
Ship after ship, the whole night long, with her battle-  
thunder and flame;  
Ship after ship, the whole night long, drew back with  
her dead and her shame. 60  
For some were sunk and many were shatter'd, and so could  
fight us no more —  
God of battles, was ever a battle like this in the world  
before?

## X

For he said "Fight on! fight on!"  
Tho' his vessel was all but a wreck;  
And it chanced that, when half of the short summer night  
was gone, 65  
With a grisly wound to be drest he had left the deck,  
But a bullet struck him that was dressing it suddenly dead,  
And himself he was wounded again in the side and the  
head,  
And he said "Fight on! fight on!"

## XI

And the night went down, and the sun smiled out far over  
the summer sea, 70  
And the Spanish fleet with broken sides lay round us all in  
a ring;  
But they dared not touch us again, for they fear'd that we  
still could sting,  
So they watch'd what the end would be.  
And we had not fought them in vain,  
But in perilous plight were we, 75  
Seeing forty of our poor hundred were slain,  
And half of the rest of us maim'd for life

In the crash of the cannonades and the desperate strife;  
And the sick men down in the hold were most of them stark  
    and cold,  
And the pikes were all broken or bent, and the powder  
    was all of it spent; 80  
And the masts and the rigging were lying over the side;  
But Sir Richard cried in his English pride,  
“We have fought such a fight for a day and a night  
As may never be fought again!  
We have won great glory, my men! 85  
And a day less or more  
At sea or ashore,  
We die — does it matter when?  
Sink me the ship, Master Gunner — sink her, split her in  
    twain!  
Fall into the hands of God, not into the hands of Spain!” 90

## XII

And the gunner said “Ay, ay,” but the seamen made reply:  
“We have children, we have wives,  
And the Lord hath spared our lives.  
We will make the Spanish promise, if we yield, to let us go;  
We shall live to fight again and to strike another blow.” 95  
And the lion there lay dying, and they yielded to the foe.

## XIII

And the stately Spanish men to their flagship bore him  
    then,  
Where they laid him by the mast, old Sir Richard caught  
    at last,  
And they praised him to his face with their courtly foreign  
    grace;  
But he rose upon their decks, and he cried: 100

"I have fought for Queen and Faith like a valiant man and true;  
 I have only done my duty as a man is bound to do:  
 With a joyful spirit I Sir Richard Grenville die!"  
 And he fell upon their decks, and he died.

## XIV

And they stared at the dead that had been so valiant  
 and true 105  
 And had holden the power and glory of Spain so cheap  
 That he dared her with one little ship and his English few;  
 Was he devil or man? He was devil for aught they knew,  
 But they sank his body with honor down into the deep,  
 And they mann'd the *Revenge* with a swarthier alien  
 crew, 110  
 And away she sail'd with her loss and long'd for her own;  
 When a wind from the lands they had ruin'd awoke from  
 sleep,  
 And the water began to heave and the weather to moan,  
 And or ever that evening ended a great gale blew,  
 And a wave like the wave that is raised by an earth-  
 quake grew, 115  
 Till it smote on their hulls and their sails and their masts  
 and their flags,  
 And the whole sea plunged and fell on the shot-shatter'd  
 navy of Spain,  
 And the little *Revenge* herself went down by the island  
 crags  
 To be lost evermore in the main.

119. Which of the following adjectives and phrases may properly be applied to this poem: slow, simple in rhythm, complex in rhythm, swift, rushing, impetuous, swinging, heroic, stirring, pretty, dramatic, pleasing, thrilling?



THE LOSS OF THE *BIRKENHEAD*

SUPPOSED TO BE NARRATED BY A SOLDIER WHO SURVIVED

SIR FRANCIS HASTINGS DOYLE

Right on our flank the crimson sun went down,  
The deep sea rolled around in dark repose,  
When, like the wild shriek from some captured town,  
A cry of women rose.

The stout ship *Birkenhead* lay hard and fast, 5  
Caught, without hope, upon a hidden rock;  
Her timbers thrilled as nerves, when through them passed  
The spirit of that shock.

And ever like base cowards, who leave their ranks  
In danger's hour, before the rush of steel, 10  
Drifted away, disorderly, the planks  
From underneath her keel.

Confusion spread, for, though the coast seemed near,  
Sharks hovered thick along that white sea-brink.  
The boats could hold? — not all; and it was clear 15  
She was about to sink.

“Out with those boats, and let us haste away,”  
Cried one, “ere yet yon sea the bark devours.”  
The man thus clamoring was, I scarce need say,  
No officer of ours. 20

We knew our duty better than to care  
For such loose babblers, and made no reply,  
Till our good colonel gave the word, and there  
Formed us in line to die.

There rose no murmur from the ranks, no thought, 25  
 By shameful strength, unhonored life to seek;  
 Our post to quit we were not trained, nor taught  
 To trample down the weak.

So we made women with their children go,  
 The oars ply back again, and yet again; 30  
 Whilst, inch by inch, the drowning ship sank low,  
 Still under steadfast men.

What follows, why recall? The brave who died,  
 Died without flinching in the bloody surf;  
 They sleep as well, beneath that purple tide, 35  
 As others, under turf; —

They sleep as well, and, roused from their wild grave,  
 Wearing their wounds like stars, shall rise again,  
 Joint-heirs with Christ, because they bled to save  
 His weak ones, not in vain. 40

If that day's work no clasp or medal mark,  
 If each proud heart no cross of bronze may press,  
 Nor cannon thunder loud from Tower and Park,  
 This feel we, none the less:

That those whom God's high grace there saved from ill — 45  
 Those also, left His martyrs in the bay —  
 Though not by siege, though not in battle, still  
 Full well have earned their pay.

#### 43. London Tower and Hyde Park.

Is the diction of this poem plainer, or more elaborate, than that of Tennyson's *The Revenge*? Note the short closing line of each stanza. Examine each to see whether some emphatic thought is thus expressed, or whether the line is a mere "tag" to the stanza. Is the poem calm in tone? Should its tone have been other than it is?

SOLDIER AND SAILOR TOO <sup>1</sup>

RUDYARD KIPLING

. . . They came of our lot, they was brothers to us; they  
was beggars we'd met and knew;  
Yes, barrin' an inch in the chest and the arms, they was  
doubles o' me and you;  
For they weren't no special chrysanthemums — soldier an'  
sailor too!

. . . We're most of us liars, we're 'arf of us thieves, an' the  
rest are as rank as can be,  
But once in a while we can finish in style (which I 'ope  
it won't 'appen to me). 5  
But it makes you think better o' you an' your friends, an'  
the work you may 'ave to do,  
When you think o' the sinkin' *Victorier's* Jollies — soldier  
an' sailor too!  
Now there isn't no room for to say ye don't know — they  
'ave proved it plain and true —  
That whether it's Widow, or whether it's ship, *Victorier's*  
work is to do.  
An' they done it, the Jollies — 'Er Majesty's Jollies —  
soldier and sailor too. 10

<sup>1</sup> From *The Seven Seas*, Copyright, 1896, by Rudyard Kipling. Quoted by special permission of the author and of the publishers, D. Appleton and Co.

MIDSHIPMAN LANYON <sup>1</sup>

THEODORE WATTS-DUNTON

"Midshipman Lanyon refused to leave the Admiral and perished." —  
*Times*, June 30, 1893.

Our tears are tears of pride who see thee stand,  
 Watching the great bows dip, the stern uprear,  
 Beside thy chief, whose hope was still to steer,  
 Though Fate had said, "Ye shall not win the land!"  
 What joy was thine to answer each command 5  
 From him calamity had made more dear,  
 Save that which bade thee part when Death drew near,  
 Till Tryon sank with Lanyon at his hand!  
 Death only and doom are sure: they come, they rend,  
 But still the fight we make can crown us great: 10  
 Life hath no joy like his who fights with Fate  
 Shoulder to shoulder with a stricken friend:  
 Proud are our tears for thee, most fortunate,  
 Whose day, so brief, had such heroic end.

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from "The Coming of Love, and Other Poems," by permission of Mr. John Lane.

How many lines has this poem? Notice the curious rhyme-scheme: *stand uprear steer land, command dear near hand; rend great fate, friend fortunate end*. Express it thus: a b b a, a b b a; c d d, c d c. A poem of fourteen lines rhyming thus is called a sonnet. A sonnet may rhyme in several other ways, but must consist of fourteen lines. Notice that the first eight lines are really complete in themselves (telling the story); the first eight lines of a typical sonnet are called the *octave*. Notice that the last six lines are in a sense complete in themselves (dealing with a general thought suggested by Lanyon's fate); the last six lines of a typical sonnet are called the *sestet*.

THE DRUMS OF THE FORE AND AFT<sup>1</sup>

RUDYARD KIPLING

In the Army List they still stand as "The Fore and Fit Princess Hohenzollern-Sigmaringen-Auspach's Merthyr-Tydfilshire Own Royal Loyal Light Infantry, Regimental District 329A," but the Army through all its barracks and canteens knows them now as the "Fore and Aft." They 5 may in time do something that shall make their new title honorable, but at present they are bitterly ashamed, and the man who calls them "Fore and Aft" does so at the risk of the head which is on his shoulders.

Two words breathed into the stables of a certain Cavalry Regiment will bring the men out into the streets with 10 belts and mops and bad language; but a whisper of "Fore and Aft" will bring out this regiment with rifles.

Their one excuse is that they came again and did their best to finish the job in style. But for a time all their 15 world knows that they were openly beaten, whipped, dumb-cowed, shaking, and afraid. The men know it; their officers know it; the Horse Guards know it, and when the next war comes the enemy will know it also. There are two or three regiments of the Line that have 20 a black mark against their name which they will then wipe out; and it will be excessively inconvenient for the troops upon whom they do their wiping.

The courage of the British soldier is officially supposed to be above proof, and, as a general rule, it is so. The 25

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Kipling's style is somewhat elliptical, that is, takes a good deal of knowledge on the reader's part for granted; hence it must be read slowly. The necessity of abridging the piece somewhat (and of omitting here and there rough expressions of army life) makes it no easier for the reader to keep the thread of the story.

exceptions are decently shovelled out of sight, only to be referred to in the freshest of unguarded talk that occasionally swamps a Mess-table at midnight. Then one hears strange and horrible stories of men not following their officers, of orders being given by those who had no right to give them, and of disgrace that, but for the standing luck of the British Army, might have ended in brilliant disaster. These are unpleasant stories to listen to, and the Messes tell them under their breath, sitting by the big wood fires; and the young officer bows his head and thinks to himself, please God, his men shall never behave unhandily. 30

The British soldier is not altogether to be blamed for occasional lapses; but this verdict he should not know. A moderately intelligent General will waste six months in mastering the craft of the particular war that he may be waging; a Colonel may utterly misunderstand the capacity of his regiment for three months after it has taken the field; and even a Company Commander may err and be deceived as to the temper and temperament of his own handful: wherefore the soldier, and the soldier of to-day more particularly, should not be blamed for falling back. He should be shot or hanged afterwards — to encourage the others; but he should not be vilified in newspapers, for that is want of tact and waste of space. 40 45 50

He has, let us say, been in the service of the Empress for, perhaps, four years. He will leave in another two years. He has no inherited morals, and four years are not sufficient to drive toughness into his fibre, or to teach him how holy a thing is his Regiment. He wants to drink, he wants to enjoy himself — in India he wants to save money — and he does not in the least like getting hurt. He has received just sufficient education to make him understand half the purport of the orders he receives, 55

and to speculate on the nature of clean, incised, and 60  
shattering wounds. Thus, if he is told to deploy under  
fire preparatory to an attack, he knows that he runs a  
very great risk of being killed while he is deploying, and  
suspects that he is being thrown away to gain ten min-  
utes' time. He may either deploy with desperate swift- 65  
ness, or he may shuffle, or bunch, or break, according  
to the discipline under which he has lain for four years.

Armed with imperfect knowledge, cursed with the  
rudiments of an imagination, hampered by the intense  
selfishness of the lower classes, and unsupported by any 70  
regimental associations, this young man is suddenly in-  
troduced to an enemy who in eastern lands is always  
ugly, generally tall and hairy, and frequently noisy. If  
he looks to the right and the left and sees old soldiers  
— men of twelve years' service, who, he knows, know 75  
what they are about — taking a charge, rush, or demon-  
stration without embarrassment, he is consoled and  
applies his shoulder to the butt of his rifle with a stout  
heart. His peace is the greater if he hears a senior,  
who has taught him his soldiering and broken his head 80  
on occasion, whispering: "They'll shout and carry on  
like this for five minutes. Then they'll rush in, and  
then we've got 'em by the short hairs!"

But, on the other hand, if he sees only men of his  
own term of service, turning white and playing with 85  
their triggers and saying, "What's up now?" while the  
Company Commanders are sweating into their sword-  
hilts and shouting: "Front-rank, fix bayonets. Steady  
there — steady! Sight for three hundred — no, for five!  
Lie down, all! Steady! Front-rank, kneel!" and so 90  
forth, he becomes unhappy; and grows acutely miserable  
when he hears a comrade turn over with the rattle of  
fire-irons falling into the fender, and the grunt of a

pole-axed ox. If he can be moved about a little and allowed to watch the effect of his own fire on the enemy 95 he feels merrier, and may be then worked up to the blind passion of fighting, which is, contrary to general belief, controlled by a chilly Devil and shakes men like ague. If he is not moved about, and begins to feel cold at the pit of the stomach, and in that crisis is badly 100 mauled and hears orders that were never given, he will break, and he will break badly; and of all things under the light of the Sun there is nothing more terrible than a broken British regiment. When the worst comes to the worst and the panic is really epidemic, the men must 105 be e'en let go, and the Company Commanders had better escape to the enemy and stay there for safety's sake. If they can be made to come again they are not pleasant men to meet; because they will not break twice.

About thirty years from this date, when we have suc- 110 ceeded in half-educating everything that wears trousers, our Army will be a beautifully unreliable machine. It will know too much and it will do too little. Later still, when all men are at the mental level of the officer of to-day, it will sweep the earth. Speaking roughly, 115 you must employ either blackguards or gentlemen, or, best of all, blackguards commanded by gentlemen, to do butcher's work with efficiency and despatch. The ideal soldier should, of course, think for himself — the *Pocket-book* says so. Unfortunately, to attain this virtue 120 he has to pass through the phrase of thinking of himself, and that is misdirected genius. A blackguard may be slow to think for himself, but he is genuinely anxious to kill, and a little punishment teaches him how to guard his own skin and perforate another's. A powerfully 125 prayerful Highland Regiment, officered by rank Presbyterians, is, perhaps, one degree more terrible in action



than a hard-bitted thousand of irresponsible Irish ruffians led by most improper young unbelievers. But these things prove the rule — which is that the midway men <sup>130</sup> are not to be trusted alone. They have ideas about the value of life and an up-bringing that has not taught them to go on and take the chances. They are carefully unprovided with a backing of comrades who have been shot over, and until that backing is re-introduced, as a great <sup>135</sup> many Regimental Commanders intend it shall be, they are more liable to disgrace themselves than the size of the Empire or the dignity of the Army allows. Their officers are as good as good can be, because their training begins early, and God has arranged that a clean-run <sup>140</sup> youth of the British middle classes shall, in the matter of backbone and brains, surpass all other youths. For this reason a child of eighteen will stand up, doing nothing, with a tin sword in his hand and joy in his heart until he is dropped. If he dies, he dies like a <sup>145</sup> gentleman. If he lives, he writes Home that he has been “potted,” “sniped,” “chipped,” or “cut over,” and sits down to besiege Government for a wound-gratuity until the next little war breaks out, when he perjures himself before a Medical Board, blarneys his <sup>150</sup> Colonel, burns incense round his Adjutant, and is allowed to go to the Front once more.

Which homily brings me directly to a brace of the most finished little fiends that ever banged drum or tootled fife in the Band of a British Regiment. They <sup>155</sup> ended their sinful career by open and flagrant mutiny and were shot for it. Their names were Jakin and Lew — Piggy Lew — and they were bold, bad drummer-boys, both of them frequently birched by the Drum-Major of the Fore and Aft.

<sup>160</sup>

Jakin was a stunted child of fourteen, and Lew was

about the same age. When not looked after, they smoked and drank. They swore habitually after the manner of the Barrack-room, which is cold-swearing and comes from between clinched teeth; and they fought 165 religiously once a week. Jakin had sprung from some London gutter, and may or may not have passed through Dr. Barnardo's hands ere he arrived at the dignity of drummer-boy. Lew could remember nothing except the Regiment and the delight of listening to the Band from 170 his earliest years. He hid somewhere in his grimy little soul a genuine love for music, and was most mistakenly furnished with the head of a cherub: insomuch that beautiful ladies who watched the Regiment in church were wont to speak of him as a "darling." They never 175 heard his vitriolic comments on their manners and morals, as he walked back to barracks with the Band and matured fresh causes of offence against Jakin.

The other drummer-boys hated both lads on account of their illogical conduct. Jakin might be pounding 180 Lew, or Lew be rubbing Jakin's head in the dirt, but any attempt at aggression on the part of an outsider was met by the combined forces of Lew and Jakin; and the consequences were painful. The boys were the Ishmaels of the corps, but wealthy Ishmaels, for they sold battles 185 in alternate weeks for the sport of the barracks when they were not pitted against other boys; and thus amassed money.

On this particular day there was dissension in the camp. They had just been convicted afresh of smoking, 190 which is bad for little boys who use plug-tobacco, and Lew's contention was that Jakin had "stunk so 'orrid bad from keepin' the pipe in pocket," that he and he alone was responsible for the birching they were both tingling under. . . . They [the regiment] wanted to go 195

to the Front — they were enthusiastically anxious to go — but they had no knowledge of what war meant, and there was none to tell them. They were an educated regiment, the percentage of school-certificates in their ranks was high, and most of the men could do more than 200 read and write. They had been recruited in loyal observance of the territorial idea; but they themselves had no notion of that idea. They were made up of drafts from an over-populated manufacturing district. The system had put flesh and muscle upon their small bones, 205 but it could not put heart into the sons of those who for generations had done over-much work for over-scanty pay, had sweated in drying-rooms, stooped over looms, coughed among white-lead, and shivered on lime-barges. The men had found food and rest in the Army, and now 210 they were going to fight “niggers” — people who ran away if you shook a stick at them. Wherefore they cheered lustily when the rumor ran, and the shrewd, clerkly, non-commissioned officers speculated on the chances of battle and of saving their pay. At Head- 215 quarters men said: “The Fore and Fit have never been under fire within the last generation. Let us, therefore, break them in easily by setting them to guard lines of communication.” And this would have been done but for the fact that British Regiments were wanted — badly 220 wanted — at the Front, and there were doubtful Native Regiments that could fill the minor duties. “Brigade ‘em with two strong Regiments,” said Headquarters. “They may be knocked about a bit, though they’ll learn their business before they come through. Nothing like 225 a night-alarm and a little cutting up of stragglers to make a Regiment smart in the field. Wait till they’ve had half-a-dozen sentries’ throats cut.”

The Colonel wrote with delight that the temper of his

men was excellent, that the Regiment was all that could <sup>230</sup> be wished and as sound as a bell. The Majors smiled with a sober joy, and the subalterns waltzed in pairs down the Mess-room after dinner, and nearly shot themselves at revolver-practice. But there was consternation in the hearts of Jakin and Lew. What was to be done <sup>235</sup> with the Drums? Would the Band go to the Front? How many of the Drums would accompany the Regiment?

They took counsel together, sitting in a tree and smoking. 240

"It's more than a bloomin' toss-up they'll leave us be'ind at the Depot with the women. You'll like that," said Jakin, sarcastically.

"'Cause o' Cris, y' mean? Wot's a woman, or a 'ole bloomin' depot o' women, 'longside o' the chanst <sup>245</sup> of field-service? You know I'm as keen on goin' as you," said Lew.

"Wish I was a bloomin' bugler," said Jakin, sadly. "They'll take Tom Kidd along, that I can plaster a wall with, an' like as not they won't take us." 250

"Then let's go an' make Tom Kidd so bloomin' sick 'e can't bugle no more. You 'old 'is 'ands an' I'll kick him," said Lew, wriggling on the branch.

"That ain't no good neither. We ain't the sort o' characters to presoom on our rep'tations — they're bad. <sup>255</sup> If they leave the Band at the Depot we don't go, and no error *there*. If they take the Band we may get cast for medical unfitness. Are you medical fit, Piggy?" said Jakin, digging Lew in the ribs with force.

"Yus," said Lew with an oath. "The Doctor says <sup>260</sup> your 'eart's weak through smokin' on an empty stum-mick. Throw a chest an' I'll try yer."

Jakin threw out his chest, which Lew smote with all

his might. Jakin turned very pale, gasped, crowed, screwed up his eyes, and said — "That's all right." 265

"You'll do," said Lew. "I've 'eard o' men dyin' when you 'it 'em fair on the breastbone."

"Don't bring us no nearer goin', though," said Jakin. "Do you know where we're ordered?"

"Somewheres up to the Front to kill Paythans — hairy 270 big beggars that turn you inside out if they get 'old o' you."

"Any loot?" asked the abandoned Jakin.

"Not a bloomin' anna, they say, unless you dig up the ground an' see what the niggers 'ave 'id. They're 275 a poor lot." Jakin stood upright on the branch and gazed across the plain.

"Lew," said he, "there's the Colonel coming. 'Colonel's a good old beggar. Let's go an' talk to 'im."

Lew nearly fell out of the tree at the audacity of the 280 suggestion. Like Jakin he feared not God, neither regarded he Man, but there are limits even to the audacity of a drummer-boy, and to speak to a Colonel was —

But Jakin had slid down the trunk and doubled in the direction of the Colonel. That officer was walking 285 wrapped in thought and visions of a C.B.<sup>1</sup> — yes, even a K.C.B., for had he not at command one of the best Regiments of the Line — the Fore and Fit? And he was aware of two small boys charging down upon him. Once before it had been solemnly reported to him that 290 "the Drums were in a state of mutiny," Jakin and Lew being the ringleaders. This looked like an organized conspiracy.

The boys halted at twenty yards, walked to the regu-

<sup>1</sup> C. B., Companion of the Bath; K. C. B., Knight Commander of the Bath — two titles much prized as rewards of distinguished service in the British army.

lation four paces, and saluted together, each as well-set- 295  
up as a ramrod and little taller.

The Colonel was in a genial mood; the boys appeared very forlorn and unprotected on the desolate plain, and one of them was handsome.

"Well!" said the Colonel, recognizing them. "Are 300  
you going to pull me down in the open? I'm sure I never interfere with you, even though" — he sniffed suspiciously — "you have been smoking."

It was time to strike while the iron was hot. Their hearts beat tumultuously. 305

"Beg y' pardon, Sir," began Jakin. "The Reg'-ment's ordered on active service, Sir?"

"So I believe," said the Colonel, courteously.

"Is the Band goin', Sir?" said both together. Then, without pause, "We're goin', Sir, ain't we?" 310

"You!" said the Colonel, stepping back the more fully to take in the two small figures. "You! You'd die in the first march."

"No, we wouldn't, Sir. We can march with the Reg'ment anywheres — p'rade an' anywhere else," said 315  
Jakin.

"If Tom Kidd goes 'e'll shut up like a clasp-knife," said Lew. "Tom 'as very-close veins<sup>1</sup> in both 'is legs, Sir."

"Very how much?" 320

"Very-close veins, Sir. That's why they swells after long p'rade, Sir. If 'e can go, we can go, Sir."

Again the Colonel looked at them long and intently.

"Yes, the Band is going," he said as gravely as though he had been addressing a brother officer. "Have you 325  
any parents, either of you two?"

"No, Sir," rejoicingly from Lew and Jakin. "We're

<sup>1</sup> Lew means *varicose*, i.e. swollen.

both orphans, Sir. There's no one to be considered of on our account, Sir."

"You poor little sprats, and you want to go up to the 330 Front with the Regiment, do you? Why?"

"I've wore the Queen's Uniform for two years," said Jakin. "It's very 'ard, Sir, that a man don't get no recompense for doin' of 'is dooty, Sir."

"An' — an' if I don't go, Sir," interrupted Lew, "the 335 Bandmaster 'e says 'e'll catch an' make a bloo — a blessed musician o' me, Sir. Before I've seen any service, Sir."

The Colonel made no answer for a long time. Then he said quietly: "If you're passed by the Doctor I 340 daresay you can go. I shouldn't smoke if I were you."

The boys saluted and disappeared. The Colonel walked home and told the story to his wife, who nearly cried over it. The Colonel was well pleased. If that was the temper of the children, what would not the 345 men do?

Jakin and Lew entered the boys' barrack-room with great stateliness, and refused to hold any conversation with their comrades for at least ten minutes. Then, bursting with pride, Jakin drawled: "I've bin intervoo'in' 350 the Colonel. Good old beggar is the Colonel. Says I to 'im, 'Colonel,' says I, 'let me go to the Front, along o' the Reg'ment.' — 'To the Front you shall go,' says 'e, 'an' I only wish there was more like you among the dirty little devils that bang the bloomin' drums.' Kidd, 355 if you throw your 'courtremments<sup>1</sup> at me for tellin' you the truth to your own advantage, your legs'll swell." . . .

Public feeling among the drummer-boys rose to fever pitch and the lives of Jakin and Lew became unenviable. Not only had they been permitted to enlist two years 360

<sup>1</sup> Accoutrements.

before the regulation boy's age — fourteen — but, by virtue, it seemed, of their extreme youth, they were allowed to go to the Front — which thing had not happened to acting-drummers within the knowledge of boy. The Band which was to accompany the Regiment had been <sup>365</sup> cut down to the regulation twenty men, the surplus returning to the ranks. Jakin and Lew were attached to the Band as supernumeraries, though they would much have preferred being Company buglers.

“Don't matter much,” said Jakin after the medical <sup>370</sup> inspection. “Be thankful that we're 'lowed to go at all. The Doctor 'e said that if we could stand what we took from the Bazar-Sergeant's son we'd stand pretty nigh anything.”

“Which we will,” said Lew, looking tenderly at the <sup>375</sup> ragged and ill-made housewife that Cris [the Color-Sergeant's little girl] had given him, with a lock of her hair worked into a sprawling “L” upon the cover.

“It was the best I could,” she sobbed. “I wouldn't let mother nor the Sergeants' tailor 'elp me. Keep it <sup>380</sup> always, Piggy, an' remember I love you true.”

They marched to the railway station, nine hundred and sixty strong, and every soul in cantonments turned out to see them go. The drummers gnashed their teeth at Jakin and Lew marching with the Band, the married <sup>385</sup> women wept upon the platform, and the Regiment cheered its noble self black in the face.

“A nice level lot,” said the Colonel to the Second-in-Command as they watched the first four companies entraining.

<sup>390</sup>

“Fit to do anything,” said the Second-in-Command, enthusiastically. “But it seems to me they're a thought too young and tender for the work in hand. It's bitter cold up at the Front now.”



"They're sound enough," said the Colonel. "We 395 must take our chance of sick casualties."

So they went northward, ever northward, past droves and droves of camels, armies of camp followers, and legions of laden mules, the throng thickening day by day, till with a shriek the train pulled up at a hopelessly 400 congested junction where six lines of temporary track accommodated six forty-wagon trains; where whistles blew, Babus sweated, and Commissariat officers swore from dawn till far into the night amid the wind-driven chaff of the fodder-bales and the lowing of a thousand 405 steers.

"Hurry up—you're badly wanted at the Front," was the message that greeted the Fore and Aft, and the occupants of the Red Cross carriages told the same tale.

"'Tisn't so much the bloomin' fightin'," gasped a 410 trooper of Hussars to a knot of admiring Fore and Afts. "'Tisn't so much the bloomin' fightin', though there's enough o' that. It's the bloomin' food an' the bloomin' climate. Frost all night 'cept when it hails, and biling sun all day, and the water stinks fit to knock you down. 415 I got my 'ead chipped like a egg; I've got pneumonia too. 'Tain't no bloomin' picnic in those parts, I can tell you."

"Wot are the niggers like?" demanded a private.

"There's some prisoners in that train yonder. Go 420 an' look at 'em. They're the aristocracy o' the country. The common folk are a sight uglier. If you want to know what they fight with, reach under my seat an' pull out the long knife that's there."

They dragged out and beheld for the first time the 425 grim, bone-handled, triangular Afghan knife. It was almost as long as Lew.

"That's the thing to jint ye," said the trooper, feebly.

"It can take off a man's arm at the shoulder as easy as slicing butter. I halved the beggar that used that 'un, 430 but there's more of his likes up above."

The men strolled across the tracks to inspect the Afghan prisoners. They were unlike any "niggers" that the Fore and Aft had ever met — these huge, black-haired, scowling sons of the Beni-Israel. As the men 435 stared, the Afghans spat freely and muttered one to another with lowered eyes.

"My eyes! Wot awful swine!" said Jakin, who was in the rear of the procession. The tallest of the company turned, his leg-irons clanking at the movement, 440 and stared at the boy. "See!" he cried to his fellows in Pushto. "They send children against us. What a people, and what fools!"

"*Hya!*" said Jakin, nodding his head cheerily. . . . Good-by, ole man. Take care o' your beautiful 445 figure-'ed."

The men laughed and fell in for their first march, when they began to realize that a soldier's life was not all beer and skittles. They were much impressed with the size and bestial ferocity of the niggers whom they 450 had now learned to call "Paythans," and more with the exceeding discomfort of their own surroundings. Twenty old soldiers in the corps would have taught them how to make themselves moderately snug at night, but they had no old soldiers, and, as the troops on the line 455 of march said, "they lived like pigs." . . .

At the end of their third march they were disagreeably surprised by the arrival in their camp of a hammered iron slug which, fired from a steady rest at seven hundred yards, flicked out the brains of a private seated by the 460 fire. This robbed them of their peace for a night, and was the beginning of a long-range fire carefully calcu-

lated to that end. In the daytime they saw nothing except an unpleasant puff of smoke from a crag above the line of march. At night there were distant spurts of flame and occasional casualties, which set the whole camp blazing into the gloom and, occasionally, into opposite tents. Then they swore vehemently and vowed that this was magnificent, but not war.

Indeed it was not. The Regiment could not halt for reprisals against the sharpshooters of the country-side. Its duty was to go forward and make connection with the Scotch and Gurkha troops with which it was brigaded. The Afghans knew this, and knew too, after their first tentative shots, that they were dealing with a raw regiment. Thereafter they devoted themselves to the task of keeping the Fore and Aft on the strain. Not for anything would they have taken equal liberties with a seasoned corps — with the wicked little Gurkhas, whose delight it was to lie out in the open on a dark night and stalk their stalkers, — with the terrible big men dressed in women's clothes, who could be heard praying to their God in the night-watches, and whose peace of mind no amount of "sniping" could shake; — or with those vile Sikhs, who marched so ostentatiously unprepared and who dealt out such grim reward to those who tried to profit by that unpreparedness. This white regiment was different — quite different. It slept like a hog, and, like a hog, charged in every direction when it was roused. Its sentries walked with a footfall that could be heard for a quarter of a mile; would fire at anything that moved — even a driven donkey — and when they had once fired, could be scientifically "rushed" and laid out a horror and an offence against the morning sun. Then there were camp-followers who straggled and could be cut up without fear. Their shrieks would disturb the

white boys, and the loss of their services would inconvenience them sorely.

Thus, at every march, the hidden enemy became bolder and the regiment writhed and twisted under 500 attacks it could not avenge. The crowning triumph was a sudden night-rush ending in the cutting of many tent-ropes, the collapse of the sodden canvas, and a glorious knifing of the men who struggled and kicked below. It was a great deed, neatly carried out, and it 505 shook the already shaken nerves of the Fore and Aft. All the courage that they had been required to exercise up to this point was the "two o'clock in the morning courage"; and, so far, they had only succeeded in shooting their comrades and losing their sleep. 510

Sullen, discontented, cold, savage, sick, with their uniforms dulled and unclean, the Fore and Aft joined their Brigade.

"I hear you had a tough time of it coming up," said the Brigadier. But when he saw the hospital-sheets his 515 face fell.

"This is bad," said he to himself. . . . And aloud to the Colonel—"I'm afraid we can't spare you just yet. We want all we have, else I should have given you ten days to recover in." 520

The Colonel winced. "On my honor, Sir," he returned, "there is not the least necessity to think of sparing us. My men have been rather mauled and upset without a fair return. They only want to go in somewhere where they can see what's before them." 525

"Can't say I think much of the Fore and Fit," said the Brigadier in confidence to his Brigade-Major. "They've lost all their soldiering, and, by the trim of them, might have marched through the country from the other side. A more fagged-out set of men I never put eyes on." 530

"Oh, they'll improve as the work goes on. The parade gloss has been rubbed off a little, but they'll put on field polish before long," said the Brigade-Major. "They've been mauled, and they don't quite understand it."

535

They did not. All the hitting was on one side, and it was cruelly hard hitting, with accessories that made them sick. There was also the real sickness that laid hold of a strong man and dragged him howling to the grave. Worst of all, their officers knew just as little of 540 the country as the men themselves, and looked as if they did. The Fore and Aft were in a thoroughly unsatisfactory condition, but they believed that all would be well if they could once get a fair go-in at the enemy. Pot-shots up and down the valleys were unsatisfactory, 545 and the bayonet never seemed to get a chance. Perhaps it was as well, for a long-limbed Afghan with a knife had a reach of eight feet, and could carry away lead that would disable three Englishmen.

The Fore and Fit would like some rifle-practice at 550 the enemy—all seven hundred rifles blazing together. That wish showed the mood of the men.

The Gurkhas walked into their camp, and in broken, barrack-room English strove to fraternize with them; offered them pipes of tobacco and stood them treat at 555 the canteen. But the Fore and Aft, not knowing much of the nature of the Gurkhas, treated them as they would treat any other "niggers," and the little men in green trotted back to their firm friends the Highlanders, and with many grins confided to them: "That white regi- 560 ment no use. Sulky—ugh! Dirty—ugh! Hya, any tot for Johnny?" Whereat the Highlanders smote the Gurkhas as to the head, and told them not to vilify a British Regiment, and the Gurkhas grinned cavernously,

for the Highlanders were their elder brothers and en- 565  
titled to the privileges of kinship. The common soldier  
who touches a Gurkha is more than likely to have his  
head sliced open.

Three days later the Brigadier arranged a battle ac-  
cording to the rules of war and the peculiarity of the 570  
Afghan temperament. The enemy were massing in in-  
convenient strength among the hills, and the moving of  
many green standards warned him that the tribes were  
“up” in aid of the Afghan regular troops. A squadron  
and a half of Bengal Lancers represented the available 575  
Cavalry, and two screw-guns borrowed from a column  
thirty miles away the Artillery at the General’s disposal.

“If they stand, as I’ve a very strong notion that they  
will, I fancy we shall see an infantry fight that will be  
worth watching,” said the Brigadier. “We’ll do it in 580  
style. Each regiment shall be played into action by its  
Band, and we’ll hold the Cavalry in reserve.”

“For *all* the reserve?” somebody asked.

“For all the reserve ; because we’re going to crumple  
them up,” said the Brigadier, who was an extraordinary 585  
Brigadier, and did not believe in the value of a reserve  
when dealing with Asiatics. Indeed, when you come  
to think of it, had the British Army consistently waited  
for reserves in all its little affairs, the boundaries of Our  
Empire would have stopped at Brighton beach. 590

That battle was to be a glorious battle.

The three regiments debouching from three separate  
gorges, after duly crowning the heights above, were to  
converge from the centre, left, and right upon what we  
will call the Afghan army, then stationed toward the 595  
lower extremity of a flat-bottomed valley. Thus it will  
be seen that three sides of the valley practically be-  
longed to the English, while the fourth was strictly

Afghan property. In the event of defeat the Afghans had the rocky hills to fly to, where the fire from the 600 guerilla tribes in aid would cover their retreat. In the event of victory these same tribes would rush down and lend their weight to the rout of the British.

The screw-guns were to shell the head of each Afghan rush that was made in close formation, and the Cavalry, 605 held in reserve in the right valley, were to gently stimulate the break-up which would follow on the combined attack. The Brigadier, sitting upon a rock overlooking the valley, would watch the battle unrolled at his feet. The Fore and Aft would debouch from the central gorge, 610 the Gurkhas from the left, and the Highlanders from the right, for the reason that the left flank of the enemy seemed as though it required the most hammering. It was not every day that an Afghan force would take ground in the open, and the Brigadier was resolved to 615 make the most of it.

"If we only had a few more men," he said plaintively, "we could surround the creatures and crumple 'em up thoroughly. As it is, I'm afraid we can only cut them up as they run. It's a great pity." 620

The Fore and Aft had enjoyed unbroken peace for five days, and were beginning, in spite of dysentery, to recover their nerve. But they were not happy, for they did not know the work in hand, and had they known, would not have known how to do it. Throughout those 625 five days in which old soldiers might have taught them the craft of the game, they discussed together their misadventures in the past—how such an one was alive at dawn and dead ere the dusk, and with what shrieks and struggles such another had given up his soul under the 630 Afghan knife. Death was a new and horrible thing to the sons of mechanics who were used to die decently of

zymotic disease; and their careful conservation in barracks had done nothing to make them look upon it with less dread.

635

Very early in the dawn the bugles began to blow, and the Fore and Aft, filled with a misguided enthusiasm, turned out without waiting for a cup of coffee and a biscuit; and were rewarded by being kept under arms in the cold while the other regiments leisurely prepared for the fray. All the world knows that it is ill taking the breeks off a Highlander. It is much iller to try to make him stir unless he is convinced of the necessity for haste.

The Fore and Aft waited, leaning upon their rifles and listening to the protests of their empty stomachs. The Colonel did his best to remedy the default of lining as soon as it was borne in upon him that the affair would not begin at once, and so well did he succeed that the coffee was just ready when — the men moved off, their Band leading. Even then there had been a mistake in time, and the Fore and Aft came out into the valley ten minutes before the proper hour. Their Band wheeled to the right after reaching the open, and retired behind a little rocky knoll, still playing while the regiment went past.

655

It was not a pleasant sight that opened on the uninstrusted view, for the lower end of the valley appeared to be filled by an army in position — real and actual regiments attired in red coats, and — of this there was no doubt — firing Martini-Henry bullets which cut up the ground a hundred yards in front of the leading company. Over that pock-marked ground the regiment had to pass, and it opened the ball with a general and profound courtesy to the piping pickets; ducking in perfect time, as though it had been brazed on a rod. Being half-capable of thinking for itself, it fired a volley by the

665



simple process of pitching its rifle into its shoulder and pulling the trigger. The bullets may have accounted for some of the watchers on the hillside, but they certainly did not affect the mass of enemy in front, while the 670 noise of the rifles drowned any orders that might have been given. . . .

The Fore and Aft continued to go forward, but with shortened stride. Where were the other regiments, and why did these niggers use Martinis? They took open 675 order instinctively, lying down and firing at random, rushing a few paces forward and lying down again, according to the regulations. Once in this formation, each man felt himself desperately alone, and edged in toward his fellow for comfort's sake. 680

Then the crack of his neighbor's rifle at his ear led him to fire as rapidly as he could — again for the sake of the comfort of the noise. The reward was not long delayed. Five volleys plunged the files in banked smoke impenetrable to the eye, and the bullets began to take 685 ground twenty or thirty yards in front of the firers, as the weight of the bayonet dragged down and to the right arms wearied with holding the kick of the leaping Martini. The Company Commanders peered helplessly through the smoke, the more nervous mechanically trying 690 to fan it away with their helmets.

“High and to the left!” bawled a Captain till he was hoarse. “No good! Cease firing, and let it drift away a bit.”

Three and four times the bugles shrieked the order, 695 and when it was obeyed the Fore and Aft looked that their foe should be lying before them in mown swaths of men. A light wind drove the smoke to leeward, and showed the enemy still in position and apparently unaffected. A quarter of a ton of lead had been 700

buried a furlong in front of them, as the ragged earth attested.

That was not demoralizing to the Afghans, who have not European nerves. They were waiting for the mad riot to die down, and were firing quietly into the heart of the smoke. A private of the Fore and Aft spun up his company shrieking with agony, another was kicking the earth and gasping, and a third . . . was calling aloud on his comrades to put him out of his pain. These were the casualties, and they were not soothing to hear or see. The smoke cleared to a dull haze.

Then the foe began to shout with a great shouting, and a mass—a black mass—detached itself from the main body, and rolled over the ground at horrid speed. It was composed of, perhaps, three hundred men, who would shout and fire and slash if the rush of their fifty comrades who were determined to die carried home. The fifty were Ghazis, half-maddened with drugs and wholly mad with religious fanaticism. When they rushed the British fire ceased, and in the lull the order was given to close ranks and meet them with the bayonet.

Any one who knew the business could have told the Fore and Aft that the only way of dealing with a Ghazi rush is by volleys at long ranges; because a man who means to die, who desires to die, who will gain heaven by dying, must, in nine cases out of ten, kill a man who has a lingering prejudice in favor of life. Where they should have closed and gone forward, the Fore and Aft opened out and skirmished, and where they should have opened out and fired, they closed and waited.

A man dragged from his blankets half awake and unfed is never in a pleasant frame of mind. Nor does his happiness increase when he watches the whites of

the eyes of three hundred six-foot fiends upon whose 735  
beards the foam is lying, upon whose tongues is a roar  
of wrath, and in whose hands are yard-long knives.

The Fore and Aft heard the Gurkha bugles bringing  
that regiment forward at the double, while the neighing  
of the Highland pipes came from the left. They strove 740  
to stay where they were, though the bayonets wavered  
down the line like the oars of a ragged boat. Then they  
felt body to body the amazing physical strength of their  
foes; a shriek of pain ended the rush, and the knives  
fell amid scenes not to be told. The men clubbed 745  
together and smote blindly—as often as not at their  
own fellows. Their front crumpled like paper, and the  
fifty Ghazis passed on; their backers, now drunk with  
success, fighting as madly as they.

Then the rear-ranks were bidden to close up, and the 750  
subalterns dashed into the stew—alone. For the rear-  
rank had heard the clamor in front, the yells and the  
howls of pain, and had seen the dark stale blood that  
makes afraid. They were not going to stay. It was the  
rushing of the camps over again. . . . 755

“Come on!” shrieked the subalterns, and their men,  
cursing them, drew back, each closing into his neighbor  
and wheeling round.

Charteris and Devlin, subalterns of the last company,  
faced their death alone in the belief that their men 760  
would follow.

“You’ve killed me, you cowards,” sobbed Devlin and  
dropped, cut from the shoulder-strap to the centre of  
the chest, and a fresh detachment of his men retreating,  
always retreating, trampled him under foot as they made 765  
for the pass whence they had emerged. . . .

The Gurkhas were pouring through the left gorge and  
over the heights at the double to the invitation of their

Regimental Quick-step. The black rocks were crowned with dark green spiders as the bugles gave tongue 770 jubilantly:—

In the morning! In the morning *by* the bright light!  
When Gabriel blows his trumpet in the morning!

The Gurkha rear-companies tripped and blundered over loose stones. The front-files halted for a moment 775 to take stock of the valley and to settle stray boot-laces. Then a happy little sigh of contentment souged down the ranks, and it was as though the land smiled, for behold there below was the enemy, and it was to meet them that the Gurkhas had doubled so hastily. There 780 was much enemy. There would be amusement. The little men hitched their *kukris* well to hand, and gaped expectantly at their officers as terriers grin ere the stone is cast for them to fetch. The Gurkhas' ground sloped downward to the valley, and they enjoyed a fair 785 view of the proceedings. They sat upon the boulders to watch, for their officers were not going to waste their wind in assisting to repulse a Ghazi rush more than half a mile away. Let the white men look to their own front. . . . 790

Horried, amused, and indignant, the Gurkhas beheld the retirement of the Fore and Aft with a running chorus of oaths and commentaries.

"They run! The white men run! Colonel Sahib,<sup>1</sup> may *we* also do a little running?" murmured Runbir 795 Thappa, the Senior Jemadar.

But the Colonel would have none of it. "Let the beggars be cut up a little," said he, wrathfully. "'Serves 'em right. They'll be prodded into facing

<sup>1</sup> Sahib is a Hindoo form of respectful address—"Master."

round in a minute." He looked through his field-800 glasses, and caught the glint of an officer's sword.

"Beating 'em with the flat<sup>1</sup>! How the Ghazis are walking into them!" said he.

The Fore and Aft, heading back, bore with them their officers. The narrowness of the pass forced the mob 805 into solid formation, and the rear-rank delivered some sort of a wavering volley. The Ghazis drew off, for they did not know what reserves the gorge might hide. Moreover, it was never wise to chase white men too far. They returned as wolves return to cover, satisfied with 810 the slaughter that they had done, and only stopping to slash at the wounded on the ground. A quarter of a mile had the Fore and Aft retreated, and now, jammed in the pass, was quivering with pain, shaken and demoralized with fear, while the officers, maddened beyond 815 control, smote the men with the hilts and the flats of their swords.

"Get back! Get back, you cowards—you women! Right about face—column of companies, form—you hounds!" shouted the Colonel, and the subalterns swore 820 aloud. But the Regiment wanted to go—to go anywhere out of the range of those merciless knives. It swayed to and fro irresolutely with shouts and outcries, while from the right the Gurkhas dropped volley after volley of cripple-stopper Snider bullets at long range into 825 the mob of the Ghazis returning to their own troops.

The Fore and Aft Band, though protected from direct fire by the rocky knoll under which it had sat down, fled at the first rush. Jakin and Lew would have fled also, but their short legs left them fifty yards in the rear, and 830 by the time the Band had mixed with the regiment, they

<sup>1</sup> Of the sword.

were painfully aware that they would have to close in alone and unsupported.

"Get back to that rock," gasped Jakin. "They won't see us there." 835

And they returned to the scattered instruments of the Band, their hearts nearly bursting their ribs.

"Here's a nice show for *us*," said Jakin, throwing himself full length on the ground. "A bloomin' fine show for British Infantry! They've gone an' left us 840 alone here! Wot'll we do?"

Lew took possession of a cast-off water bottle, which naturally was full of canteen rum, and drank till he coughed again.

"Drink," said he, shortly. "They'll come back in a 845 minute or two — you see."

Jakin drank, but there was no sign of the Regiment's return. They could hear a dull clamor from the head of the valley of retreat, and saw the Ghazis slink back, quickening their pace as the Gurkhas fired at them. 850

"We're all that's left of the Band, an' we'll be cut up as sure as death," said Jakin.

"I'll die game, then," said Lew, thickly, fumbling with his tiny drummer's sword. The drink was working on his brain as it was on Jakin's. 855

"'Old on! I know something better than fightin'," said Jakin, "stung by the splendor of a sudden thought" due chiefly to rum. "Tip our bloomin' cowards yonder the word to come back. The Paythan beggars are well away. Come on, Lew! We won't get hurt. Take the 860 fife and give me the drum. . . . There's a few of our men coming back now. Stand up, ye drunken little defaulter. By your right — quick march!"

He slipped the drum-sling over his shoulder, thrust the fife into Lew's hand, and the two boys marched out 865

of the cover of the rock into the open, making a hideous hash of the first bars of the *British Grenadiers*.

As Jakin had said, a few of the Fore and Aft were coming back sullenly and shamefacedly under the stimulus of blows and abuse; their red coats shone at the head 870 of the valley, and behind them were wavering bayonets. But between this shattered line and the enemy, who with Afghan suspicion feared that the hasty retreat meant an ambush, and had not moved therefore, lay half a mile of level ground dotted only by the wounded. 875

The tune settled into full swing and the boys kept shoulder to shoulder, Jakin banging the drum as one possessed. The one fife made a thin and pitiful squeaking, but the tune carried far, even to the Gurkhas.

"Come on, you dogs!" muttered Jakin to himself. 880  
"Are we to play for hever?" Lew was staring straight in front of him and marching more stiffly than ever he had done on parade.

And in bitter mockery of the distant mob, the old tune of the Old Line shrilled and rattled: — 885

Some talk of Alexander,  
And some of Hercules;  
Of Hector and Lysander,  
And such great names as these!

There was a far-off clapping of hands from the Gurkhas, 890 and a roar from the Highlanders in the distance, but never a shot was fired by British or Afghan. The two little red dots moved forward in the open parallel to the enemy's front.

But of all the world's great heroes  
There's none that can compare,  
With a tow-row-row-row-row-row,  
To the British Grenadier!

895

The men of the Fore and Aft were gathering thick at the entrance to the plain. The Brigadier on the heights 900 far above was speechless with rage. Still no movement from the enemy. The day stayed to watch the children.

Jakin halted and beat the long roll of the Assembly, while the fife squealed despairingly.

"Right about face! Hold up, Lew, you're drunk," 905 said Jakin. They wheeled and marched back:—

Those heroes of antiquity  
Ne'er saw a cannon-ball,  
Nor knew the force o' powder,

"Here they come!" said Jakin. "Go on, Lew":— 910

To scare their foes withal!

The Fore and Aft were pouring out of the valley. What officers had said to men in that time of shame and humiliation will never be known; for neither officers nor men speak of it now. 915

"They are coming anew!" shouted a priest among the Afghans. "Do not kill the boys! Take them alive and they shall be of our faith."

But the first volley had been fired, and Lew dropped on his face. Jakin stood for a minute, spun round and collapsed, as the Fore and Aft came forward, the curses of their officers in their ears, and in their hearts the shame of open shame. 920

Half the men had seen the drummers die, and they made no sign. They did not even shout. They doubled 925 out straight across the plain in open order, and they did not fire.

"This," said the Colonel of Gurkhas, softly, "is the real attack, as it should have been delivered. Come on, my children." 930

"Ulu-lu-lu-lu!" squealed the Gurkhas, and came



down with a joyful clicking of *kukris* — those vicious Gurkha knives.

On the right there was no rush. The Highlanders, cannily commending their souls to God, . . . opened 935 out and fired according to their custom, that is to say without heat and without intervals, while the screw-guns, having disposed of the impertinent mud fort aforementioned, dropped shell after shell into the clusters round the flickering green standards on the heights. 940

“Charrging is an unfortunate necessity,” murmured the Color-Sergeant of the right company of the Highlanders. “It makes the men sweer so, but I am thinkin’ that it will come to a charrge if these black devils stand much longer. Stewarrt, man, you’re firing into the eye 945 of the sun, and e’ll not take any harm for Government ammuneetion. A foot lower and a great deal slower! What are the English doing? They’re very quiet there in the centre. Running again?”

The English were not running. They were hacking 950 and hewing and stabbing, for though one white man is seldom physically a match for an Afghan in a sheepskin or wadded coat, yet, through the pressure of many white men behind, and a certain thirst for revenge in his heart, he becomes capable of doing much with both 955 ends of his rifle. The Fore and Aft held their fire till one bullet could drive through five or six men, and the front of the Afghan force gave on the volley. They then selected their men, and slew them with deep gasps and short hacking coughs, and groanings of leather belts 960 against strained bodies, and realized for the first time that an Afghan attacked is far less formidable than an Afghan attacking: which fact old soldiers might have told them.

But they had no old soldiers in their ranks. . . . 965

As the Afghans wavered, the green standards on the mountain moved down to assist them in a last rally. This was unwise. The Lancers chafing in the right gorge had thrice despatched their only subaltern as galloper to report on the progress of affairs. On the third occasion 970 he returned, with a bullet-graze on his knee, swearing strange oaths in Hindustani, and saying that all things were ready. So that Squadron swung round the right of the Highlanders with a wicked whistling of wind in the pennons of its lances, and fell upon the remnant just 975 when, according to all the rules of war, it should have waited for the foe to show more signs of wavering.

But it was a dainty charge, deftly delivered, and it ended by the Cavalry finding itself at the head of the pass by which the Afghans intended to retreat; and down 980 the track that the lances had made streamed two companies of the Highlanders, which was never intended by the Brigadier. The new development was successful. It detached the enemy from his base as a sponge is torn from a rock, and left him ringed about with fire in that 985 pitiless plain. And as a sponge is chased round the bath-tub by the hand of the bather, so were the Afghans chased till they broke into little detachments much more difficult to dispose of than large masses.

"See!" quoth the Brigadier. "Everything has come 990 as I arranged. We've cut their base, and now we'll bucket 'em to pieces."

A direct hammering was all that the Brigadier had dared to hope for, considering the size of the force at his disposal; but men who stand or fall by the errors of 995 their opponents may be forgiven for turning Chance into Design. The bucketing went forward merrily. The Afghan forces were upon the run—the run of wearied wolves who snarl and bite over their shoulders. The

red lances dipped by twos and threes, and, with a shriek, 1000 up rose the lance-butt, like a spar on a stormy sea, as the trooper cantering forward cleared his point. The Lancers kept between their prey and the steep hills, for all who could were trying to escape from the valley of death. The Highlanders gave the fugitives two hundred 1005 yards' law, and then brought them down, gasping and choking ere they could reach the protection of the boulders above. The Gurkhas followed suit; but the Fore and Aft were killing on their own account, for they had penned a mass of men between their bayonets and a 1010 wall of rock, and the flash of the rifles was lighting the wadded coats.

"We cannot hold them, Captain Sahib!" panted a Ressaidar of Lancers. "Let us try the carbine. The lance is good, but it wastes time." 1015

They tried the carbine, and still the enemy melted away — fled up the hills by hundreds when there were only twenty bullets to stop them. On the heights the screw-guns ceased firing — they had run out of ammunition — and the Brigadier groaned, for the musketry fire 1020 could not sufficiently smash the retreat. Long before the last volleys were fired, the doolies were out in force looking for the wounded. The battle was over, and, but for want of fresh troops, the Afghans would have been wiped off the earth. As it was they counted their dead 1025 by hundreds, and nowhere were the dead thicker than in the track of the Fore and Aft.

But the Regiment did not cheer with the Highlanders, nor did they dance uncouth dances with the Gurkhas among the dead. They looked under their brows at the 1030 Colonel as they leaned upon their rifles and panted.

"Get back to camp, you. Haven't you disgraced yourself enough for one day! Go and look to the

wounded. It's all you're fit for," said the Colonel. Yet for the past hour the Fore and Aft had been doing <sup>1035</sup> all that mortal commander could expect. They had lost heavily because they did not know how to set about their business with proper skill, but they had borne themselves gallantly, and this was their reward.

A young and sprightly Color-Sergeant, who had begun <sup>1040</sup> to imagine himself a hero, offered his water-bottle to a Highlander, whose tongue was black with thirst. "I drink with no cowards," answered the youngster, huskily, and, turning to a Gurkha, said, "Hya, Johnny! Drink water got it?" The Gurkha grinned and passed his <sup>1045</sup> bottle. The Fore and Aft said no word.

They went back to camp when the field of strife had been a little mopped up and made presentable, and the Brigadier, who saw himself a Knight in three months, was the only soul who was complimentary to them. The <sup>1050</sup> Colonel was heart-broken, and the officers were savage and sullen.

"Well," said the Brigadier, "they are young troops of course, and it was not unnatural that they should retire in disorder for a bit." 1055

"Oh, my only Aunt Maria!" murmured a junior Staff Officer. "Retire in disorder! It was a bally run!"

"But they came again, as we all know," cooed the Brigadier, the Colonel's ashy-white face before him, "and they behaved as well as could possibly be expected. <sup>1060</sup> Behaved beautifully, indeed. I was watching them. It's not a matter to take to heart, Colonel. As some German General said of his men, they wanted to be shot over a little, that was all." To himself he said — "Now they're blooded I can give 'em responsible <sup>1065</sup> work. It's as well that they got what they did. 'Teach 'em more than half a dozen rifle flirtations, that will

— later — run alone and bite. Poor old Colonel, though.”

All that afternoon the heliograph winked and flickered <sup>1070</sup> on the hills, striving to tell the good news to a mountain forty miles away. And in the evening there arrived, dusty, sweating, and sore, a misguided Correspondent, who had gone out to assist at a trumpery village-burning, and who had read off the message from afar, cursing <sup>1075</sup> his luck the while.

“Let’s have the details somehow — as full as ever you can, please. It’s the first time I’ve ever been left this campaign,” said the Correspondent to the Brigadier; and the Brigadier, nothing loath, told him how an Army <sup>1080</sup> of Communication had been crumpled up, destroyed, and all but annihilated, by the craft, strategy, wisdom, and foresight of the Brigadier.

But some say, and among these be the Gurkhas who watched on the hillside, that that battle was won by <sup>1085</sup> Jakin and Lew, whose little bodies were borne up just in time to fit two gaps at the head of the big ditch-grave for the dead under the heights of Jagai.

Are the drummer-boys mere types, or are they real characters, mixtures of bad and good? Read over the General Introduction, §§ 19, 20. Describe their personal appearance and their characters. • Is the story powerful? graphic? true to human nature? Would it have been a better story if the author had been able to arouse the same emotions of admiration and pity without the use of slang?

## INCIDENT OF THE FRENCH CAMP

ROBERT BROWNING

You know, we French stormed Ratisbon:

A mile or so away,

On a little mound, Napoleon

Stood on our storming-day;

1. The metre is tetrameter. Is it iambic tetrameter, or trochaic tetrameter?

With neck out-thrust, you fancy how, 5  
Legs wide, arms locked behind,  
As if to balance the prone brow  
Oppressive with its mind.

Just as perhaps he mused "My plans  
That soar, to earth may fall, 10  
Let once my army-leader Lannes  
Waver at yonder wall," —  
Out 'twixt the battery-smokes there flew  
A rider, bound on bound  
Full-galloping; nor bridle drew 15  
Until he reached the mound.

Then off there flung in smiling joy,  
And held himself erect  
By just his horse's mane, a boy:  
You hardly could suspect — 20  
(So tight he kept his lips compressed,  
Scarce any blood came through)  
You looked twice ere you saw his breast  
Was all but shot in two.

"Well," cried he, "Emperor, by God's grace 25  
We've got you Ratisbon!  
The Marshal's in the market-place,  
And you'll be there anon  
To see your flag-bird flap his vans  
Where I, to heart's desire, 30  
Perched him!" The chief's eye flashed; his plans  
Soared up again like fire.

The chief's eye flashed; but presently  
 Softened itself, as sheathes  
 A film the mother-eagle's eye 35  
 When her bruised eaglet breathes;  
 "You're wounded!" "Nay," the soldier's pride  
 Touched to the quick, he said:  
 "I'm killed, Sire!" And his chief beside  
 Smiling the boy fell dead. 40

## HERVÉ RIEL

ROBERT BROWNING

## I

On the sea and at the Hogue, sixteen hundred ninety-two,  
 Did the English fight the French, — woe to France!  
 And, the thirty-first of May, helter-skelter through the blue,  
 Like a crowd of frightened porpoises a shoal of sharks  
 pursue,  
 Came crowding ship on ship to Saint-Malo on the  
 Rance, 5  
 With the English fleet in view.

## II

'Twas the squadron that escaped, with the victor in full  
 chase;  
 First and foremost of the drove, in his great ship, Dam-  
 freville;  
 Close on him fled, great and small,  
 Twenty-two good ships in all; 10

3. Name the line according to the number of accents and the kind of foot. Is the metre rapid or slow? 4. Note that *which* is understood after *porpoises*. 9-12. Is there any reason for short lines? Compare *The Revenge*.

And they signalled to the place

“Help the winners of a race!

Get us guidance, give us harbor, take us quick — or,  
quicker still,

Here’s the English can and will!”

### III

Then the pilots of the place put out brisk and leapt on  
board; 15

“Why, what hope or chance have ships like these to  
pass?” laughed they:

“Rocks to starboard, rocks to port, all the passage scarred  
and scored,—

Shall the *Formidable* here, with her twelve and eighty guns,

Think to make the river-mouth by the single narrow way,  
Trust to enter — where ’tis ticklish for a craft of twenty  
tons, 20

And with flow at full beside?

Now, ’tis slackest ebb of tide.

Reach the mooring? Rather say,  
While rock stands or water runs,

Not a ship will leave the bay!” 25

### IV

Then was called a council straight.

Brief and bitter the debate:

“Here’s the English at our heels; would you have them  
take in tow

All that’s left us of the fleet, linked together stern and bow,  
For a prize to Plymouth Sound? Better run the ships  
aground!” 30

(Ended Damfreville his speech).



"Not a minute more to wait!

Let the captains all and each

Shove ashore, then blow up, burn the vessels on the  
beach!

France must undergo her fate.

35

V

"Give the word!" But no such word

Was ever spoke or heard;

For up stood, for out stepped, for in struck, amid all  
these —

A captain? A lieutenant? A mate — first, second, third?

No such man of mark, and meet

40

With his betters to compete,

But a simple Breton sailor, pressed by Tourville for the  
fleet —

A poor coasting-pilot he, Hervé Riel the Croisickese.

VI

And, "What mockery or malice have we here?" cries Hervé  
Riel:

"Are you mad, you Malouins? Are you cowards, fools,  
or rogues?"

45

Talk to me of rocks and shoals, me who took the sound-  
ings, tell

On my fingers every bank, every shallow, every swell

'Twixt the offing here and Grève, where the river dis-  
embogues!

Are you bought by English gold? Is it love the lying's for?

Morn and eve, night and day

50

Have I piloted your bay.

42. *Pressed* means *impressed*—forced into service. 43. *Croisickese* means an inhabitant of Croisic, a little seashore town in the north of France, where Browning spent many summers. See line 127. 48. *disembogues*, a rare word for *empties*; why did Browning use it?

Entered free and anchored fast at the foot of Solidor.

Burn the fleet and ruin France? That were worse than  
fifty Hogues!

Sirs, they know I speak the truth! Sirs, believe me  
there's a way!

Only let me lead the line, 55

Have the biggest ship to steer,

Get this *Formidable* clear,

Make the others follow mine,

And I lead them, most and least, by a passage I know well,

Right to Solidor, past Grève, 60

And there lay them safe and sound;

And if one ship misbehave, —

Keel so much as grate the ground,

Why, I've nothing but my life, — here's my head!" cries

Hervé Riel.

## VII

Not a minute more to wait. 65

"Steer us in, then, small and great!

Take the helm, lead the line, save the squadron!" cried  
its chief.

Captains, give the sailor place!

He is Admiral, in brief.

Still the north-wind, by God's grace! 70

See the noble fellow's face

As the big ship, with a bound,

Clears the entry like a hound,

Keeps the passage, as its inch of way were the wide sea's  
profound!

See, safe thro' shoal and rock, 75

How they follow in a flock,

Not a ship that misbehaves, not a keel that grates the  
ground,

Not a spar that comes to grief!  
 The peril, see, is past.  
 All are harbored to the last, 80  
 And just as Hervé Riel hollas "Anchor!" sure as fate,  
 Up the English come, — too late!

## VIII

So, the storm subsides to calm:  
 They see the green trees wave  
 On the heights o'erlooking Grève. 85  
 Hearts that bled are stanch'd with balm.  
 "Just our rapture to enhance,  
 Let the English rake the bay,  
 Gnash their teeth and glare askance  
 As they cannonade away! 90  
 'Neath rampired Solidor pleasant riding on the Rance!"  
 How hope succeeds despair on each captain's countenance!  
 Out burst all with one accord,  
 "This is Paradise for Hell!  
 Let France, let France's King 95  
 Thank the man that did the thing!"  
 What a shout, and all one word,  
 "Hervé Riel!"  
 As he stepped in front once more,  
 Not a symptom of surprise 100  
 In the frank blue Breton eyes —  
 Just the same man as before.

## IX

Then said Damfreville, "My friend,  
 I must speak out at the end,  
 Though I find the speaking hard. 105

90. Up to this point, which has received the most pleasure — the eye,  
 the ear, or the muscular sense of motion?

Praise is deeper than the lips:  
 You have saved the King his ships,  
     You must name your own reward.  
 'Faith, our sun was near eclipse!  
 Demand whate'er you will, 110  
 France remains your debtor still.  
 Ask to heart's content and have! or my name's not Dam-  
     freville."

## X

Then a beam of fun outbroke  
 On the bearded mouth that spoke,  
 As the honest heart laughed through 115  
 Those frank eyes of Breton blue:  
 "Since I needs must say my say,  
     Since on board the duty's done —  
     And from Malo Roads to Croisic Point, what is it but a  
     run? —  
 Since 'tis ask and have, I may — 120  
     Since the others go ashore —  
 Come! A good whole holiday!  
     Leave to go and see my wife, whom I call the Belle  
     Aurore!"  
 That he asked and that he got — nothing more.

## XI

Name and deed alike are lost: 125  
 Not a pillar nor a post  
     In his Croisic keeps alive the feat as it befell;  
 Not a head in white and black  
 On a single fishing-smack,  
 In memory of the man but for whom had gone to wrack 130  
     All that France saved from the fight whence England bore  
     the bell.

131. "Bearing the bell" means being victorious. The allusion is to the fact that little bells were once used as prizes in athletic contests.

Go to Paris: rank on rank

Search the heroes flung pell-mell

On the Louvre, face and flank!

You shall look long enough ere you come to Hervé Riel. 135

So, for better and for worse,

Hervé Riel, accept my verse!

In my verse, Hervé Riel, do thou once more

Save the squadron, honor France, love thy wife, the Belle

Aurore!

132-134. This merely means that there are thousands of portraits of French heroes in the gallery of the Louvre.

Has the poem unity? climax? clearness? force? Is its melody injured by any harsh sounds? Specify.

## THE DESERTER FROM THE CAUSE

GERALD MASSEY

He is gone: better so. We should know who stand under

Our banner: let none but the trusty remain!

For there's stern work at hand, and the time comes shall  
sunder

The shell from the pearl, and the chaff from the grain.  
And the heart that through danger and death will be dutiful,

Soul that with Cranmer in fire would shake hands, 6  
With a life like a palace-home built for the beautiful,  
Freedom of all her beloved demands.

He is gone from us! Yet shall we march on victorious,

Hearts burning like beacons — eyes fix'd on the goal! 10  
And if we fall fighting, we fall like the glorious,

With face to the stars, and all heaven in the soul.

1. Name the line according to number of accents. Anapestic or dactylic metre? What kind of ending? 2. What kind of ending? 6. Cranmer, burnt at the stake by Bloody Mary in 1556, thrust his right hand into the flames and let it burn first, because it had signed a cowardly recantation of his religious beliefs.

And aye for the brave stir of battle we'll barter  
 The sword of life sheath'd in the peace of the grave;  
 And better the fieriest fate of the martyr, 15  
 Than live like the coward, and die like the slave!

### HEATHER ALE: A GALLOWAY LEGEND<sup>1</sup>

ROBERT LOUIS STEVENSON

From the bonny bells of heather  
 They brewed a drink long-syne,  
 Was sweeter far than honey,  
 Was stronger far than wine.  
 They brewed it and they drank it, 5  
 And lay in a blessed swoond  
 For days and days together  
 In their dwellings underground.

There rose a king in Scotland,  
 A fell man to his foes, 10  
 He smote the Picts in battle,  
 He hunted them like roes.  
 Over miles of the red mountain  
 He hunted as they fled,  
 And strewed the dwarfish bodies 15  
 Of the dying and the dead.

Summer came in the country,  
 Red was the heather bell;  
 But the manner of the brewing  
 Was none alive to tell. 20

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from "Ballads," by permission of Charles Scribner's Sons.

1. The metre is normally iambic, as appears in line 2; but, as so often happens in English, we have many *substitutions* of two short syllables for one long, thus: Fróm the bónný bélls of heáthër. 8. Might this stanza be written as four lines? Would it be as pleasant so written?

In graves that were like children's  
On many a mountain head,  
The Brewsters of the Heather  
Lay numbered with the dead.

The king in the red moorland 25  
Rode on a summer's day;  
And the bees hummed, and the curlews  
Cried beside the way.

The king rode, and was angry;  
Black was his brow and pale, 30  
To rule in a land of heather  
And lack the Heather Ale.

It fortune'd that his vassals,  
Riding free on the heath,  
Came on a stone that was fallen 35  
And vermin hid beneath.  
Rudely plucked from their hiding,  
Never a word they spoke:  
A son and his aged father —  
Last of the dwarfish folk. 40

The king sat high on his charger,  
He looked on the little men;  
And the dwarfish and swarthy couple  
Looked at the king again.  
Down by the shore he had them; 45  
And there on the giddy brink —  
"I will give you life, ye vermin,  
For the secret of the drink."

There stood the son and father  
And they looked high and low; 50  
The heather was red around them,  
The sea rumbled below.

- And up and spoke the father,  
Shrill was his voice to hear:  
"I have a word in private,  
A word for the royal ear. 55
- "Life is dear to the aged,  
And honor a little thing;  
I would gladly sell the secret,"  
Quoth the Pict to the king. 60  
His voice was small as a sparrow's,  
And shrill and wonderful clear:  
"I would gladly sell my secret,  
Only my son I fear.
- "For life is a little matter, 65  
And death is naught to the young;  
And I dare not sell my honor  
Under the eye of my son.  
Take *him*, O king, and bind him,  
And cast him far in the deep; 70  
And it's I will tell the secret  
That I have sworn to keep."
- They took the son and bound him,  
Neck and heels in a thong,  
And a lad took him and swung him, 75  
And flung him far and strong,  
And the sea swallowed his body,  
Like that of a child of ten;—  
And there on the cliff stood the father,  
Last of the dwarfish men. 80
- "True was the word I told you:  
Only my son I feared;  
For I doubt the sapling courage  
That goes without the beard.



But now in vain is the torture, 85  
 Fire shall never avail:  
 Here dies in my bosom  
 The secret of Heather Ale."

What colors are suggested in the ballad? Why does not Stevenson linger on the pictures?

## ADAM OF GORDON

## FOLK BALLAD

It fell about the Martinmas,  
 When the wind blew shrill and cold,  
 Said Adam of Gordon to his men,  
 "We maun draw to a hold.

"And whatna hold shall we draw to, 5  
 My merry men and me?  
 We will go to the house of Rodes,  
 To see that fair ladye."

The lady stood on her castle wall;  
 Beheld both dale and down; 10  
 There she was aware of a host of men  
 Came riding towards the town.

"O see ye not, my merry men all,  
 O see ye not what I see?  
 Methinks I see a host of men: 15  
 I marvel who they be."

4. *maun draw to a hold*, must proceed to a stronghold. 8. Iambic or trochaic? Do accents fall on the syllables accented in ordinary speech? Does not the folk ballad (see p. 1) seem to differ, in this matter of the accent, from artificial, written poetry? Can you see any reasons why this should be so? 12. *town*, the castle.

She had no sooner buskit herself,  
 And putten on her gown,  
 Till Adam of Gordon and his men  
 Were round about the town. 20

The lady ran to her tower-head,  
 As fast as she could hie,  
 To see if by her fair speeches  
 She could with him agree.

"Give o'er your house, ye lady fair, 25  
 Give o'er your house to me!  
 Or I shall burn yourself therein,  
 But and your babies three."

"I winna give o'er, ye false Gordon,  
 To no sic traitor as thee; 30  
 And if ye burn my ain dear babes,  
 My lord shall mak' ye dree.

—"Woe worth, woe worth ye, Jock, my man;  
 I paid ye well your fee;  
 Why pull ye out the grund-wa' stonie, 35  
 Lets in the reek to me?

"And e'en woe worth ye, Jock, my man!  
 I paid ye well your hire;  
 Why pull ye out the grund-wa' stone,  
 To me lets in the fire?" 40

—"Ye paid me well my hire, ladye,  
 Ye paid me well my fee;  
 But now I'm Adam of Gordon's man,—  
 Must either do or dee."

17. *buskit*, clad. 22. In the Northern pronunciation, *hie* rhymes with *agree*; cf. line 44. 28. *but and*, and besides. 32. *dree*, rue. 36. *reek*, smoke.

O then bespake her little son,  
 Sat on the nurse's knee;  
 Says, "O mither dear, give o'er this house!  
 For the reek it smothers me."

45

— "I winna give up my house, my dear,  
 To no sic traitor as he:  
 Come weel, come woe, my jewel fair,  
 Ye maun take share with me."

50

O then bespake her daughter dear,—  
 She was both jimp and small:  
 "O row me in a pair of sheets,  
 And tow me o'er the wall!"

55

They row'd her in a pair of sheets,  
 And tow'd her o'er the wall;  
 But on the point of Gordon's spear  
 She gat a deadly fall.

60

O bonnie, bonnie was her mouth,  
 And cherry were her cheeks,  
 And clear, clear was her yellow hair,  
 Whereon the red blood dreeps!

Then with his spear he turn'd her o'er;  
 O gin her face was wan!  
 He said, "Ye are the first that e'er  
 I wish'd alive again."

65

"Busk and boun, my merry men all,  
 For ill dooms I do guess; —  
 I cannot look on that bonnie face  
 As it lies on the grass."

70

54. *jimp*, graceful. 55. *row*, roll. 66. *gin*, if. 69. *busk and boun*, make ready.

But when the ladye saw the fire  
 Come flaming o'er her head,  
 She wept, and kiss'd her children twain, 75  
 Says, "Bairns, we be but dead."

— O this way look'd her own dear lord,  
 As he came o'er the lea;  
 He saw his castle all in a lowe,  
 So far as he could see. 80

"Put on, put on, my mighty men,  
 As fast as ye can dri'e!  
 For he that's hindmost of the thrang  
 Shall ne'er get good of me!"

Then some they rade, and some they ran, 85  
 Out-o'er the grass and bent;  
 But ere the foremost could win up,  
 Both lady and babes were brent.

And after the Gordon he is gane,  
 Sae fast as he might dri'e; 90  
 And soon i' the Gordon's foul heart's blood  
 He's wroken his fair ladye.

79. *lowe*, flame. 82. *dri'e*, drive. 92. *wroken*, avenged.

Is the ballad simple? affecting? Select what seems to you the most powerful stanza. Is there throughout the ballad a vivid appeal to the eye?

## A PLANTATION HEROINE

GEORGE CARY EGGLESTON

It was nearing the end.

Every resource of the Southern states had been taxed  
 to the point of exhaustion.

The people had given up everything they had for  
 "the cause."

5

Under the law of a "tax in kind," they had surrendered all they could spare of food products of every character. Under an untamable impulse of patriotism they had surrendered much more than they could spare in order to feed the army.

10

It was at such a time that I went to my home county on a little military business. I stopped for dinner at a house, the lavish hospitality of which had been a byword in the old days.

It found before me at dinner the remnants of a cold 15  
 boiled ham, some boiled mustard greens, which we Virginians called "salad," a pitcher of buttermilk, some corn pones, and — nothing else.

I carved the ham, and offered to serve it to the three women of the household. But they all declined. They 20  
 made their dinner on salad, buttermilk, and corn bread, the latter eaten very sparingly, as I observed. The ham went only to myself and to the three convalescent wounded soldiers, who were guests in the house.

Wounded men were at that time guests in every house 25  
 in Virginia.

I lay awake that night and thought over the circumstance. The next morning I took occasion to have a talk on the old familiar terms with the young woman of the family, with whom I had been on a basis of friend- 30  
 ship in the old days that even permitted me to kiss her upon due and proper occasion.

"Why didn't you take some ham last night?" I asked urgently.

"Oh, I didn't want it," she replied.

35

14. Might the first five paragraphs better be combined in one? 24. Might the sixth and seventh?

"Now, you know you're fibbing," I said. "Tell me the truth, won't you?"

She blushed, and hesitated. Presently she broke down and answered frankly: "Honestly, I did want the ham. I have hungered for meat for months. But I 40 mustn't eat it, and I won't. You see the army needs all the food there is, and more. We women can't fight, though I don't see at all why they shouldn't let us, and so we are trying to feed the fighting men — and there aren't any others. We've made up our minds not to eat 45 anything that can be sent to the front as rations."

"You are starving yourselves," I exclaimed.

"Oh, no," she said. "And if we were, what would it matter? Haven't Lee's soldiers starved many a day? But we aren't starving. You see we had plenty of salad 50 and buttermilk last night. And we even ate some of the corn bread. I must stop that, by the way, for corn meal is a good ration for the soldiers."

A month or so later this frail but heroic young girl was laid away in the Grub Hill churchyard. 55

Don't talk to me about the "heroism" that braves a fire of hell under enthusiastic impulse. That young girl did a higher act of self-sacrifice than any soldier who fought on either side during the war ever dreamed of doing. 60

## THE ANGELS OF BUENA VISTA

JOHN GREENLEAF WHITTIER

Speak and tell us, our Ximena, looking northward far away,  
O'er the camp of the invaders, o'er the Mexican array,  
Who is losing? who is winning? are they far or come  
they near?

1. Ximena (*zimdynya*). Is the metre iambic or trochaic?

Look abroad, and tell us, sister, whither rolls the storm we hear.

“Down the hills of Angostura still the storm of battle rolls;  
Blood is flowing, men are dying; God have mercy on their  
souls!” 6

Who is losing? who is winning? — “Over hill and over  
plain,  
I see but smoke of cannon clouding through the mountain  
rain.”

Holy Mother! keep our brothers! Look, Ximena, look  
once more:

“Still I see the fearful whirlwind rolling darkly as  
before, 10

Bearing on, in strange confusion, friend and foeman, foot  
and horse,

Like some wild and troubled torrent sweeping down its  
mountain course.”

Look forth once more, Ximena! “Ah! the smoke has  
rolled away;

And I see the Northern rifles gleaming down the ranks of  
gray.

Hark! that sudden blast of bugles! there the troop of  
Minon wheels; 15

There the Northern horses thunder, with the cannon at  
their heels.

“Jesū, pity! how it thickens! now retreat and now advance!  
Right against the blazing cannon shivers Puebla’s charging  
lance!

Down they go, the brave young riders; horse and foot  
together fall;

Like a ploughshare in the fallow, through them plough  
the Northern ball.” 20

Nearer came the storm and nearer, rolling fast and fright-  
ful on:

Speak, Ximena, speak and tell us, who has lost, and who  
has won?

"Alas! alas! I know not; friend and foe together fall,  
O'er the dying rush the living: pray, my sisters, for them  
all!"

"Lo! the wind the smoke is lifting: Blessed Mother, save  
my brain! 25

I can see the wounded crawling slowly out from heaps of  
slain.

Now they stagger, blind and bleeding; now they fall, and  
strive to rise;

Hasten, sisters, haste and save them, lest they die before  
our eyes!"

"Oh my heart's love! oh my dear one! lay thy poor head  
on my knee;

Dost thou know the lips that kiss thee? Canst thou hear  
me? canst thou see? 30

Oh, my husband, brave and gentle! oh, my Bernal, look  
once more

On the blessed cross before thee! mercy! mercy! all is  
o'er!"

Dry thy tears, my poor Ximena; lay thy dear one down to  
rest;

Let his hands be meekly folded, lay the cross upon his  
breast;

Let his dirge be sung hereafter, and his funeral masses  
said; 35

To-day, thou poor bereaved one, the living ask thy aid.

29. Here Ximena speaks. There are two speakers in this poem besides the poet; is there a dialogue, or are there two monologues?



Close beside her, faintly moaning, fair and young, a  
soldier lay,  
Torn with shot and pierced with lances, bleeding slow his  
life away;  
But, as tenderly before him, the lorn Ximena knelt,  
She saw the Northern eagle shining on his pistol belt. 40

With a stifled cry of horror straight she turned away her  
head;  
With a sad and bitter feeling looked she back upon her  
dead;  
But she heard the youth's low moaning, and his struggling  
breath of pain,  
And she raised the cooling water to his parching lips again.

Whispered low the dying soldier, pressed her hand and  
faintly smiled: 45  
Was that pitying face his mother's? did she watch beside  
her child?  
All his stranger words with meaning her woman's heart  
supplied;  
With her kiss upon his forehead, "Mother!" murmured  
he, and died!

"A bitter curse upon them, poor boy, who led thee  
forth,  
From some gentle, sad-eyed mother, weeping, lonely, in  
the North!" 50  
Spake the mournful Mexic woman, as she laid him with  
her dead,  
And turned to soothe the living, and bind the wounds  
which bled.

Look forth once more, Ximena! "Like a cloud before the  
wind  
Rolls the battle down the mountains, leaving blood and  
death behind;  
Ah! they plead in vain for mercy; in the dust the wounded  
strive; 55  
Hide your faces, holy angels! oh, thou Christ of God,  
forgive!"

Sink, oh Night, among thy Mountains! let the cool, gray  
shadows fall;  
Dying brothers, fighting demons, drop thy curtain over  
all!  
Through the thickening winter twilight, wide apart the  
battle rolled,  
In its sheath the sabre rested, and the cannon's lips grew  
cold. 60

But the noble Mexic women still their holy task pur-  
sued,  
Through that long, dark night of sorrow, worn and faint  
and lacking food;  
Over weak and suffering brothers, with a tender care they  
hung,  
And the dying foeman blessed them in a strange and  
Northern tongue.

Not wholly lost, oh Father! is this evil world of ours; 65  
Upward, through its blood and ashes, spring afresh the  
Eden flowers;  
From its smoking hell of battle, Love and Pity send their  
prayer,  
And still thy white-winged angels hover dimly in our air!

DECORATION<sup>1</sup>*Manibus date lilia plenis*

THOMAS WENTWORTH HIGGINSON

'Mid the flower-wreathed tombs I stand,  
 Bearing lilies in my hand.  
 Comrades! in what soldier-grave  
 Sleeps the bravest of the brave?

Is it he who sank to rest 5  
 With his colors round his breast?  
 Friendship makes his tomb a shrine,  
 Garlands veil it; ask not mine.

One low grave, yon trees beneath,  
 Bears no roses, wears no wreath; 10  
 Yet no heart more high and warm  
 Ever dared the battle-storm.

Never gleamed a prouder eye  
 In the front of victory;  
 Never foot had firmer tread 15  
 On the field where hope lay dead,

Than are hid within this tomb,  
 Where the untended grasses bloom;  
 And no stone with feigned distress,  
 Mocks the sacred loneliness. 20

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from *The Afternoon Landscape*, by permission of Longmans, Green, & Co.

The Latin motto means "Strew handfuls of lilies." It is from Vergil, and refers to the death of the young Roman prince, Marcellus, son of Augustus Cæsar. The whole poem may be compared with Bryant's *The Conqueror's Grave*.

4. Do the simple, regular metre and simple rhyme-scheme (couplets) fit the theme?

Youth and beauty, dauntless will,  
 Dreams that life could ne'er fulfil  
 Here lie buried, — here in peace  
 Wrongs and woes have found release.

Turning from my comrades' eyes, 25  
 Kneeling where a woman lies,  
 I strew lilies on the grave  
 Of the bravest of the brave.

### THE BURIAL OF SIR JOHN MOORE

CHARLES WOLFE

Not a drum was heard, not a funeral note,  
 As his corse to the rampart we hurried;  
 Not a soldier discharged his farewell shot  
 O'er the grave where our hero we buried.

We buried him darkly at dead of night, 5  
 The sods with our bayonets turning;  
 By the struggling moonbeam's misty light,  
 And the lantern dimly burning.

No useless coffin enclosed his breast,  
 Not in sheet nor in shroud we wound him; 10  
 But he lay like a warrior taking his rest  
 With his martial cloak around him.

Few and short were the prayers we said,  
 And we spoke not a word of sorrow;  
 But we steadfastly gazed on the face that was dead, 15  
 And we bitterly thought of the morrow.

1. Name the line according to the accents and predominant foot. What ending? 2. What ending? Does it hasten the movement?

We thought, as we hollowed his narrow bed,  
 . And smoothed down his lonely pillow,  
 That the foe and the stranger would tread o'er his head,  
 And we far away on the billow! 20

Lightly they'll talk of the spirit that's gone,  
 And o'er his cold ashes upbraid him, —  
 But little he'll reck, if they let him sleep on  
 In the grave where a Briton has laid him.

But half of our heavy task was done, 25  
 When the clock struck the hour for retiring;  
 And we heard the distant and random gun  
 That the foe was sullenly firing.

Slowly and sadly we laid him down,  
 From the field of his fame fresh and gory; 30  
 We carved not a line, and we raised not a stone —  
 But we left him alone with his glory!

Which stanza presents the most striking picture? Which appeals the most to the ear? Which seems the most genuine in its sadness?

## ON THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION

WILLIAM PITT, EARL OF CHATHAM

I cannot, my lords, I *will not*, join in congratulation on misfortune and disgrace. This, my lords, is a perilous and tremendous moment: it is not a time for adulation: the smoothness of flattery cannot save us in this rugged and awful crisis. It is now necessary to instruct 5 the throne, in the language of TRUTH. We must, if possible, dispel the delusion and darkness which envelop it; and display, in its full danger and genuine colors, the ruin which is brought to our doors. Can ministers still presume to expect support in their infatuation? 10

Can Parliament be so dead to its dignity and duty as to give their support to measures thus obtruded and forced upon them — measures, my lords, which have reduced this late flourishing empire to scorn and contempt. But yesterday, “and England might have stood against the 15 world — now, none so poor to do her reverence.” The people we at first despised as rebels, but whom we now acknowledge as enemies, are abetted against you, supplied with every military store, their interests consulted, and their ambassadors entertained by your inveterate 20 enemy; and our ministers do not, and dare not, interpose with dignity or effect. The desperate state of our army abroad is in part known. No man more highly esteems and honors the English troops than I do: I know their virtue and their valor: I know they can 25 achieve anything except impossibilities; and I know that the conquest of English America is an impossibility. You cannot, my lords, you CANNOT conquer America. What is your present situation there? We do not know the worst, but we know that in three campaigns we have 30 done nothing, and suffered much. You may swell every expense, and strain every effort, accumulate every assistance, and extend your traffic to the shambles of every German despot; your attempts forever will be vain and impotent; doubly so indeed from this mercenary aid on 35 which you rely; for it irritates to an incurable resentment the minds of your adversaries to overrun them with the mercenary sons of rapine and plunder, devoting them and their possessions to the rapacity of hireling cruelty. If I were an American, as I am an English- 40 man, while a foreign troop was landed in my country, I never would lay down my arms — NEVER! NEVER! NEVER!

Is the language of this passage colloquial or elevated? Is it high-flown, or was it warranted by the occasion?

## CONCORD HYMN

SUNG AT THE COMPLETION OF THE BATTLE MONUMENT,  
APRIL 19, 1836

RALPH WALDO EMERSON

By the rude bridge that arched the flood,  
Their flag to April's breeze unfurled,  
Here once the embattled farmers stood,  
And fired the shot heard round the world.

The foe long since in silence slept; 5  
Alike the conqueror silent sleeps;  
And Time the ruined bridge has swept  
Down the dark stream which seaward creeps.

On this green bank, by this soft stream, 10  
We set to-day a votive stone;  
That memory may their deed redeem,  
When, like our sires, our sons are gone.

Spirit, that made those heroes dare  
To die, and leave their children free,  
Bid Time and Nature gently spare 15  
The shaft we raise to them and thee.

2. Name the line according to accents and feet. 3. *embattled* is a word of Emerson's coinage; is it good? 9. Why *soft*?

This poem was sung as a hymn. Which of the following things are particularly desirable in a hymn: elaborate phrases; words easily understood; complex, skilfully varied metre (like that of *The Revenge*); even, regular metre; tripping movement; stately movement; simple thought; complex thought; overwhelming emotion; sincere but controlled emotion?

**Plan of Summary.** — Reviewing the chapter, (1) enumerate the kinds of metre, designating them by the number of accents and the predominant foot. Then (2) say which poem is most noticeable for melody; (3) which for beauty of suggested sights; (4) which for pleasure of suggested sounds; (5) which for pleasure of suggested activity; (6) which for pleasure of suggested odors or tastes; (7) which is most easily understood; (8) which moves the reader most deeply; (9) which shows most skill in character drawing; (10) which has the best unity; (11) which, your critical judgment tells you, is the best piece of work; (12) which you like the best, — without regard to its deserved rank, or its fame.



## CHAPTER III

### THE HEROISM OF PEACE

THOUGH wars have sometimes been a moral necessity, as Miss Clarke implies in her stirring ballad of our American Revolution, and though, in Douglas Jerrold's words, "There is a peace more destructive of the manhood of living man than war is destructive to his material body," yet honorable peace is man's noblest achievement. When blood is up and thirst for revenge is hot, it is easy to go on fighting to the death. There are nations that live in eternal war with each other. Even in civilized lands, there are families between which exist feuds of centuries' standing. It is distinctly heroic, therefore, to be quickly reconciled with an enemy. Walt Whitman, as he pictures a soldier gazing upon the dead face of his foe, declares Reconciliation to be the most beautiful word in the world.

It is hard for the victor to refrain from unheroic exultation over his enemy, and harder for the vanquished to take up his broken life and make the most of it. Consider the case of the Southern soldier, whom Mr. Grady, in a brilliant speech, sketched as returning to his ruined home. Northern youth of to-day cannot appreciate what it has cost the Southerners to reconstruct the South.

It is a great thing to save a state by force of arms. It is a greater thing to save it afterward from dishonesty and corruption. The soldiers who fought the battles of the Civil War found another fight to wage when they got home. Military heroes, both Northern and Southern, had now to

Hannah  
the Quakeress,  
p. 117.

Reconciliation,  
p. 12.

The Confederate  
Soldier  
after the  
War, p. 12.

protect the nation from greedy office-seeking and traitorous office-using. The poet Bayard Taylor told the Union veterans, as long ago as 1877, that their hardest work was yet to do. He declared that to the soldier of peace each true man is a friend, each false man a foe. Longfellow hated war almost as much as he hated slavery. In one of his strongest short poems he declared that half the money spent on camps and forts could be so spent as to remove all need of camps and forts.

The Arsenal at Springfield, p. 123.

Peace hath her victories,  
No less renowned than war,

sings Milton. Yet few of the individuals who win the victories of peace can be renowned. Homer says of a particular hour's fight that it were hard for him, though he were a god, to tell of all the deeds. Many a gallant fellow dies in battle without hope of the poet's praise, but more suffer a similar fate in time of peace. It is the unsung courage of nameless men that keeps the world moving. The fisherman on the winter ocean, the patrolman on the coast, the miner in the fire-damp, the engineer at the throttle, the fireman in the burning house, the nurse and the doctor in the plague,—all these are splendidly intrepid. Of a thousand such heroes but few have passed into literature. The duty of all fishermen stands out sternly in Kingsley's song of the three who lay dead on the shining sands. A young sailor relaxing his hold on the tiny raft, to save his friend who has a family, is the theme of Miss Hickey's *A Sea Story*. In Whitman's *Patroling Barnegat*, the life-saver struggles steadily through the blinding night on his humane mission. The self-sacrifice of a rough miner is honored in one of Bret Harte's poems (*In the Tunnel*), and in another (*Guild's Signal*) that of the engineer who disdains to jump from his engine. The fidelity of Conductor Bradley did

The Three Fishers,  
p. 125.  
A Sea Story,  
p. 126.

Patroling Barnegat,  
p. 127.

not escape the notice of Whittier. The nurse in the plague has never been written of more affectingly than by Mrs. Phelps Ward in her story of the murderer Zerviah Hope, who washed out his crime by giving his life for others. The doctor appears in Whittier's *The Hero* as achieving the impossible. This particular hero was Dr. Howe, who, with infinite patience and skill, taught Laura Bridgman. He found a way of enriching life for those born without sight, hearing, and speech. Dr. Holmes has also praised the physician, in his poem of *The Two Armies*. The duty of one army is to slay; that of the other, the far nobler band, is to save. A great fire reveals heroism not merely in the ordinary fireman, like him of Mrs. Mulock Craik's *A True Hero*, but in other people. Lowell tells—*An Incident of the Fire at Hamburgh*—how, when the flames were beating down his church, the old sexton stood by his bells, and chimed, "All good souls praise the Lord," until the tower came crashing down.

An Incident of the Fire at Hamburgh, p. 128.

Recognized or unrecognized in literature, great deeds are not lacking in common life. Mr. Kipling is said to have declared that there will be no dearth of subjects for literature so long as the daily paper exists. Certainly that is true of themes for heroic ballads. To-day it is the account of a gamin unconcernedly losing an arm in saving his chum amid the maze of tracks; to-morrow, that of a painter dashing before a car and yielding his life for a stranger's child,—I refer to Hovenden, whose picture, "Breaking Home Ties," was at the Fair of 1893. It may be a report of fine humanity from a quarter where it was least expected. Dr. Conan Doyle has versified such a report of a sporting man. He was a quiet fellow, riding to the hounds with a party of friends. It is the custom of fox-hunters to call out "'Ware Holes," when they see a rabbit-burrow that may trip those behind. The "gent from

'Ware Holes, p. 130.

London" ran at full speed upon a deep, hidden quarry. He went down easily to his death, calmly singing out, "'Ware Holes," — and saved all three who were just behind him.<sup>1</sup>

The severest tests of heroism come when the hero has no immediate pattern to work by. Most persons have imagined themselves saving another's life, — though, indeed, that is not the same thing as performing the feat. But the actual demands for heroism are often of an unexpected sort. A new species of courage must be shown. A "loftier way," as Emerson said, must be found. For example, if physical courage is demanded, it is apt to be some absurd thing like controlling an irritable nerve. New forms of bravery are constantly being exhibited. Even in children the highest courage in enduring pain, both physical and mental, is often seen. The mere pains of fear felt by children are inconceivable to grown persons, — fear of the dark, fear of animals, fear of the bully, fear of ridicule, fear of death. To overcome any of these is a great achievement for a child. The following anecdote by Dr. Clay Trumbull, of Philadelphia, would be incredible to any but those who have studied children: —

"There was a tender-hearted, loving child in a New England home, to whom life was all gladness and joy. He loved as he was loved, and he was worthy of all the love which was given to him. One day, as he was starting out for a ride with his parents, he asked them where they were going; and they told him that they were going to take him up to the new cemetery, a beautiful city of the dead by the river's bank, beyond the town. His bright face grew

<sup>1</sup> On the day that these lines were sent to the printer, the newspapers were reporting the heroic death of a sporting man in New York. Mr. James McDonald threw his runaway horse to save a collision with approaching carriages. In so doing he was obliged to sacrifice his own life and that of his horse.

shadowed, and his little lips quivered, so that his father asked him, 'Why, Willy, don't you want to go there?' Quietly the trustful answer came back, 'Yes, if you think it best, papa.' And they rode on silently, in through the broad gateway; on, along the lovely tree-shaded and turf-bordered avenues.

"That bright boy seemed strangely quiet, clinging in love to his mother's side, and looking up from time to time with a face that seemed never so beautiful in its restful confidence. As they finally passed out again from the gateway they had entered, the dear child drew a breath of relief, and, looking up in new surprise, asked, 'Why, am I going *back* with you again?' 'Of course you are. Why should you doubt it?' 'Why, I thought that when they took little children to the cemetery, they left them there,' said that hero-child.

"And then it was found that with a child's imperfect knowledge that dear boy had supposed he was being taken, at the call of God, and by the parents whom he loved and trusted, to be buried in the place which he had heard of only as a place of burial. And all by himself he had had the struggle with himself, and had proved the victor."<sup>1</sup>

Children know so little of life that they can hardly be expected to have courage; they have few grounds for courage. Imagine an orphan girl in the hospital, a little creature like that in Mr. Henley's *Enter Patient*. Imagine this child overhearing a surgeon say that she must undergo an operation from which she can hardly hope to recover. Some idea of what an operation means can be had from Mr. Henley's poem on that subject. There is no parent to assure her that it will "not hurt much"; that "father will hold her hand all the while." Now we get the situation in Tennyson's poem on little Emmie. Her childish

Enter Patient, p. 132

Operation P. 133.

In the Children's Hospital, P. 134.

<sup>1</sup> "Character-shaping and Character-showing."

heart is shaken with fear, but she asks advice of Annie, who lies in the next cot. Annie advises an appeal to the Lord Jesus — on the wall there is a print of Him among the children. But Emmie is sceptical; how will He know who is who, among so many cots in the ward. "Tell Him it is the little girl with her arms lying out on the counterpane." This device serves, and Emmie falls asleep with courageous heart. In that repose of faith she is permitted to slip away into the world of light.

As life grows more complex, the occasions for unobserved courage become more numerous. San Lorenzo's mother, in Mrs. Meynell's lovely poem, had given her son to the cloister, and had not seen him since he reached his manhood. When one day a member of his order came, she thought she recognized her boy, and her heart sprang to meet him. But she had given him absolutely to the holy cause, and she would neither come between him and it, nor allow him to hide from her the Son that cannot change. Perhaps she was mistaken in her duty, but could any action be braver?

The poet Whittier celebrated many instances of moral courage. It was he who wrote of the Scotch Quaker Barclay, prefixing to his poem these words: "Among the earliest converts to the doctrine of Friends, in Scotland, was Barclay of Ury, an old and distinguished soldier, who had fought under Gustavus Adolphus, in Germany. As a Quaker, he became the object of persecution and abuse at the hands of the magistrates and the populace. None bore the indignities of the mob with greater patience and nobleness of soul than this once proud gentleman and soldier. One of his friends, on an occasion of uncommon rudeness, lamented that he should be treated so harshly in his old age, who had been so honored before. 'I find more satisfaction,' said Barclay, 'as well as honor in being thus

San Lorenzo Gius-  
tiniani's  
Mother,  
p. 139.

Barclay of  
Ury, p. 140.

insulted for my religious principles, than when, a few years ago, it was usual for the magistrates, as I passed the city of Aberdeen, to meet me on the road and conduct me to public entertainment in their hall, and then escort me out again, to gain my favor.' "

The same poet's hero, Davenport, was a man of superb self-control. About ten on the morning of 19th May, 1780, a strange darkness fell upon New England. To this day astronomers are not sure what caused it. In the Connecticut State House the legislators, fearful of the Judgment Day, were on the point of breaking up, when Abraham Davenport addressed the assembly and brought it to its senses. He admitted that this might be the Judgment Day, but

Let God do his work, we will see to ours.

Bring in the candles. And they brought them in.

That old New England blood was not watery. The Pilgrims were fanatics, perhaps, but much may be pardoned a fanatic if he is also a hero; and heroes they were. To cross, for conscience' sake, an unknown sea to a land of savages, where one is almost certain to perish, is an adequate test of moral courage. Of the poems that have been written about the Pilgrims, that by Mrs. Hemans is the most stirring, though Bryant's is finished and dignified.

A recent writer, Mrs. Stetson, has pointed out very emphatically the lack of the heroic in the business life. With what splendid scorn she repeats the common phrase "A man must live!" Imagine, she says, a soldier with that for a battle-cry! Mr. Heman White Chaplin has a story called *Eli*,<sup>1</sup> in which he pictures the high courage which faces loss of money, friends, and social position. A certain fisherman is summoned for jury service in a trial for bank

Landing  
the Pilgr  
Fathers i  
New Eng  
land, p. 1.  
The  
Twenty-  
second o  
Decemb  
p. 146.  
"A Man  
must  
Live,"  
p. 147.

<sup>1</sup> In the admirable volume, "Five Hundred Dollars, and Other Stories." Boston: Little, Brown, & Co.

robbery. He believes the accused man innocent, though all the evidence is against him. Eli stands out against the persuasion of the other jurors. They give him to understand what such determination to defeat justice will mean.

"Lively times some folks'll hev', when they go home," said a spare tin-peddler, stroking his long yellow goatee. "Go into the store: nobody speak to you; go to cattle-show: everybody follow you 'round; go to the wharf: nobody weigh your fish; go to buy seed-cakes to the cart: baker won't give no tick." The butcher asks the foreman how much it costs "for a man 't's obliged to leave town, to move a family out West." A friend says to Eli, "They can kill your wife and break down your children. Women and children can't stand it." But Eli holds out, nor is he mistaken in his man.

The Hero,  
p. 148.

According to Robert Nicoll, the hero is not the soldier. "Go, mock at conquerors and kings." They are the inferiors of the poor man who works hard and makes no man, woman, or child unhappy. On the whole, young Nicoll was probably right. So was Whittier, when he said, in the poem on Dr. Howe, —

Dream not helm and harness  
The sign of valor true;  
Peace hath higher tests of manhood  
Than battle ever knew.



[From *Harper's Magazine*. Copyright, 1898, by Harper & Brothers]

## HANNAH THE QUAKERESS

## AN INCIDENT OF THE REVOLUTION

EDNAH PROCTOR CLARKE

Hannah the Quakeress sat  
And knit, by the parlor door;  
And she heard within the Brethren's feet  
Pacing her sanded floor;

For to-day — in the hour of fear,  
Of defeat by land and sea,  
When despair had clutched the hearts that fought  
Or prayed for Liberty,

5

When lives and gold seemed flung  
In a useless, hopeless fight  
Waged by a handful of ragged boys  
Against great England's might,

10

They had met at Friend Isaac's house  
To vote for a shameful peace.  
(Better their gold with a tyrant's bond  
Than Freedom's beggared lease!)

15

And Hannah, who curtsied them in  
By two and three and four,  
With their brooding lips and their troubled eyes,  
Thought, as she scanned them o'er:

20

"They're wanting no woman's word;  
My counsel they'd scorn and mock;  
But I'll set my chair by the parlor door,  
And turn the heel of my sock."

She was the gentlest dame, 25  
The most dutiful wife, in town;  
Never a glint of her heart's fire slipped  
'Neath the veil of her lashes brown.

But swifter her needles clicked  
As the wavering footsteps went 30  
To and fro till for "Peace!" for "Peace!"  
The clamorous voices blent.

"Peace!" — and her knitting stopped  
As the dastard votes were cast —  
As the Elder read them one by one — 35  
And Isaac's name was the last!

Ah! — in through the wide-flung door  
Burst Hannah the Quakeress then,  
And with heaving bosom and storming brow  
She faced the astounded men. 40

The blue yarn sock in her hand  
Shook with its bristling steel  
As she snatched the votes from the Elder's grasp  
And ground them beneath her heel.

"Shame on you — traitors — cowards — 45  
Who fail at your Country's need!  
Who would sell your birthright, sell your souls  
In your paltry selfish greed!

“We want not your Tory gold!  
The Lord God shields our right!  
Yea, as He guided Israel’s host,  
A pillar of fire by night,

50

“He will lead our Armies on!  
And when our land is free” —  
The blue sock waved like a flag of war —  
“Traitors! where will you be?”

55

Speechless the Council stood,  
Dumb ’neath that storm of shame,  
Till Isaac gasped: “She is distraught!  
Out! — to thy knitting, dame!”

60

Then how she flamed and turned!  
“Distraught with shame of thee!  
Yea, Isaac Arnett, hold thy tongue —  
Thou’lt take this word from me!

“Now, as the Lord doth hear,  
Choose thou ’twixt peace and strife.  
I married thee for an honest man;  
I’ll be no traitor’s wife!

65

“Thou canst keep thy house and thy King.  
I know my Country’s worth!  
I’d rather starve in her frozen fields  
Than feed at a traitor’s hearth!”

70

Flushed Isaac’s cold cheek then;  
The Brethren hung their heads;  
And the Elder lifted the trampled votes  
And tore them into shreds.

75

“Thank God in this nest of fear  
 There beats one loyal heart!  
 Hannah Arnett, to us this day  
 A Flame of the Lord thou art! 80

“Friends, when a woman leads,  
 No man is laggard found!  
 Here, to my Country’s need and War  
 I pledge an hundred pound.”

Then the Elder lifted his pen 85  
 And wrote his gift and name.  
 While with ten and twenty and fifty more  
 The Brethren crowding came;

And stirred as the great deep stirs  
 When a tempest smites the sea, 90  
 They pledged their honor, wealth, and lives  
 Again to Liberty!

And what of Hannah the dame,  
 With her heart of fire and steel?  
 Oh! she smoothed her kerchief, and set her cap, 95  
 And finished her stocking heel.

## RECONCILIATION<sup>1</sup>

WALT WHITMAN

Word over all, beautiful as the sky,  
 Beautiful that war and all its deeds of carnage must in time  
 be utterly lost,  
 That the hands of the sisters Death and Night incessantly  
 softly wash again, and ever again, this soil’d world;

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted by permission of Small, Maynard, & Co.

For my enemy is dead, a man divine as myself is dead,  
 I look where he lies white-faced and still in the coffin — I  
                     draw near, 5  
 Bend down and touch lightly with my lips the white face in  
                     the coffin.

Having read the poem through silently several times, say whether it has a definite metre; if not, whether it is rhythmical at all.

Is any sense except the eye definitely appealed to? Which picture in the poem is the most vivid? Which is the most imaginative?

## THE CONFEDERATE SOLDIER AFTER THE WAR<sup>1</sup>

HENRY WOODFEN GRADY

You of the North have had drawn for you with a master's hand the picture of your returning armies. You have heard how, in the pomp and circumstance of war, they came back to you, marching with proud and victorious tread, reading their glory in a nation's eyes! 5  
 Will you bear with me while I tell you of another army that sought its home at the close of the late war — an army that marched home in defeat and not in victory, in pathos and not in splendor, but in glory that equalled yours, and to hearts as loving as ever welcomed heroes 10  
 home? Let me picture to you the footsore Confederate soldier, as, buttoning up in his faded gray jacket the parole which was to bear testimony to his children of

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from "The New South," by permission of Robert Bonner's Sons, publishers of the *New York Ledger*.

5. The last seven words are a quotation from Gray's famous *Elegy written in a Country Churchyard*. Mr. Grady does not use quotation marks here, for he assumes that his audience will recognize the quotation. The words thus treated may be called an *embedded* quotation. 11-54. Note that the skilful orator understands the power of images.

his fidelity and faith, he turned his face southward from Appomattox in April, 1865. Think of him as 15 ragged, half-starved, heavy-hearted, enfeebled by want and wounds; having fought to exhaustion, he surrenders his gun, wrings the hands of his comrades in silence, and lifting his tear-stained and pallid face for the last time to the graves that dot the old Virginia hills, pulls 20 his gray cap over his brow and begins the slow and painful journey. What does he find — let me ask you, who went to your homes eager to find in the welcome you had justly earned, full payment for four years' sacrifice — what does he find when, having followed the 25 battle-stained cross against overwhelming odds, dreading death not half so much as surrender, he reaches the home he left so prosperous and beautiful? He finds his house in ruins, his farm devastated, his slaves free, his stock killed, his barns empty, his trade destroyed, 30 his money worthless; his social system, feudal in its magnificence, swept away; his people without law or legal status, his comrades slain, and the burdens of others heavy on his shoulders. Crushed by defeat, his very traditions are gone; without money, credit, em- 35 ployment, material, or training; and besides all this, confronted with the gravest problem that ever met human intelligence — the establishing of a status for the vast body of his liberated slaves.

What does he do — this hero in gray with a heart of 40 gold? Does he sit down in sullenness and despair? Not for a day. Surely God, who had stripped him of his prosperity, inspired him in his adversity. As ruin was never before so overwhelming, never was restoration swifter. The soldier stepped from the trenches into the 45 furrow; horses that had charged Federal guns marched before the plough, and fields that ran red with blood in

April were green with the harvest in June. Never was nobler duty confided to human hands than the uplifting and building of the prostrate and bleeding South, misguided, perhaps, but beautiful in her suffering; and honest, brave, and generous always. In the record of her social, industrial, and political evolution we await with confidence the verdict of the world. 50

## THE ARSENAL AT SPRINGFIELD

HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW

This is the Arsenal. From floor to ceiling,  
Like a huge organ, rise the burnished arms;  
But from their silent pipes no anthem pealing  
Startles the villages with strange alarms.

Ah! what a sound will rise, how wild and dreary, 5  
When the death-angel touches those swift keys!  
What loud lament and dismal Miserere  
Will mingle with their awful symphonies!

I hear even now the infinite fierce chorus,  
The cries of agony, the endless groan, 10  
Which, through the ages that have gone before us,  
In long reverberations reach our own.

On helm and harness rings the Saxon hammer,  
Through Cimbric forest roars the Norseman's song,  
And loud, amid the universal clamor, 15  
O'er distant deserts sounds the Tartar gong.

I hear the Florentine, who from his palace  
Wheels out his battle-bell with dreadful din,  
And Aztec priests upon their teocallis  
Beat the wild war-drums made of serpent's skin; 20

The tumult of each sacked and burning village;  
The shout that every prayer for mercy drowns;  
The soldiers' revels in the midst of pillage;  
The wail of famine in beleaguered towns;  
The bursting shell, the gateway wrenched asunder, 25  
The rattling musketry, the clashing blade;  
And ever and anon, in tones of thunder,  
The diapason of the cannonade.  
Is it, O man, with such discordant noises,  
With such accursed instruments as these, 30  
Thou drownest Nature's sweet and kindly voices,  
And jarrest the celestial harmonies?  
Were half the power, that fills the world with terror,  
Were half the wealth, bestowed on camps and courts,  
Given to redeem the human mind from error, 35  
There were no need of arsenals nor forts:  
The warrior's name would be a name abhorred!  
And every nation, that should lift again  
Its hand against a brother, on its forehead  
Would wear for evermore the curse of Cain! 40  
Down the dark future, through long generations,  
The echoing sounds grow fainter and then cease;  
And like a bell, with solemn, sweet vibrations,  
I hear once more the voice of Christ say, "Peace!"  
Peace! and no longer from its brazen portals 45  
The blast of War's great organ shakes the skies!  
But beautiful as songs of the immortals,  
The holy melodies of love arise.

Does Longfellow succeed in carrying the image of the organ through the poem?

Does the poet make his appeal chiefly to the eye or to the ear? Why?  
What emotions does the poem arouse?



## THE THREE FISHERS

CHARLES KINGSLEY

Three fishers went sailing out into the West,  
Out into the West as the sun went down;  
Each thought on the woman who lov'd him the best;  
And the children stood watching them out of the town;  
For men must work, and women must weep, 5  
And there's little to earn, and many to keep,  
Though the harbor bar be moaning.

Three wives sat up in the light-house tower,  
And they trimm'd the lamps as the sun went down;  
They look'd at the squall, and they look'd at the shower, 10  
And the night rack came rolling up ragged and brown!  
But men must work, and women must weep,  
Though storms be sudden, and waters deep,  
And the harbor bar be moaning.

Three corpses lay out on the shining sands 15  
In the morning gleam as the tide went down,  
And the women are weeping and wringing their hands  
For those who will never come back to the town;  
For men must work, and women must weep,  
And the sooner it's over, the sooner to sleep — 20  
And good-by to the bar and its moaning.

This poem has often been set to music — a pretty sure sign that it is melodious. Is the refrain impressive?

Is the story told continuously, or by scenes? Which is the better way for a narrative song? Why?

## A SEA STORY

EMILY H. HICKEY

Silence. Awhile ago  
Shrieks went up piercingly;  
But now is the ship gone down;  
Good ship, well manned, was she.  
There's a raft that's a chance of life for one, 5  
This day upon the sea.

A chance for one of two;  
Young, strong, are he and he,  
Just in the manhood prime,  
The comelier, verily, 10  
For the wrestle with wind and weather and wave  
In the life upon the sea.

One of them has a wife  
And little children three;  
Two that can toddle and lisp, 15  
And a suckling on the knee;  
Naked they'll go and hunger sore,  
If he be lost at sea.

One has a dream of home,  
A dream that well may be; 20  
He never has breathed it yet;  
She never has known it, she.  
But some one will be sick at heart,  
If he be lost at sea.

"Wife and kids at home! —  
 Wife, kids, nor home has he! —  
 Give us a chance, Bill!" Then,  
 "All right, Jem!" Quietly  
 A man gives up his life for a man,  
 This day upon the sea.

25

30

Is this poem as musical as *The Three Fishers*? Which of the stanzas would sing best? Is the refrain impressive? Would the narrative in the last stanza be more or less impressive if it were less condensed and abrupt?

PATROLING BARNEGAT<sup>1</sup>

WALT WHITMAN

Wild, wild the storm, and the sea high running,  
 Steady the roar of the gale, with incessant undertone mut-  
 tering,  
 Shouts of demoniac laughter fitfully piercing and pealing,  
 Waves, air, midnight, their savagest trinity lashing,  
 Out in the shadows there milk-white combs careering, 5  
 On beachy slush and sand spirits of snow fierce slanting,  
 Where through the murk the easterly death-wind breasting,  
 Through cutting swirl and spray watchful and firm ad-  
 vancing,  
 (That in the distance! is that a wreck? is the red signal  
 flaring?)  
 Slush and sand of the beach tireless till daylight wending, 10

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted by permission of Small, Maynard, & Co.

4. This vague line apparently means that waves, air, and midnight are lashing themselves together in the savagest possible trinity. Possibly it means that the midnight air is lashing the waves into spray; but it doesn't succeed in saying so.

Steadily, slowly, through hoarse roar never remitting,  
Along the midnight edge by those milk-white combs careering,  
A group of dim, weird forms, struggling, the night confronting,  
That savage trinity warily watching.

Is the poem metrical or only rhythmical? Read it through line by line for the images, which are startlingly vivid. Few poems appeal so strongly and wholesomely to the senses of touch and muscular exertion. Note how the fierce sounds come first, then a splash of white, then muscular exertion, then sharp sensations on the face, then a splash of red, then more muscular exertion, then more white, and finally a dim picture.

## AN INCIDENT OF THE FIRE AT HAMBURGH

JAMES RUSSELL LOWELL

The tower of old Saint Nicholas soared upward to the skies,  
Like some huge piece of Nature's make, the growth of centuries;

You could not deem its crowding spires a work of human art,  
They seemed to struggle lightward so from a sturdy living heart.

Not Nature's self more freely speaks in crystal or in oak 5  
Than, through the pious builder's hand, in that gray pile she spoke;

And as from acorn springs the oak, so, freely and alone,  
Sprang from his heart this hymn to God, sung in obedient stone.

It seemed a wondrous freak of chance, so perfect, yet so rough,

A whim of Nature crystallized slowly in granite tough; 10  
The thick spires yearned toward the sky in quaint harmonious lines,

And in broad sunlight basked and slept, like a grove of blasted pines.

Never did rock or stream or tree lay claim with better right  
To all the adorning sympathies of shadow and of light ;  
And, in that forest petrified, as forester there dwells 15  
Stout Herman, the old sacristan, sole lord of all its bells.

Surge leaping after surge, the fire roared onward, red as  
blood,  
Till half of Hamburg lay engulfed beneath the eddying  
flood ;  
For miles away, the fiery spray poured down its deadly rain,  
And back and forth the billows drew, and paused, and broke  
again. 20

From square to square, with tiger leaps, still on and on it  
came ;  
The air to leeward trembled with the pantings of the flame,  
And church and palace, which even now stood whelmed but  
to the knee,  
Lift their black roofs like breakers lone amid the rushing sea.

Up in his tower old Herman sat and watched with quiet  
look ; 25  
His soul had trusted God too long to be at last forsook :  
He could not fear, for surely God a pathway would unfold  
Through this red sea, for faithful hearts, as once he did of old.

But scarcely can he cross himself, or on his good saint call,  
Before the sacrilegious flood o'erleaped the churchyard  
wall, 30  
And, ere a *pater* half was said, 'mid smoke and crackling  
glare,  
His island tower scarce juts its head above the wide despair.

31. *pater* (the *a* like *a* in *day*), the Lord's Prayer in Latin.

Upon the peril's desperate peak his heart stood up  
sublime ;

His first thought was for God above, his next was for his  
chime ;

"Sing now, and make your voices heard in hymns of praise,"  
cried he, 35

"As did the Israelites of old, safe-walking through the sea !

"Through this red sea our God hath made our pathway safe  
to shore ;

Our promised land stands full in sight ; shout now as ne'er  
before."

And, as the tower came crashing down, the bells, in clear  
accord,

Pealed forth the grand old German hymn — "All good souls  
praise the Lord !" 40

### 'WARE HOLES <sup>1</sup>

A. CONAN DOYLE

[ 'Ware Holes ! is the expression used in the hunting-field to warn those  
behind against rabbit-burrows or other such dangers.]

A sportin' death ! My word it was !

An' taken in a sportin' way.

Mind you, I wasn't there to see ;

I only tell you what they say.

They found that day at Shillinglee, 5

An' ran 'im down to Chillinghurst ;

The fox was goin' straight an' free

For ninety minutes at a burst.

<sup>1</sup> From "Songs of Action," Copyright, 1898, by Doubleday & McClure Co.

They 'ad a check at Ebernoe  
An' made a cast across the Down, 10  
Until they got a view 'ollo  
An' chased 'im up to Kirdford town.

From Kirdford 'e run Bramber way,  
An' took 'em over 'arf the Weald.  
If you 'ave tried the Sussex clay, 15  
You'll guess it weeded out the field.

Until at last I don't suppose  
As 'arf a dozen, at the most,  
Came safe to where the grassland goes  
Switchbackin' southwards to the coast. 20

Young Captain 'Eadley, 'e was there,  
And Jim the whip an' Percy Day ;  
The Purcells an' Sir Charles Adair,  
An' this 'ere gent from London way.

For 'e 'ad gone amazin' fine, 25  
Two 'undred pounds between 'is knees ;  
Eight stone he was, an' rode at nine,  
As light an' limber as you please.

'E was a stranger to the 'Unt,  
There weren't a person as 'e knew there ; 30  
But 'e could ride, that London gent—  
'E sat 'is mare as if 'e grew there.

They seed the 'ounds upon the scent,  
But found a fence across their track,  
And 'ad to fly it ; else it meant 35  
A turnin' and a 'arkin' back.

'E was the foremost at the fence,  
 And as 'is mare just cleared the rail  
 He turned to them that rode be'ind,  
 For three was at 'is very tail. 40

"'Ware 'oles!" says 'e, an' with the word,  
 Still sittin' easy on his mare,  
 Down, down 'e went, an' down an' down,  
 Into the quarry yawnin' there.

Some say it was two 'undred foot ; 45  
 The bottom lay as black as ink.  
 I guess they 'ad some ugly dreams,  
 Who reined their 'orses on the brink.

'E'd only time for that one cry ;  
 "'Ware 'oles!" says 'e, an' saves all three. 50  
 There may be better deaths to die,  
 But that one's good enough for me.

For mind you, 'twas a sportin' end,  
 Upon a right good sportin' day ;  
 They think a deal of 'im down 'ere, 55  
 That gent what came from London way.

Sketch the character of the groom who is telling the story. Give your warrant for every statement.

### ENTER PATIENT<sup>1</sup>

WILLIAM ERNEST HENLEY

The morning mists still haunt the stony street ;  
 The northern summer air is shrill and cold ;  
 And lo, the Hospital, gray, quiet, old,  
 Where Life and Death like friendly chafferers meet.

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from "Poems," by permission of Charles Scribner's Sons.

4. Here is a striking simile. How can Life and Death be said to chaffer together ?



Thro' the loud spaciousness and draughty gloom 5  
 A small strange child — so agèd yet so young! —  
 Her little arm besplintered and beslung,  
 Precedes me gravely to the waiting-room.  
 I limp behind, my confidence all gone,  
 The gray-haired soldier porter waves me on, 10  
 And on I crawl, and still my spirits fail :  
 A tragic meanness seems so to environ  
 These corridors and stairs of stone and iron,  
 Cold, naked, clean — half-workhouse and half-jail.

5. Why does not Mr. Henley say something like *loud, spacious room*, and *draughty, gloomy place*? Is it merely a desire to save words? Did the child probably think of the *room*? 13. *environ* usually means *to surround*. Here is merely meant that the air of tragic meanness is associated with the corridors and stairs.

OPERATION <sup>1</sup>

WILLIAM ERNEST HENLEY

You are carried in a basket,  
 Like a carcase from the shambles,  
 To the theatre, a cockpit,  
 Where they stretch you on a table.  
 Then they bid you close your eyelids, 5  
 And they mask you with a napkin,  
 And the anæsthetic reaches  
 Hot and subtle through your being.  
 And you gasp and reel and shudder  
 In a rushing, swaying rapture, 10  
 While the voices at your elbow  
 Fade — receding — fainter — farther.

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from "Poems," by permission of Charles Scribner's Sons.

2. *shambles*, slaughter-house. 7. *anæsthetic*, a numbing drug, like chloroform or ether.

Lights about you shower and tumble,  
 And your blood seems crystallizing —  
 Edged and vibrant, yet within you 15  
 Racked and hurried back and forward.

Then the lights grow fast and furious,  
 And you hear a noise of waters,  
 And you wrestle, blind and dizzy,  
 In an agony of effort, 20

Till a sudden lull accepts you,  
 And you sound an utter darkness . . .  
 And awaken . . . with a struggle . . .  
 On a hushed, attentive audience.

15. *vibrant*, that is, pulsing, blood is clear enough; *edged* is harder to understand, but it probably meant something to the patient.

The curious thing about this powerful poem is that it deals with physical sensations that seem *within* the nerves, not produced by outside sights and sounds. Why do we not miss the *rhyme* very much?

## IN THE CHILDREN'S HOSPITAL

ALFRED, LORD TENNYSON

EMMIE

I

Our doctor had call'd in another, I never had seen him  
 before,  
 But he sent a chill to my heart when I saw him come in at  
 the door,  
 Fresh from the surgery-schools of France and of other  
 lands —  
 Harsh red hair, big voice, big chest, big merciless hands!  
 Wonderful cures he had done, O yes, but they said too of  
 him 5

He was happier using the knife than in trying to save the  
limb,  
And that I can well believe, for he look'd so coarse and so  
red,  
I could think he was one of those who would break their  
jests on the dead,  
And mangle the living dog that had loved him and fawn'd  
at his knee —  
Drench'd with the hellish oorali — that ever such things  
should be!

10

## II

Here was a boy — I am sure that some of our children  
would die  
But for the voice of Love, and the smile, and the com-  
forting eye —  
Here was a boy in the ward, every bone seem'd out of its  
place —  
Caught in a mill and crush'd — it was all but a hopeless  
case:  
And he handled him gently enough; but his voice and his  
face were not kind,  
And it was but a hopeless case, he had seen it and made up  
his mind,  
And he said to me roughly, "The lad will need little more  
of your care."  
"All the more need," I told him, "to seek the Lord Jesus  
in prayer;  
They are all his children here, and I pray for them all as  
my own:"  
But he turn'd to me, "Ay, good woman, can prayer set a  
broken bone?"

20

Then he mutter'd half to himself, but I know that I heard  
him say,  
"All very well — but the good Lord Jesus has had his day."

## III

Had? has it come? It has only dawn'd. It will come by  
and by.  
O how could I serve in the wards if the hope of the world  
were a lie?  
How could I bear with the sights and the loathsome smells  
of disease 25  
But that He said, "Ye do it to me, when ye do it to these"?

## IV

So he went. And we past to this ward where the younger  
children are laid:  
Here is the cot of our orphan, our darling, our meek little  
maid;  
Empty you see just now! We have lost her who loved her  
so much —  
Patient of pain tho' as quick as a sensitive plant to the  
touch; 30  
Hers was the prettiest prattle, it often moved me to tears,  
Hers was the gratefulest heart I have found in a child of  
her years —  
Nay you remember our Emmie; you used to send her the  
flowers;  
How she would smile at 'em, play with 'em, talk to 'em  
hours after hours!  
They that can wander at will where the works of the Lord  
are reveal'd 35  
Little guess what joy can be got from a cowslip out of the  
field;

Flowers to these "spirits in prison" are all they can know  
of the spring,  
They freshen and sweeten the wards like the waft of an  
Angel's wing;  
And she lay with a flower in one hand and her thin hands  
crost on her breast —  
Wan, but as pretty as heart can desire, and we thought her  
at rest, 40  
Quietly sleeping — so quiet, our doctor said, "Poor little  
dear,  
Nurse, I must do it to-morrow; she'll never live thro' it, I  
fear."

## V

I walk'd with our kindly old doctor as far as the head of  
the stair,  
Then I return'd to the ward; the child didn't see I was  
there.

## VI

Never since I was nurse, had I been so grieved and so  
vext! 45  
Emmie had heard him. Softly she call'd from her cot to  
the next,  
"He says I shall never live thro' it, O Annie, what shall I  
do?"  
Annie consider'd. "If I," said the wise little Annie, "was  
you,  
I should cry to the dear Lord Jesus to help me, for, Emmie,  
you see,  
It's all in the picture there: 'Little children should come  
to me.'"  
50

(Meaning the print that you gave us, I find that it always  
can please

Our children, the dear Lord Jesus with children about his  
knees.)

"Yes, and I will," said Emmie, "but then if I call to the  
Lord,

How should he know that it's me? such a lot of beds in  
the ward!" 54

That was a puzzle for Annie. Again she consider'd and said,  
"Emmie, you put out your arms, and you leave 'em out-  
side on the bed —

The Lord has so *much* to see to! but, Emmie, you tell it  
him plain,

It's the little girl with her arms lying out on the coun-  
terpane."

## VII

I had sat three nights by the child — I could not watch her  
for four — 59

My brain had begun to reel — I felt I could do it no more.  
That was my sleeping-night, but I thought that it never  
would pass.

There was a thunderclap once, and a clatter of hail on the  
glass,

And there was a phantom cry that I heard as I tost about,  
The motherless bleat of a lamb in the storm and the dark-  
ness without;

My sleep was broken besides with dreams of the dreadful  
knife 65

And fears for our delicate Emmie who scarce would escape  
with her life;

Then in the gray of the morning it seem'd she stood by  
me and smiled,

And the doctor came at his hour, and we went to see to the  
child.

## VIII

He had brought his ghastly tools: we believed her asleep  
again —

Her dear, long, lean, little arms lying out on the counter-  
pane; 70

Say that His day is done! Ah; why should we care what  
they say?

The Lord of the children had heard her, and Emmie had  
past away.

The stanzas are of unequal length; does each represent a real step? Has the poem plot, *i.e.* does it arouse suspense? If so, at what line is the suspense finally relieved? Is the poem simple or complex in thought? Is it pathetic? Is it gloomy or serene in spirit?

SAN LORENZO GIUSTINIANI'S MOTHER<sup>1</sup>

ALICE MEYNELL

I had not seen my son's dear face  
(He chose the cloister by God's grace)  
Since it had come to full flower-time  
I hardly guessed at its perfect prime,  
That folded flower of his dear face. 5

Mine eyes were veiled by mists of tears  
When on a day in many years  
One of his Order came. I thrilled,  
Facing, I thought, that face fulfilled.  
I doubted, for my mists of tears. 10

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted by permission of Mr. John Lane. The author's name is pronounced Mennell.

5. The *folded flower* perhaps means that the son's face was quiet in its beauty, like a flower folded at night. 8. *Order*, religious order of monks; thus, the Order of St. Francis, or Franciscan order.

His blessing be with me forever!  
 My hope and doubt were hard to sever.  
     — That altered face, those holy weeds.  
 I filled his wallet and kissed his beads,  
 And lost his echoing feet forever. 15

If to my son my alms were given  
 I know not, and I wait for Heaven.  
     He did not plead for child of mine,  
     But for another Child divine,  
 And unto Him it was surely given. 20

There is One alone who cannot change;  
 Dreams are we, shadows, visions strange;  
     And all I give is given to One.  
     I might mistake my dearest son,  
 But never the Son who cannot change. 25

13. *weeds*, garments of sombre hue. The Order of St. Francis wore rough sack-cloth, girt with a rope instead of a girdle. 14. *wallet*. The travelling friars depended on charity for their food. 22. Perhaps it would be well to write a paragraph for the instructor, explaining your idea of what Mrs. Meynell means by this line.

## BARCLAY OF URY

JOHN GREENLEAF WHITTIER

Up the streets of Aberdeen,  
 By the kirk and college green,  
     Rode the Laird of Ury;  
 Close behind him, close beside,  
 Foul of mouth and evil-eyed, 5  
     Pressed the mob in fury.



Flouted him the drunken churl,  
Jeered at him the serving girl,  
    Prompt to please her master;  
And the begging carlin, late  
Fed and clothed at Ury's gate,  
    Cursed him as he passed her.

10

Yet, with calm and stately mien,  
Up the streets of Aberdeen  
    Came he slowly riding;  
And, to all he saw and heard  
Answering not with bitter word,  
    Turning not for chiding.

15

Came a troop with broadswords swinging,  
Bits and bridles sharply ringing,  
    Loose and free and forward;  
Quoth the foremost, "Ride him down!  
Push him! prick him! through the town  
    Drive the Quaker coward!"

20

But from out the thickening crowd  
Cried a sudden voice and loud:  
    "Barclay! Ho! a Barclay!"

25

And the old man at his side  
Saw a comrade, battle tried,  
    Scarred and sunburned darkly;

30

Who with ready weapon bare,  
Fronting to the troopers there,  
    Cried aloud: "God save us!  
Call ye coward him who stood  
Ankle deep in Lutzen's blood,  
    With the brave Gustavus?"

35

10. *carlin*, a contemptuous term for a woman.

“Nay, I do not need thy sword,  
Comrade mine,” said Ury’s lord;

“Put it up I pray thee:  
Passive to His holy will, 40  
Trust I in my Master still,  
Even though He slay me.”

“Pledges of thy love and faith,  
Proved on many a field of death,  
Not by me are needed.” 45  
Marvelled much that henchman bold,  
That his laird, so stout of old,  
Now so meekly pleaded.

“Woe’s the day,” he sadly said,  
With a slowly shaking head, 50  
And a look of pity;  
“Ury’s honest lord reviled,  
Mock of knave and sport of child,  
In his own good city!

“Speak the word, and, master mine, 55  
As we charged on Tilly’s line,  
And his Walloon lancers,  
Smiting through their midst we’ll teach  
Civil look and decent speech  
To these boyish prancers!” 60

“Marvel not, mine ancient friend,  
Like beginning, like the end:”  
Quoth the Laird of Ury,  
“Is the sinful servant more 65  
Than his gracious Lord who bore  
Bonds and stripes in Jewry?

“Give me joy that in His name  
I can bear, with patient frame,  
All these vain ones offer;  
While for them He suffereth long,  
Shall I answer wrong with wrong,  
Scoffing with the scoffer?”

“Happier I, with loss of all,  
Hunted, outlawed, held in thrall,  
    With few friends to greet me, 75  
Than when reeve and squire were seen,  
Riding out from Aberdeen,  
    With bared heads, to meet me.

“When each good wife, o’er and o’er,  
Blessed me as I passed her door;                                 80  
    And the snooded daughter,  
Through her casement glancing down,  
Smiled on him who bore renown  
    From red fields of slaughter.

“Hard to feel the stranger’s scoff, 85  
Hard the old friend’s falling off,  
Hard to learn forgiving:  
But the Lord His own rewards,  
And His love with theirs accords,  
Warm and fresh and living. 90

“Through this dark and stormy night  
Faith beholds a feeble light  
Up the blackness streaking;  
Knowing God’s own time is best,  
In a patient hope I rest  
For the full day-breaking!”

76. *reeve*, an officer of justice. 81. *snood*, a head-band worn by Scottish maidens.

So the Laird of Ury said,  
Turning slow his horse's head  
Toward the Tolbooth prison,  
Where, through iron gates, he heard 100  
Poor disciples of the Word  
Preach of Christ arisen!

Not in vain, Confessor old,  
Unto us the tale is told  
Of thy day of trial; 105  
Every age on him, who strays  
From its broad and beaten ways,  
Pours its sevenfold vial.

Happy he whose inward ear  
Angels comfortings can hear, 110  
O'er the rabble's laughter;  
And, while Hatred's fagots burn,  
Glimpses through the smoke discern  
Of the good hereafter.

Knowing this, that never yet 115  
Share of Truth was vainly set  
In the world's wide fallow;  
After hands shall sow the seed,  
After hands from hill and mead  
Reap the harvests yellow. 120

Thus, with somewhat of the Seer,  
Must the moral pioneer  
From the Future borrow;  
Clothe the waste with dreams of grain,  
And, on midnight's sky of rain, 125  
Paint the golden morrow!

LANDING OF THE PILGRIM FATHERS IN NEW  
ENGLAND

FELICIA BROWNE HEMANS

Look now abroad! Another race has fill'd  
Those populous borders — wide the wood recedes,  
And towns shoot up, and fertile realms are till'd;  
The land is full of harvests and green meads. — *Bryant.*

The breaking waves dash'd high  
On a stern and rock-bound coast,  
And the woods against a stormy sky  
Their giant branches toss'd;

And the heavy night hung dark 5  
The hills and waters o'er,  
When a band of exiles moor'd their bark  
On the wild New England shore.

Not as the conqueror comes,  
They, the true-hearted, came; 10  
Not with the roll of the stirring drums,  
And the trumpet that sings of fame;

Not as the flying come,  
In silence and in fear; —  
They shook the depths of the desert gloom 15  
With their hymns of lofty cheer.

Amidst the storm they sang,  
And the stars heard and the sea;  
And the sounding aisles of the dim woods rang  
To the anthem of the free! 20

The ocean eagle soared  
 From his nest by the white wave's foam;  
 And the rocking pines of the forest roared,—  
 This was their welcome home!

There were men with hoary hair, 25  
 Amidst that pilgrim band; —  
 Why had they come to wither there,  
 Away from their childhood's land?

There was woman's fearless eye, 30  
 Lit by her deep love's truth;  
 There was manhood's brow serenely high,  
 And the fiery heart of youth.

What sought they thus afar?  
 Bright jewels of the mine?  
 The wealth of seas, the spoils of war? 35  
 They sought a faith's pure shrine!

Ay, call it holy ground,  
 The soil where first they trod!  
 They left unstained what there they found,—  
 Freedom to worship God! 40

## THE TWENTY-SECOND OF DECEMBER

WILLIAM CULLEN BRYANT

Wild was the day; the wintry sea  
 Moaned sadly on New England's strand,  
 When first, the thoughtful and the free,  
 Our fathers, trod the desert land.

They little thought how pure a light, 5  
With years, should gather round that day;  
How love should keep their memories bright,  
How wide a realm their sons should sway.

Green are their bays; but greener still  
Shall round their spreading fame be wreathed, 10  
And regions, now untrod, shall thrill  
With reverence, when their names are breathed.

Till when the sun, with softer fires,  
Looks on the vast Pacific's sleep,  
The children of the pilgrim sires 15  
This hallowed day like us shall keep.

"A MAN MUST LIVE"<sup>1</sup>

CHARLOTTE PERKINS STETSON

A man must live. We justify  
Low shift and trick to treason high,  
A little vote for a little gold  
To a whole senate bought and sold,  
By that self-evident reply. 5

But is it so? Pray tell me why  
Life at such cost you have to buy?  
In what religion were you told  
A man must live?

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted by permission of Small, Maynard, & Co.

There are times when a man must die. 10  
 Imagine, for a battle-cry,  
     From soldiers, with a sword to hold,—  
     From soldiers, with the flag unrolled,—  
 This coward's whine, this liar's lie,—  
     A man must live! 15

## THE HERO

ROBERT NICOLL

My hero is na deck'd wi' gowd,  
     He has nae glittering state;  
 Renown upon a field o' blood  
     In war he hasna met.  
 He has nae siller in his pouch, 5  
     Nae menials at his ca';  
 The proud o' earth frae him would turn,  
     And bid him stand awa'.

His coat is hame-spun hodden-gray,  
     His shoon are clouted sair, 10  
 His garments, maist unhero-like,  
     Are a' the waur o' wear:  
 His limbs are strong — his shoulders broad,  
     His hands were made to plough;  
 He's rough without, but sound within; 15  
     His heart is bauldly true.

He toils at e'en, he toils at morn,  
     His wark is never through;  
 A coming life o' weary toil  
     Is ever in his view. 20

1. *gowd*, gold. 9. *hodden-gray*, natural color of the wool. 10. *clouted*, patched.



But on he trudges, keeping aye  
A stout heart to the brae,  
And proud to be an honest man  
Until his dying day.

His hame a hame o' happiness 25  
And kindly love may be;  
And monie a nameless dwelling-place  
Like his we still may see.  
His happy altar-hearth so bright  
Is ever bleezing there; 30  
And cheerfu' faces round it set  
Are an unending prayer.

The poor man in his humble hame,  
Like God, who dwells aboon,  
Makes happy hearts around him there, 35  
Sae joyfu' late and soon.  
His toil is sair, his toil is lang;  
But weary nights and days,  
Hame — happiness akin to his —  
A hunder-fauld repays. 40

Go, mock at conquerors and kings!  
What happiness give they?  
Go, tell the painted butterflies  
To kneel them down and pray!  
Go, stand erect in manhood's pride, 45  
Be what a man should be,  
Then come, and to my hero bend  
Upon the grass your knee!

**Plan of Summary.** — Reviewing the chapter, (1) enumerate the kinds of metre, designating them by the number of accents and by the predominant foot. Then (2) say which poem is most noticeable for melody; (3) which for beauty of suggested sights; (4) which for pleasure of suggested sounds; (5) which for pleasure of suggested activity; (6) which for pleasure of suggested odors or tastes; (7) which is most easily understood; (8) which moves the reader most deeply; (9) which shows most skill in character drawing; (10) which has the best unity; (11) which, your critical judgment tells you, is the best piece of work; (12) which you like the best, without regard to its deserved rank or its fame.

## CHAPTER IV

### THE ATHLETE

ART admires the beauty and strength of the human body more than anything else in the physical creation. Greek sculpture, the world's one perfect art, was devoted entirely to this subject. To use the metaphor of a famous scholar, the Greek was a Narcissus, gazing enraptured at the picture of his own beauty that he had just discovered in the pool. The Greek artists did not, it is true, represent men exactly as they are, though the Greek race was just then at its physical perfection. They made the human figure less animal than it usually is, refining it in various ways. Their statues are not so true to nature as Michael Angelo's, but they are physically more beautiful. The so-called Venus of Melos is taller than most women; but it is the loveliest and noblest of female figures.

The worship of beauty was a part of the Greek's religion. The object of his athletics was not prize-money, inter-collegiate renown, or the exploitation of muscular prodigies; it was the development of grace and strength, on the ground that these were qualities of the gods. Accordingly any particular physical gift was revered and cherished. Just as Homer calls attention to the especial beauty of each character, — the silver-footed Thetis, the snowy-armed Juno, the fair-cheeked Briseis, the bright-eyed Pallas, the graceful Paris, the yellow-haired Menelaus, — so the Grecian master of the games looked among his candidates for one whose strength of arm or neck or thigh might make him victor in one special strife. Greece was rich in pan-

athletes, — “all-round” men, — but one secret of Greek athletics lay in recognizing that neither beauty nor strength is often symmetrically developed. Homer’s men reveal the principles of Greek strength and beauty. Homer has an Achilles, unique in his union of many powers; but he has many heroes famous for one especial strength. Of the two Ajaces the first is a giant, frequently likened to a tower, while the second is famed for fleetness of foot. Even when a Homeric character is ugly or weak in one respect, he is beautiful or strong in another. Dolon is distorted in face, but he is the man on whose nimbleness Hector depends for the safety of the Trojans. This reminds us of the handsome Lord Byron, who, in spite of his deformed foot, was an expert swimmer — as, indeed, one might guess from his lines on that subject.

Swimming,  
p. 156.

Christians saw that the Greeks had cultivated the body to the detriment of the soul. In the Middle Ages, therefore, the body was not honored as in pagan days. A pale complexion was supposed to mean that the owner had spent the night in fasting, and it was accordingly considered beautiful. In our own time people have learned that, as Browning puts it, body helps spirit as much as spirit body. Nowadays the ideal is a sound mind in a sound body. We think no human body perfectly beautiful unless a gleam of kindly intelligence is in the beautiful eye, and no human soul wholly admirable unless it has developed whatever body heaven may have given it for its servant.

The  
Physique of  
a Wood-  
cutter,  
p. 157.

The scientist Huxley, sketching the liberally educated man, does not forget to say that his ideal scholar “has been so trained in youth that his body is the ready servant of his will, and does with ease and pleasure all the work that, as a mechanism, it is capable of.” Richard Jefferies draws a picture of the wood-cutter who has enormous dead strength, but no physical training; the man in whose

muscles is no mind. Quickness of response by muscle to will is one of the chief aims in athletics; no game can be successful without it. It is illustrated in the runner — who is photographed by Walt Whitman just when the will has every muscle under control. It is better illustrated in the football player, because this game demands weight and fleetness, and an electric quickness of thought. Football requires a very difficult thing,—the perfect control of a large frame. A sonnet by the late Edward Lefroy dwells on these merits of the individual player. He is heavy, but open-eyed, quick, aggressive. A second sonnet by the same author suggests the importance of the very same qualities in a team. It is team-work that wins. It is characteristic of childish play to be hilarious and unorganized. That will not do in football; the men must take direction and keep their mouths shut. The beauty and effectiveness of organized, perfectly consonant exertion is shown in the late Judge Hughes's pictures of football and boat-racing in "Tom Brown." The working of such a mechanism as a well-trained team engaged in either of these sports is a keen satisfaction to the eye.

Different individual mechanisms are capable of different things. The giant John Ridd, who is the hero of the terrible Devonshire winter in Dr. Blackmore's novel of "Lorna Doone," had muscles which enabled him to tear gnarled branches from oak trees. The poet Bryant, on the other hand, was a frail lad whom his father, a physician, used to dip head first into a cold spring every morning to prevent his dying of too big a brain. Such a poet's muscular power would never be very large; yet Bryant, by regular exercise for an hour before breakfast and a two-mile walk after breakfast, preserved himself in perfect physical condition till eighty. Professor Blackie, the famous Greek scholar, was a little man, but our astronomer Newcomb

The Ru  
ner, p. 1

A Foot  
Player,  
p. 159.  
Childho  
and You  
p. 160.

The Gr  
Winter,  
p. 161.

Driven  
yond E  
durance  
p. 166.

My Bath,  
p. 176.

described him as "the liveliest little man of sixty he ever saw." Some suggestion of how Blackie kept himself lively may be had from his poem *My Bath*. A man who would habitually plash about and dash about in the foaming, bubbling linn, vying with the glancing trout in that cloud-fed fountain, would very likely remain agile.

Oh, Our  
Manhood's  
Prime  
Vigor,  
p. 178.

When we are in perfect health, the health that "snuffs the morning air," we are almost unconscious of our bodies. All we feel is the "prime vigor" that Browning celebrates in Saul. We simply know that the machine does what we want it to do, and all we ask for is exercise. Browning has chosen the moment in Saul's life when the king is grievously ill, and has sent for David to sing to him with the help of the harp. The whole poem is a guess at what David would sing under these circumstances. The youth tries every kind of song he knows, — that of the shepherd to his sheep, those which appeal to the quail, the crickets, the jerboa; that of the reapers, that of the funeral, that of the marriage, that of the priests, and, finally, that of "our manhood's prime vigor." With every muscle playing free, the strong man springs from rock up to rock, and plunges into the pool of living water; he hunts without fear; he eats with zest, and sleeps, on the ground, the sleep of the just.

Whenever the poets have stopped to think about the ways in which all this glorious life goes on, they are filled with wonder. One sacred writer speaks in curious Oriental imagery of the nerve as the silver cord, and the skull as the golden bowl. Another calls the body the temple of God. The physician-poet Holmes takes this last image for the title of his poem on the human body, *The Living Temple*. He sings the strange mystery of the breath and the unresting heart; the living marble we call limbs; the exquisite adjustments of sight and hearing; the unsolved secret of brain and nerve. Tennyson has a poem in which

he speaks of the dead body as a house deserted by its careless tenants. Edgar Poe's *The Haunted Palace* is a still more imaginative conception. It shadows forth what happens to the body when reason fails. 'There was once a stately palace tenanted by good angels. "Banners yellow, golden, glorious on its roof did float and flow." Through two luminous windows were seen the ruler of the realm, and spirits that moved to music. But now all is changed. The windows are red-litten, and through the pale door rush hideous things that can laugh, — as the insane laugh, — but cannot smile.

The  
Haunte  
Palace,  
p. 179.

Physical breakdown of any organ is due to under-exercise, or over-exercise, or lack of proper nutrition, or poisoning of some sort. One of these facts was never learned by a poet-naturalist of our own time, Richard Jefferies, who is certainly the most enthusiastic writer of our century concerning the beauty of the human body and the possibilities of its improvement. His marvellous admiration of physical strength, shown everywhere in his autobiography, led him into dangerous excess of exercise. But Jefferies did not poison himself. In this respect he was wiser than Franklin, who exercised so little that he got that particular form of blood-poisoning called the gout. He was wiser, too, than Robert Louis Stevenson, dear to all boys. The latter, like Jefferies, fought a heroic battle with disease, keeping himself alive for years after the doctors had told him he must soon yield to phthisis; but he handicapped his vital powers desperately by surcharging his system with nicotine.

The Ly  
Prayer,  
p. 188.

Dialog  
between  
Frankl  
and the  
Gout,  
p. 181.

The last hero in this chapter is Tennyson's Sir Galahad,<sup>1</sup> who sums up the athletic ideal of cleanness, strength, and

Sir Gal  
had, p.

<sup>1</sup> Galahad was one of the knights who cherished the ideal of searching until they found the holy cup, the grail, from which Christ drank at the last supper. Tennyson regarded such a search, even in fable, as a fanatic and useless one. He made his perfect king, Arthur, refuse to join in the quest. Arthur stayed at home and attended to the business of his kingdom.

courage, with the added grace of a fine idealism. Tennyson, himself a manly figure, broad-shouldered and lean-waisted, liked to write of the athletic ideal. His best friend, Hallam, he somewhere calls a Galahad, and again praises for being clean, but no ascetic.

High nature amorous of the good,  
But touched with no ascetic gloom.  
And passion pure in snowy bloom  
Through all the years of April blood.

## SWIMMING

GEORGE GORDON NOËL, LORD BYRON

How many a time have I  
Cloven, with arm still lustier, breast more daring,  
The wave all roughened; with a swimmer's stroke  
Flinging the billows back from my drenched hair,  
And laughing from my lip the audacious brine,                   5  
Which kissed it like a wine-cup, rising o'er  
The waves as they arose, and prouder still  
The loftier they uplifted me; and oft,  
In wantonness of spirit, plunging down  
Into their green and glassy gulfs, and making                   10  
My way to shells and seaweed, all unseen  
By those above, till they waxed fearful; then  
Returning with my grasp full of such tokens  
As showed that I had searched the deep; exulting,  
With a far-dashing stroke, and drawing deep                   15  
The long-suspended breath, again I spurned  
The foam which broke around me, and pursued  
My track like a sea-bird. — I was a boy then.

The metre is iambic pentameter, or blank verse. Shakspeare's plays are mostly in blank verse, and Milton's epic poem of *Paradise Lost* is in the same metre.



THE PHYSIQUE OF A WOOD-CUTTER<sup>1</sup>

RICHARD JEFFERIES

He was standing in the ditch leaning heavily upon the long handle of his axe. It was a straight stick of ash, roughly shaved down to some sort of semblance of smoothness, such as would have worked up an unpractised hand into a mass of blisters in ten minutes' usage, 5 but which glided easily through those horny palms, leaving no mark of friction. The continuous outdoor labor, the beating of innumerable storms, and the hard, coarse fare, had dried up all the original moisture of the hand, till it was rough, firm, and cracked or chapped 10 like a piece of wood exposed to the sun and weather. The natural oil of the skin, which gives to the hand its beautiful suppleness and delicate sense of touch, was gone like the sap in the tree he was felling, for it was early in the winter. However the brow might perspire, 15 there was no dampness on the hand, and the helve of the axe was scarcely harder and drier. In order, therefore, that the grasp might be firm, it was necessary to artificially wet the palms, and hence that custom which so often disgusts lookers-on, of spitting on the hands before 20 commencing work. This apparently gratuitous piece of dirtiness is in reality absolutely necessary. Men with hands in this state have hardly any feeling in them; they find it difficult to pick up anything small, as a pin — the fingers fumble over it; and as for a pen, they hold it 25 like a hammer. His chest was open to the north wind, which whistled through the bare branches of the tall elm

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from "The Toilers of the Fields," by permission of Longmans, Green, & Co.

overhead as if they were the cordage of a ship, and came in sudden blasts through the gaps in the hedge, blowing his shirt back, and exposing the immense breadth of 30 bone and rough dark skin tanned to a brown-red by the summer sun while mowing. The neck rose from it short and thick like that of a bull, and the head was round, and covered with a crop of short grizzled hair not yet quite gray, but fast losing its original chestnut color. 35 The features were fairly regular, but coarse, and the nose flattened. An almost worn-out old hat thrown back on the head showed a low, broad, wrinkled forehead. The eyes were small and bleared, set deep under shaggy eyebrows. The corduroy trousers, yellow with clay and 40 sand, were shortened below the knee by leather straps like garters, so as to exhibit the whole of the clumsy boots, with soles like planks, and shod with iron at heel and tip. These boots weigh seven pounds the pair; and in wet weather, with clay and dirt clinging to them, 45 must reach nearly double that.

In spite of all the magnificent muscular development which this man possessed, there was nothing of the Hercules about him. The grace of strength was wanting, the curved lines were lacking; all was gaunt, angular, 50 and square. The chest was broad enough, but flat, a framework of bones hidden by a rough hairy skin; the breasts did not swell up like the rounded prominences of the antique statue. The neck, strong enough as it was to bear the weight of a sack of corn with ease, was 55 too short, and too much a part, as it were, of the shoulders. It did not rise up like a tower, distinct in itself; and the muscles on it, as they moved, produced hollow cavities distressing to the eye. It was strength without beauty; a mechanical kind of power, like that of an engine, 60 working through straight lines and sharp angles. There

was too much of the machine, and too little of the animal; the lithe, easy motion of the lion or the tiger was not there. The impression conveyed was, that such strength had been gained through a course of incessant 65 exertion of the rudest kind, unassisted by generous food and checked by unnatural exposure.

THE RUNNER<sup>1</sup>

WALT WHITMAN

On a flat road runs the well-train'd runner,  
He is lean and sinewy with muscular legs,  
He is thinly clothed, he leans forward as he runs,  
With lightly closed fists and arms partially rais'd.

THE FOOTBALL PLAYER<sup>2</sup>

EDWARD CRACROFT LEFROY

If I could paint you, friend, as you stand there,  
Guard of the goal, defensive, open-eyed,  
Watching the tortured bladder slide and glide  
Under the twinkling feet; arms bare, head bare,  
The breeze a-tremble through crow-tufts of hair; 5  
Red-brown in face, and ruddier having spied  
A wily foeman breaking from the side,

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted by permission of Small, Maynard, & Co.

<sup>2</sup> Reprinted by permission of Mr. John Lane.

Aware of him, — of all else unaware:  
 If I could limn you, as you leap and fling  
 Your weight against his passage, like a wall; 10  
 Clutch him, and collar him, and rudely cling,  
 For one brief moment till he falls — you fall:  
 My sketch would have what Art can never give —  
 Sinew and breath and body; it would live.

What form of poem? Give the rhyme-scheme. Does it differ from that of a preceding poem of the same number of lines? Does Mr. Lefroy divide his poem into two thought divisions, as did Mr. Watts-Dunton?

## CHILDHOOD AND YOUTH<sup>1</sup>

### A CONTRAST

EDWARD CRACROFT LEFROY

I love to watch a rout of merry boys  
 Released from school for play, and nothing loth  
 To make amends for late incurious sloth  
 By wild activity and strident noise;  
 But more to mark the lads of larger growth 5  
 Move fieldward with such perfect equipoise,  
 As if constricted by an inward oath  
 To scorn the younger age and clamorous joys;  
 Prepared no less for pastime all their own,  
 A silent strenuous game of hand and knee, 10  
 Where no man speaks, but a round ball is thrown  
 And kicked and run upon with solemn glee,  
 And every struggle takes an earnest tone,  
 And rudest sport a sober dignity.

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted by permission of Mr. John Lane.

CHAPTERS FROM "LORNA DOONE"<sup>1</sup>

R. D. BLACKMORE

## THE GREAT WINTER

It must have snowed most wonderfully to have made that depth of covering in about eight hours. For one of Master Stickles' men, who had been out all the night, said that no snow began to fall until nearly midnight. And there it was, blocking up the doors, stopping the ways and the watercourses, and making it very much worse to walk than in a saw-pit newly used. However, we trudged along in a line; I first, and the other men after me; trying to keep my track, but finding legs and strength not up to it. Most of all, John Fry was groaning; certain that his time was come, and sending messages to his wife, and blessings to his children. For all this time it was snowing harder than it ever had snowed before, so far as a man might guess at it; and the leaden depth of the sky came down, like a mine turned upside down on us. Not that the flakes were so very large; for I have seen much larger flakes in a shower of March, while sowing peas; but that there was no room between them, neither any relaxing, nor any change of direction.

Watch, like a good and faithful dog, followed us very cheerfully, leaping out of the depth, which took him over his back and ears already, even in the level places; while in the drifts he might have sunk to any distance out of sight, and never found his way up again. However, we helped him now and then, especially through the gaps and gateways; and so, after a deal of floundering, some laughter, and a little swearing, we came all

<sup>1</sup> The style is in imitation of the seventeenth century. The gigantic young hero, John Ridd, tells the story.

safe to the lower meadow, where most of our flock was huddled.

But behold, there was no flock at all! None, I mean, 30  
to be seen anywhere; only at one corner of the field, by  
the eastern end, where the snow drove in, a great white  
billow, as high as a barn and as broad as a house. This  
great drift was rolling and curling beneath the violent  
blast, tufting and combing with rustling swirls, and 35  
carved (as in patterns of cornice) where the grooving  
chisel of the wind swept round. Ever and again the  
tempest snatched little whiffs from the channeled edges,  
twirled them round and made them dance over the chine  
of the monster pile, then let them lie like herring-bones, 40  
or the seams of sand where the tide has been. And all  
the while from the smothering sky, more and more fiercely  
at every blast, came the pelting, pitiless arrows, winged  
with murky white, and pointed with the barbs of frost.

But although, for people who had no sheep, the sight 45  
was a very fine one (so far at least as the weather per-  
mitted any sight at all), yet for us, with our flock  
beneath it, this great mount had but little charm. Watch  
began to scratch at once, and to howl along the sides of  
it; he knew that his charge was buried there, and his 50  
business taken from him. But we four men set to in  
earnest, digging with all our might and main, shovelling  
away at the great white pile, and pitching it into the  
meadow. Each man made for himself a cave, scooping  
at the soft cold flux, which slid upon him at every stroke, 55  
and throwing it out behind him, in piles of castled fancy.  
At last we drove our tunnels in (for we worked indeed  
for the lives of us), and all converging toward the  
middle, held our tools and listened.

The other men heard nothing at all; or declared that 60

they heard nothing, being anxious now to abandon the matter, because of the chill in their feet and knees. But I said, "Go, if you choose, all of you. I will work it out by myself, you pie-crusts!" and upon that they gripped their shovels, being more or less of English- 65 men; and the least drop of English blood is worth the best of any other when it comes to lasting out.

But before we began again, I laid my head well into the chamber; and there I heard a faint "ma-a-ah," coming through some ells of snow, like a plaintive buried 70 hope, or a last appeal. I shouted aloud to cheer him up, for I knew what sheep it was — to wit, the most valiant of all the wethers, who had met me when I came home from London, and been so glad to see me. (And then we all fell to again, and very soon we hauled him 75 out.) Watch took charge of him at once, with an air of the noblest patronage, lying on his frozen fleece, and licking all his face and feet, to restore his warmth to him. Then fighting Tom jumped up at once, and made a little butt at Watch, as if nothing had ever ailed him, 80 and then set off to a shallow place, and looked for something to nibble at.

Further in, and close under the bank, where they had huddled themselves for warmth, we found all the rest of the poor sheep, packed as closely as if they were in a 85 great pie. It was strange to observe how their vapor, and breath, and the moisture exuding from their wool, had scooped, as it were, a covered room for them, lined with a ribbing of deep yellow snow. Also the churned snow beneath their feet was as yellow as gamboge. Two 90 or three of the weaklier hoggets were dead from want of air, and from pressure; but more than three-score were as lively as ever, though cramped and stiff for a little while.

"However shall us get 'em home?" John Fry asked, in great dismay, when we had cleared about a dozen of 95 them; which we were forced to do very carefully, so as not to fetch the roof down. "No manner of maning to draive 'un, drough all they girt driftnesses."

"You see to this place, John," I replied, as we leaned on our shovels a moment, and the sheep came rubbing 100 round us. "Let no more of them out for the present; they are better where they be. Watch! here, boy, keep them."

Watch came, with his little scut of a tail cocked as sharp as duty; and I set him at the narrow mouth of the great snow antre. All the sheep sidled away, and got 105 closer, that the other sheep might be bitten first, as the foolish things imagine; whereas no good sheep-dog even so much as lips a sheep to turn it.

Then of the outer sheep (all now snowed and frizzled like a lawyer's wig) I took the two finest and heaviest, 110 and with one beneath my right arm, and the other beneath my left, I went straight home to the upper sheppey, and set them inside, and fastened them. Sixty-and-six I took home in that way, two at a time on each journey; and the work grew harder and harder each 115 time, as the drifts of the snow were deepening. No other man should meddle with them: I was resolved to try my strength against the strength of the elements; and try it I did, ay, and proved it. A certain fierce delight burned in me, as the struggle grew harder; but rather 120 would I die than yield; and at last I finished it. People talk of it to this day: but none can tell what the labor was, who had not felt that snow and wind.

97. *No manner of maning* is about equivalent to "I don't by any means intend." 98. *'un*, them. *girt*, a provincial expression for big, powerful. John Fry applies it to snowdrifts; but John Ridd himself was known as "Girt Jan Ridd." 105. *antre* is an old word for cave.



Of the sheep upon the mountain, and the sheep upon the western farm, and the cattle on the upper barrows, 125 scarcely one in ten was saved, do what we would for them. And this was not through any neglect (now that our wits were sharpened), but from the pure impossibility of finding them at all. That great snow never ceased a moment for three days and nights; and then 130 when all the earth was filled, and the topmost hedges were unseen, and the trees broke down with weight (wherever the wind had not lightened them), a brilliant sun broke forth and showed the loss of all our customs.

All our house was quite snowed up, except where we 135 had purged a way by dint of constant shovellings. The kitchen was as dark, and darker, than the cider-cellar, and long lines of furrowed scollops ran even up to the chimney-stacks. Several windows fell right inward, through the weight of the snow against them; and the 140 few that stood bulged in, and bent like an old bruised lantern. We were obliged to cook by candle-light; we were forced to read by candle-light; as for baking we could not do it, because the oven was too chill; and a load of fagots only brought a little wet down the sides of it. 145

For when the sun burst forth at last upon the world of white, what he brought was neither warmth, nor cheer, nor hope of softening; only a clearer shaft of cold, from the violent depths of sky. Long-drawn alleys of white haze seemed to lead toward him, yet such as 150 he could not come down, with any warmth remaining. Broad white curtains of the frost-fog looped around the lower sky, on the verge of hill and valley, and above the laden trees. Only round the sun himself, and the spot of heaven he claimed, clustered a bright purple-blue, 155 clear, and calm, and deep.

That night such a frost ensued as we had never dreamed of, neither read in ancient books, nor histories of Frobisher. The kettle by the fire froze, and the crock upon the hearth-cheeks; many men were killed, and cattle rigid in their head-ropes. Then I heard that <sup>160</sup> fearful sound which never I had heard before, neither since have heard (except during that same winter), the sharp yet solemn sound of trees burst open by the frost-blow. Our great walnut lost three branches, and has been dying ever since; though growing meanwhile, as <sup>165</sup> the soul does. And the ancient oak at the cross was rent, and many score of ash trees. But why should I tell all this? The people who have not seen it (as I have) will only make faces, and disbelieve, till such another frost comes, which perhaps may never be. . . . <sup>170</sup>

## DRIVEN BEYOND ENDURANCE

Everything was settled smoothly, and without any fear or fuss that Lorna might find end of troubles, and myself of eager waiting, with the help of Parson Bowden, and the good wishes of two counties. I could scarce believe my fortune when I looked upon her beauty, gentleness, <sup>5</sup> and sweetness, mingled with enough of humor, and warm woman's feeling, never to be dull or tiring; never themselves to be weary.

For she might be called a woman now, although a very young one, and as full of playful ways, or perhaps I <sup>10</sup> may say ten times as full, as if she had known no trouble: to wit, the spirit of bright childhood, having been so curbed and straightened ere its time was over, now broke forth, enriched and varied with the garb of conscious maidenhood. And the sense of steadfast love, and eager <sup>15</sup> love enfolding her, colored with so many tinges all her

looks, and words, and thoughts, that to me it was the noblest vision even to think about her.

But this was far too bright to last, without bitter break, and the plunging of happiness in horror, and of passion-<sup>20</sup> ate joy in agony. My darling, in her softest moments, when she was alone with me, when the spark of defiant eyes was veiled beneath dark lashes, and the challenge of gay beauty passed into sweetest invitation; at such times of her purest love and warmest faith in me, a deep<sup>25</sup> abiding fear would flutter in her bounding heart, as of deadly fate's approach. She would cling to me, and nestle to me, being scared of coyishness, and lay one arm around my neck, and ask if I could do without her.

Hence, as all emotions haply, of those who are more<sup>30</sup> to us than ourselves, find within us stronger echo, and more perfect answer, so I could not be regardless of some hidden evil, and my dark misgivings deepened as the time drew nearer. I kept a steadfast watch on Lorna, neglecting a field of beans entirely, as well as a litter<sup>35</sup> of young pigs, and a cow somewhat given to jaundice. And I let Jem Slocome go to sleep in the tallat all one afternoon and Bill Dadds draw off a bucket of cider, without so much as a "by your leave." For these men knew that my knighthood, and my coat of arms, and<sup>40</sup> (most of all) my love, were greatly against good farming: the sense of our country being — and perhaps it may be sensible — that a man who sticks up to be anything must allow himself to be cheated.

But I never did stick up, nor would, though all the<sup>45</sup> parish bade me; and I whistled the same tunes to my horses, and held my plough-tree just the same as if no King nor Queen had ever come to spoil my tune or hand. For this thing nearly all the men around our parts up-

braided me, but the women praised me; and for the most 50  
part these are right, when themselves are not concerned.

However humble I might be, no one knowing anything of our part of the country would for a moment doubt that now here was a great to-do and talk of John Ridd and his wedding. The fierce fight with the 55  
Doones so lately, and my leading of the combat (though I fought not more than need be), and the vanishing of Sir Counsellor, and the galloping madness of Carver, and the religious fear of the women that this last was gone to hell — for he himself had declared that his aim, while 60  
he cut through the yeomanry — also their remorse that he should have been made to go thither, with all his children left behind — these things, I say (if ever I can again contrive to say anything), had led to the broadest excitement about my wedding of Lorna. We heard that 65  
people meant to come from more than thirty miles around, upon excuse of seeing my stature and Lorna's beauty; but in good truth, out of sheer curiosity and the love of meddling.

Our clerk had given notice that not a man should 70  
come inside the door of his church without shilling-fee, and women (as sure to see twice as much) must every one pay two shillings. I thought this wrong; and, as church-warden, begged that the money might be paid into mine own hands when taken. But the clerk said 75  
that was against all law; and he had orders from the parson to pay it to him without any delay. So, as I always obey the parson when I care not much about a thing, I let them have it their own way, though feeling inclined to believe sometimes that I ought to have some 80  
of the money.

Dear mother arranged all the ins and outs of the way in which it was to be done; and Annie and Lizzie, and

all the Snowes, and even Ruth Huckaback (who was there, after great persuasion), made such a sweeping of 85 dresses that I scarcely knew where to place my feet, and longed for a staff to put by their gowns. Then Lorna came out of a pew halfway, in a manner which quite astonished me, and took my left hand in her right, and I prayed God that it were done with. 90

My darling looked so glorious that I was afraid of glancing at her, yet took in all her beauty. She was in a fright, no doubt, but nobody should see it; whereas I said (to myself, at least), "I will go through it like a grave-digger." 95

Lorna's dress was of pure white, clouded with faint lavender (for the sake of the old Earl Brandir), and as simple as need be, except for perfect loveliness. I was afraid to look at her, as I said before, except when each of us said, "I will"; and then each dwelt upon the other. 100

It is impossible for any who have not loved as I have to conceive my joy and pride when, after ring and all was done, and the parson had blessed us, Lorna turned to look at me with her glances of subtle fun subdued by this great act. 105

Her eyes, which none on earth may ever equal or compare with, told me such a depth of comfort, yet awaiting further commune, that I was almost amazed, thoroughly as I knew them. Darling eyes, the sweetest eyes, the loveliest, the most loving eyes — the sound of 110 a shot rang through the church, and those eyes were filled with death.

Lorna fell across my knees when I was going to kiss her, as the bridegroom is allowed to do, and encouraged, if he needs it; a flood of blood came out upon the 115 yellow wood of the altar steps; and at my feet lay Lorna, trying to tell me some last message out of her faithful

eyes. I lifted her up, and petted her, and coaxed her, but it was no good; the only sign of life remaining was a spirit of bright red blood. 120

Some men know what things befall them in the supreme time of their life — far above the time of death — but to me comes back as a hazy dream, without any knowledge in it, what I did, or felt, or thought, with my wife's arms flagging, flagging, around my neck, as I 125 raised her up, and softly put them there. She sighed a long sigh on my breast, for her last farewell to life, and then she grew so cold, and cold, that I asked the time of year.

It was now Whit-Tuesday, and the lilacs all in blossom; and why I thought of the time of year, with the young death in my arms, God or His angels may decide, having so strangely given us. Enough that so I did, and looked; and our white lilacs were beautiful. Then I laid my wife in my mother's arms, and begging that 135 no one would make any noise, went forth for my revenge.

Of course I knew who had done it. There was but one man in the world, or, at any rate, in our part of it, who could have done such a thing — such a thing. I use no harsher word about it, while I leaped upon our 140 best horse, with bridle but no saddle, and set the head of Kickums toward the course now pointed out to me. Who showed me the course, I cannot tell. I only knew that I took it. And the men fell back before me.

Weapon of no sort had I. Unarmed, and wondering 145 at my strange attire (with a bridal vest wrought by our Annie, and red with the blood of the bride), I went forth just to find out this — whether in this world there be or be not God of justice.

With my vicious horse at a furious speed, I came upon 150

Black Barrow Down, directed by some shout of men, which seemed to me but a whisper. And there about a furlong before me, rode a man on a great black horse, and I knew that the man was Carver Doone.

"Your life, or mine," I said to myself; "as the will <sup>155</sup> of God may be. But we two live not upon this earth one more hour together."

I knew the strength of this great man; and I knew that he was armed with a gun — if he had time to load again, after shooting my Lorna — or at any rate with <sup>160</sup> pistols, and a horseman's sword as well. Nevertheless, I had no more doubt of killing the man before me than a cook has of spitting a headless fowl.

Sometimes seeing no ground beneath me, and sometimes heeding every leaf, and the crossing of the grass- <sup>165</sup> blades, I followed over the long moor, reckless whether seen or not. But only once the other man turned round and looked back again, and then I was beside a rock, with a reedy swamp behind me.

Although he was so far before me, and riding as hard <sup>170</sup> as ride he might, I saw that he had something on the horse in front of him; something which needed care, and stopped him from looking backward. In the whirling of my wits, I fancied first that this was Lorna; until the scene I had been through fell across hot brain and <sup>175</sup> heart, like the drop at the close of a tragedy. Rushing there through crag and quag at utmost speed of a mad-dened horse, I saw, as of another's fate, calmly (as on canvas laid), the brutal deed, the piteous anguish, and the cold despair. <sup>180</sup>

The man turned up the gully leading from the moor to Cloven Rocks, through which John Fry had tracked Uncle Ben, as of old related. But as Carver entered it, he turned round, and beheld me not a hundred yards

behind; and I saw that he was bearing his child, little 185  
Ensie, before him. Ensie also descried me, and  
stretched his hands and cried to me; for the face of  
his father frightened him.

Carver Doone, with a vile oath, thrust spurs into his  
flagging horse, and laid one hand on a pistol-stock, 190  
whence I knew that his slung carbine had received no  
bullet since the one that had pierced Lorna. And a cry  
of triumph rose from the black depths of my heart.  
What cared I for pistols? I had no spurs, neither was  
my horse one to need the rowel; I rather held him in 195  
than urged him, for he was fresh as ever; and I knew that  
the black steed in front, if he breasted the steep ascent,  
where the track divided, must be in our reach at once.

His rider knew this, and, having no room in the  
rocky channel to turn and fire, drew rein at the cross- 200  
ways sharply, and plunged into the black ravine leading  
to the Wizard's Slough. "Is it so?" I said to myself,  
with brain and head cold as iron: "though the foul fiend  
come from the slough to save thee, thou shalt carve it,  
Carver."

205

I followed my enemy carefully, steadily, even lei-  
surely; for I had him as in a pitfall, where no escape  
might be. He thought that I feared to approach him,  
for he knew not where he was: and his low disdainful  
laugh came back. "Laugh he who wins," thought I. 210

A gnarled and half-starved oak, as stubborn as my  
own resolve, and smitten by some storm of old, hung  
from the crag above me. Rising from my horse's back,  
although I had no stirrups, I caught a limb, and tore it  
(like a mere wheat-awn) from the socket. Men show 215  
the rent even now with wonder; none with more wonder  
than myself.

Carver Doone turned the corner suddenly on the black



and bottomless bog; with a start of fear he reigned back his horse, and I thought he would have turned upon me. 220 But instead of that, he again rode on, hoping to find a way round the side.

Now there is a way between cliff and slough for those who know the ground thoroughly, or have time enough to search it; but for him there was no road, and he lost 225 some time in seeking it. Upon this he made up his mind; and wheeling, fired, and then rode at me.

His bullet struck me somewhere, but I took no heed of that. Fearing only his escape, I laid my horse across the way, and with the limb of the oak struck full 230 on the forehead his charging steed. Ere the slash of the sword came nigh me, man and horse rolled over, and well-nigh bore my own horse down with the power of their onset.

Carver Doone was somewhat stunned, and could not 235 arise for a moment. Meanwhile I leaped on the ground and awaited, smoothing my hair back, and baring my arms, as though in the ring for wrestling. Then the little boy ran to me, clasped my leg, and looked up at me; and the terror in his eyes made me almost fear 240 myself.

"Ensie, dear," I said quite gently, grieving that he should see his wicked father killed, "run up yonder round the corner, and try to find a pretty bunch of blue-bells for the lady." The child obeyed me, hanging 245 back, and looking back, and then laughing, while I prepared for business. There and then I might have killed mine enemy with a single blow while he lay unconscious, but it would have been foul play.

With a sullen and black scowl, the Carver gathered 250 his mighty limbs and arose, and looked round for his weapons; but I had put them well away. Then he

came to me and gazed, being wont to frighten thus young men.

"I would not harm you, lad," he said, with a lofty <sup>255</sup> style of sneering. "I have punished you enough, for most of your impertinence. For the rest I forgive you, because you have been good and gracious to my little son. Go and be contented."

For answer I smote him on the cheek, lightly, and <sup>260</sup> not to hurt him, but to make his blood leap up. I would not sully my tongue by speaking to a man like this.

There was a level space of sward between us and the slough. With the courtesy derived from London, and <sup>265</sup> the processions I had seen, to this place I led him. And that he might breathe himself, and have every fibre cool, and every muscle ready, my hold upon his coat I loosed, and left him to begin with me whenever he thought proper. <sup>270</sup>

I think he felt that his time was come. I think that he knew from my knitted muscles, and the firm arch of my breast, and the way in which I stood, but most of all from my stern blue eyes, that he had found his master. At any rate a paleness came, an ashy paleness on <sup>275</sup> his cheeks, and the vast calves of his legs bowed in as if he was out of training.

Seeing this, villain as he was, I offered him first chance. I stretched forth my left hand, as I do to a weaker antagonist, and I let him have the hug of me. <sup>280</sup> But in this I was too generous; having forgotten my pistol-wound, and the cracking of one of my short lower ribs. Carver Doone caught me round the waist with such a grip as never yet had been laid upon me.

I heard my rib go; I grasped his arm, and tore the <sup>285</sup> muscle out of it (as the string comes out of an orange);

then I took him by the throat, which is not allowed in wrestling, but he had snatched at mine; and now was no time of dalliance. In vain he tugged, and strained, and writhed, dashed his bleeding fist into my face, and 290 flung himself on me with gnashing jaws. Beneath the iron of my strength—for God that day was with me—I had him helpless in two minutes, and his fiery eyes lolled out.

“I will not harm thee any more,” I cried, so far as I 295 could for panting, the work being very furious. “Carver Doone, thou art beaten; own it, and thank God for it; and go thy way, and repent thyself.”

It was all too late. Even if he had yielded in his ravening frenzy—for his beard was like a mad dog’s 300 jowl—even if he would have owned that, for the first time in his life, he had found his master; it was all too late.

The black bog had him by the feet; the sucking of the ground drew on him, like the thirsty lips of death. 305 In our fury, we had heeded neither wet nor dry; nor thought of earth beneath us. I myself might scarcely leap, with the last spring of o’erlabored legs, from the ingulfing grave of slime. He fell back, with his swarthy breast (from which my gripe had tore all clothing), like 310 a hummock of bog-oak, standing out the quagmire; and then he tossed his arms to heaven, and they were black to the elbow, and the glare of his eyes was ghastly. I could only gaze and pant; for my strength was no more than an infant’s, from the fury and the horror. Scarcely 315 could I turn away, while, joint by joint, he sunk from sight.

## MY BATH

JOHN STUART BLACKIE

*(Scene : Kinnaird Burn, near Pitlochrie)*

Come here, good people great and small, that wander far  
abroad,

To drink of drumly German wells, and make a weary road  
To Baden and to Wiesbaden, and how they all are nam'd,  
To Carlsbad and to Kissingen, for healing virtue fam'd;  
Come stay at home, and keep your feet from dusty travel  
free, 5

And I will show you what rare bath a good God gave to  
me ;

'Tis hid among the Highland hills beneath the purple brae,  
With cooling freshness free to all, nor doctor's fee to pay.

No craft of mason made it here, nor carpenter, I wot ;  
Nor tinkering fool with hammering tool to shape the  
charmed spot ; 10

But down the rocky-breasted glen the foamy torrent falls  
Into the amber caldron deep, fenced round with granite  
walls.

Nor gilded beam, nor pictur'd dome, nor curtain, roofs it in,  
But the blue sky rests, and white clouds float, above the  
bubbling linn,

Where God's own hand hath scoop'd it out in Nature's  
Titan hall, 15

And from her cloud-fed fountains drew its waters free to all.

2. *drumly*, Scotch for *muddy*. 3. *and how they all are nam'd* is a German idiom equivalent to "all of them, however named." 14. *linn*, a pool. The "colony by the pool" is the sense of *Linn-colonia*, shortened into *Lincoln*.

Oh come and see my Highland bath, and prove its freshen-  
ing flood,

And spare to taint your skin with swathes of drumly Ger-  
man mud :

Come plunge with me into the wave like liquid topaz fair,  
And to the waters give your back that spout down bravely  
there ; 20

Then float upon the swirling flood, and, like a glancing  
trout,

Plash about, and dash about, and make a lively rout,  
And to the gracious sun display the glory of your skin,  
As you dash about and splash about in the foamy-bubbling  
linn.

Oh come and prove my bonnie bath ; in sooth 'tis furnish'd  
well 25

With trees, and shrubs, and spreading ferns, all in the rocky  
dell,

And roses hanging from the cliff in grace of white and red,  
And little tiny birches nodding lightly overhead,

And spiry larch with purple cones, and tips of virgin green,  
And leafy shade of hazel copse with sunny glints between :

Oh might the Roman wight be here who praised Bandusia's  
well, 31

He'd find a bath to Nymphs more dear in my sweet High-  
land dell.

Some folks will pile proud palaces, and some will wander  
far

To scan the blinding of a sun, or the blinking of a star ;  
Some sweat through Afric's burning sands ; and some will  
vex their soul 35

To find heaven knows what frosty prize beneath the Arctic  
pole.

God bless them all ; and may they find what thing delights  
 them well

In east or west, or north or south, — but I at home will dwell  
 Where fragrant ferns their fronds uncurl, and healthful  
 breezes play, 39

And clear brown waters grandly swirl beneath the purple brae.

Oh come and prove my Highland bath, the burn, and all  
 the glen,

Hard-toiling wights in dingy nooks, and scribes with inky pen,  
 Strange thoughtful men with curious quests that vex your  
 fretful brains,

And scheming sons of trade who fear to count your slippery  
 gains ;

Come wander up the burn with me, and thread the winding  
 glen, 45

And breathe the healthful power that flows down from the  
 breezy Ben,

And plunge you in the deep brown pool ; and from beneath  
 the spray

You'll come forth like a flower that blooms 'neath freshen-  
 ing showers in May !

41. *burn*, a brook. 42. *wights*, mortals. 46. *Ben* is a Celtic word for mountain.

Name the metre according to the number of accents. Is it trochaic or iambic ? Is the movement solemn or cheerful ? What is the rhyme-scheme ? What colors are attributed to the pool of mountain water ?

## OH, OUR MANHOOD'S PRIME VIGOR

ROBERT BROWNING

Oh, our manhood's prime vigor ! No spirit feels waste,  
 Not a muscle is stopped in its playing nor sinew unbraced.  
 Oh, the wild joys of living ! the leaping from rock up to rock

The strong rending of boughs from the fir tree, the cool  
 silver shock  
 Of the plunge in a pool's living water, the hunt of the  
 bear, 5  
 And the sultriness showing the lion is couched in his lair.  
 And the meal, the rich dates yellowed over with gold dust  
 divine,  
 And the locust-flesh steeped in the pitcher, the full draught  
 of wine,  
 And the sleep in the dried river-channel where bulrushes  
 tell  
 That the water was wont to go warbling so softly and well. 10  
 How good is man's life, the mere living ! how fit to employ  
 All the heart and the soul and the senses forever in joy !

## THE HAUNTED PALACE

EDGAR ALLAN POE

In the greenest of our valleys,  
 By good angels tenanted,  
 Once a fair and stately palace  
 (Radiant palace) reared its head.  
 In the monarch Thought's dominion 5  
 It stood there !  
 Never seraph spread a pinion  
 Over fabric half so fair.

Banners yellow, glorious, golden,  
 On its roof did float and flow 10  
 (This, all this, was in the olden  
 Time long ago) ;

And every gentle air that dallied  
In that sweet day,  
Along the ramparts plumed and pallid, 15  
A wingèd odor went away.

Wanderers in that happy valley  
Through two luminous windows saw  
Spirits moving musically,  
To a lute's well-tunèd law, 20  
Round about a throne, where, sitting  
(Porphyrogene !)  
In state his glory well befitting,  
The ruler of the realm was seen.

And all with pearl and ruby glowing 25  
Was the fair palace door,  
Through which came flowing, flowing, flowing,  
And sparkling evermore,  
A troop of Echoes, whose sweet duty  
Was but to sing, 30  
In voices of surpassing beauty,  
The wit and wisdom of their king.

But evil things, in robes of sorrow,  
Assailed the monarch's high estate  
(Ah ! let us mourn, for never morrow 35  
Shall dawn upon him desolate);  
And round about his home the glory  
That blushed and bloomed  
Is but a dim-remembered story  
Of the old time entombed. 40  
And travellers now within that valley  
Through the red-litten windows see



Vast forms that move fantastically  
 To a discordant melody,  
 While, like a ghastly, rapid river, 45  
 Through the pale door  
 A hideous throng rush out forever,  
 And laugh — but smile no more.

What two lines of the poem are the most melodious ?

Explain the allegory stanza by stanza, but do not be surprised if every detail (*e.g.* the lute) is not clear; Poe perhaps intended a little beautiful vagueness now and then.

## DIALOGUE BETWEEN FRANKLIN AND THE GOUT

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN

MIDNIGHT, October 22, 1780.

*Franklin.* Eh ! oh ! eh ! What have I done to merit these cruel sufferings?

*Gout.* Many things : you have ate and drank too freely, and too much indulged those legs of yours in their indolence. 5

*Franklin.* Who is it that accuses me?

*Gout.* It is I, even I, the Gout.

*Franklin.* What ! my enemy in person?

*Gout.* No, not your enemy.

*Franklin.* I repeat it : my enemy ; for you would not 10 only torment my body to death, but ruin my good name ; you reproach me as a glutton and a tippler ; now all the world, that knows me, will allow that I am neither the one nor the other.

*Gout.* The world may think as it pleases ; it is always 15 very complaisant to itself, and sometimes to its friends ;

but I very well know that the quantity of meat and drink proper for a man who takes a reasonable degree of exercise, would be too much for another who never takes any.

*Franklin.* I take — eh ! oh ! — as much exercise —<sup>20</sup> eh ! — as I can, Madam Gout. You know my sedentary state, and on that account, it would seem, Madam Gout, as if you might spare me a little, seeing it is not altogether my own fault.

*Gout.* Not a jot ; your rhetoric and your politeness<sup>25</sup> are thrown away ; your apology avails nothing. If your situation in life is a sedentary one, your amusements, your recreations, at least, should be active. You ought to walk or ride, or if the weather prevents that, play at billiards. But let us examine your course of life. While<sup>30</sup> the mornings are long, and you have leisure to go abroad, what do you do ? Why, instead of gaining an appetite for breakfast by salutary exercise, you amuse yourself with books, pamphlets, or newspapers, which commonly are not worth the reading. Yet you eat an inordinate breakfast,<sup>35</sup> — four dishes of tea, with cream, and one or two buttered toasts, with slices of hung beef, which, I fancy, are not things the most easily digested. Immediately afterward you sit down to write at your desk, or converse with persons who apply to you on business. Thus the time passes<sup>40</sup> till one, without any kind of bodily exercise. But all this I could pardon, in regard, as you say, to your sedentary condition. But what is your practice after dinner ? Walking in the beautiful gardens of those friends with whom you have dined, would be the choice of a man of<sup>45</sup> sense ; yours is to be fixed down to chess, where you are found engaged for two or three hours ! This is your perpetual recreation, which is the least eligible of any for a

25. Here *rhetoric* is used partly in the old sense — the art of persuasion — and partly in the sense of fine, high-sounding language.

sedentary man, because, instead of accelerating the motion of the fluids, the rigid attention it requires helps to retard <sup>50</sup> the circulation and obstruct internal secretions. Wrapt in the speculations of this wretched game, you destroy your constitution. What can be expected from such a course of living, but a body replete with stagnant humors, ready to fall a prey to all kinds of dangerous maladies, if I, <sup>55</sup> the Gout, did not occasionally bring you relief by agitating those humors, and so purifying or dissipating them? If it was in some nook or alley in Paris, deprived of walks, that you played awhile at chess after dinner, this might be excusable ; but the same taste prevails with you in Passy, <sup>60</sup> Auteuil, Montmartre, or Savoy, — places where there are the finest gardens and walks, a pure air, beautiful women, and most agreeable and instructive conversation ; all of which you might enjoy by frequenting the walks. But these are rejected for this abominable game of chess. <sup>65</sup> Fie, then, Mr. Franklin ! But, amidst my instructions, I had almost forgot to administer my wholesome corrections ; so take that twinge, — and that !

*Franklin.* Oh ! eh ! oh ! ohhh ! As much instruction as you please, Madam Gout, and as many reproaches ; <sup>70</sup> but pray, madam, a truce with your corrections !

*Gout.* No, sir, no : I will not abate a particle of what is so much for your good, — therefore —

*Franklin.* Oh ! eh ! — It is not fair to say I take no exercise, when I do very often, going out to dine, and <sup>75</sup> returning in my carriage.

*Gout.* That, of all imaginable exercises, is the most slight and insignificant, if you allude to the motion of a carriage suspended on springs. By observing the degree of heat obtained by different kinds of motion, we may <sup>80</sup> form an estimate of the quantity of exercise given by each. Thus for example, if you turn out to walk in

winter with cold feet, in an hour's time you will be in a glow all over ; ride on horseback, the same effect will scarcely be perceived by four hours' round trotting ; but if you 85 loll in a carriage, such as you have mentioned, you may travel all day, and gladly enter the last inn to warm your feet by the fire. Flatter yourself then no longer, that half an hour's airing in your carriage deserves the name of exercise. Providence has appointed few to roll in 90 carriages, while he has given to all a pair of legs, which are machines infinitely more commodious and serviceable. Be grateful, then, and make a proper use of yours. Would you know how they forward the circulation of your fluids, in the very action of transporting you from 95 place to place : observe, when you walk, that all your weight is alternately thrown from one leg to the other ; this occasions a great pressure on the vessels of the foot, and repels their contents ; when relieved, by the weight of being thrown on the other foot, the vessels of the first 100 are allowed to replenish, and, by a return of this weight, this repulsion again succeeds ; thus accelerating the circulation of the blood. The heat produced in any given time depends on the degree of this acceleration ; the fluids are shaken, the humors alternated, the secretions 105 facilitated, and all goes well ; the cheeks are ruddy, and health is established. Behold your fair friend at Auteuil ; a lady who received from bounteous nature more really useful science than half a dozen such pretenders to philosophy as you have been able to extract from all 110 your books. When she honors you with a visit, it is on foot. She walks all hours of the day, and leaves indolence and its concomitant maladies to be endured by her horses. In this see at once the preservative of her health and personal charms. But when you go to 115 Auteuil, you must have your carriage, though it is no

further from Passy to Auteuil than from Auteuil to Passy.

*Franklin.* Your reasonings grow very tiresome.

*Gout.* I stand corrected. I will be silent and continue my office ; take that, and that. 120

*Franklin.* Oh ! ohh ! Talk on, I pray you !

*Gout.* No, no ; I have a good number of twinges for you to-night, and you may be sure of some more to-morrow. 125

*Franklin.* What, with such a fever ! I shall go distracted. Oh ! eh ! Can no one bear it for me ?

*Gout.* Ask that of your horses ; they have served you faithfully.

*Franklin.* How can you so cruelly sport with my torments ? 130

*Gout.* Sport ! I am very serious. I have here a list of offences against your own health distinctly written, and can justify every stroke inflicted on you.

*Franklin.* Read it, then. 135

*Gout.* It is too long a detail ; but I will briefly mention some particulars.

*Franklin.* Proceed. I am all attention.

*Gout.* Do you remember how often you have promised yourself, the following morning a walk in the grove of 140  
Bologne, in the Garden de la Muette, or in your own garden, and have violated your promise, alleging at one time it was too cold, at another too warm, too windy, too moist, or what else you pleased ; when in truth it was too nothing but your inseparable love of ease ? 145

*Franklin.* That, I confess, may have happened occasionally ; probably ten times in a year.

*Gout.* Your confession is very far short of the truth ; the gross amount is one hundred and ninety-nine times.

*Franklin.* Is it possible ? 150

*Gout.* So possible that it is fact ; you may rely on the accuracy of my statement. You know M. Brillon's gardens, and what fine walks they contain ; you know the handsome flight of an hundred steps, which lead from the terrace above to the lawn below. You have 155 been in the practice of visiting this amiable family twice a week after dinner, and it is a maxim of your own, that "a man may take as much exercise in walking a mile, up and down stairs, as in ten on level ground." What an opportunity was here for you to have had exercise in 160 both these ways ! Did you embrace it, and how often ?

*Franklin.* I cannot immediately answer that question.

*Gout.* I will do it for you. Not once.

*Franklin.* Not once ?

*Gout.* Even so. During the summer you went there 165 at six o'clock. You found the charming lady with her lovely children and friends, eager to walk with you and entertain you with their agreeable conversation ; and what has been your choice ? Why, to sit on the terrace, satisfy yourself with the fine prospect, and passing your 170 eye over the beauties of the garden below, without taking one step to descend and walk about in them. On the contrary, you call for tea and the chessboard ; and lo ! you are occupied in your seat till nine o'clock, and that besides two hours' play after dinner ; and then, instead 175 of walking home, which would have bestirred you a little, you step into your carriage. How absurd to suppose that all this carelessness can be reconcilable with health, without my interposition !

*Franklin.* I am convinced now of the justness of 180 Poor Richard's remark, that "Our debts and our sins are always greater than we think for."

*Gout.* So it is. You philosophers are sages in your maxims, and fools in your conduct.

*Franklin.* But do you charge among my crimes that 185  
I return in a carriage from M. Brillon's?

*Gout.* Certainly ; for, having been seated all the while, you cannot object the fatigue of the day, and cannot want, therefore, the relief of a carriage.

*Franklin.* What, then, would you have me do with 190  
my carriage?

*Gout.* Burn it if you choose : you would at least get heat out of it once in this way ; or, if you dislike that proposal, here's another for you : observe the poor peasants, who work in the vineyards and grounds about 195 the villages of Passy, Auteuil, Chaillot, etc., you may find every day among these deserving creatures, four or five old men and women, bent and perhaps crippled by weight of years and too long and too great labor. After a most fatiguing day, these people have to trudge a mile or two 200 to their smoky huts. Order your coachman to set them down. This is an act that will be good for your soul ; and at the same time after your visit to the Brillons, if you return on foot that will be good for your body.

*Franklin.* Ah ! how tiresome you are ! 205

*Gout.* Well, then, to my office ; it should not be forgotten that I am your physician. There !

*Franklin.* Oh-h-h ! What a devil of a physician !

*Gout.* How ungrateful you are to say so ! Is it not I who, in the character of your physician, have saved you 210 from the palsy, dropsy, and apoplexy ? one or other of which would have done for you long ago, but for me.

*Franklin.* I submit, and thank you for the past, but entreat the discontinuance of your visits for the future ; for, in my mind, one had better die than be cured so 215 dolefully. Permit me just to hint, that I have also not been unfriendly to you. I never feed physician or quack of any kind, to enter the list against you ; if then you

do not leave me to my repose, it may be said you are ungrateful too.

220

*Gout.* I can scarcely acknowledge that as an objection. As to quacks, I despise them; they may kill you indeed, but cannot injure me. And, as to regular physicians, they are at last convinced that the gout, in such a subject as you are, is no disease, but a remedy; and 225 wherefore cure a remedy?—But to our business; there!

*Franklin.* Oh! oh!—for Heaven's sake leave me, and I promise faithfully never more to play at chess, but to take exercise daily and live temperately.

*Gout.* I know you too well. You promise fair; but 230 after a few months of good health you will return to your old habits; your fine promises will be forgotten like the forms of the last year's clouds. Let us then finish the account, and I will go. But I leave you with an assurance of visiting you again at a proper time and place; 235 for my object is your good, and you are sensible now that I am your *real friend*.

## THE LYRA PRAYER

RICHARD JEFFERIES

One evening, when the bright white star in Lyra was shining almost at the zenith over me, and the deep concave was the more profound in the dusk, I formulated it [his soul's-desire] into three divisions. First, I desired that I might do or find something to exalt the soul, something to enable it to live its own life, a more powerful 5 existence now. Secondly, I desired to be able to do something for the flesh, to make a discovery or perfect

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from "The Story of my Heart," by permission of Longmans, Green, & Co.



a method by which the fleshly body might enjoy more pleasure, longer life, and suffer less pain. Thirdly, to 10 construct a more flexible engine with which to carry into execution the design of the will. I called this the Lyra prayer, to distinguish it from the far deeper emotion in which the soul was alone concerned.

Of the three divisions, the last was of so little impor- 15 tance that it scarcely deserved to be named in conjunction with the others. Mechanism increases convenience — in no degree does it confer physical or moral perfection. The rudimentary engines employed thousands of years ago in raising buildings were in that respect equal 20 to the complicated machines of the present day. Control of iron and steel has not altered or improved the bodily man. I even debated some time whether such a third division should be included at all. Our bodies are now conveyed all round the world with ease, but 25 obtain no advantage. As they start, so they return. The most perfect human families of ancient times were almost stationary, as those of Greece. Perfection of form was found in Sparta; how small a spot compared to those continents over which we are now taken so quickly! 30 Such perfection of form might perhaps again dwell, contented and complete in itself, on such a strip of land as I could see between me and the sand of the sea. Again, a watch keeping correct time is no guarantee that the bearer shall not suffer pain. The owner of the watch 35 may be soulless, without mind-fire, a mere creature. No benefit to the heart or to the body accrues from the most accurate mechanism. Hence I debated whether the third division should be included. But I reflected that time cannot be put back on the dial, we cannot 40 return to Sparta; there is an existent state of things, and existent multitudes; and possibly a more powerful engine,

flexible to the will, might give them that freedom which is the one, and the one only, political or social idea I possess. For liberty, therefore, let it be included. 45

For the flesh, this arm of mine, the limbs of others gracefully moving, let me find something that will give them greater perfection, that the bones may be firmer, somewhat larger if that would be an advantage, certainly stronger, that the cartilage and sinews may be more en- 50 during, and the muscles more powerful, something after the manner of those ideal limbs and muscles sculptured of old, these in the flesh and real. That the organs of the body may be stronger in their action, perfect, and lasting. That the exterior flesh may be yet more beauti- 55 ful; that the shape may be finer, and the motions graceful. These are the soberest words I can find, purposely chosen; for I am so rapt in the beauty of the human form, and so earnestly, so inexpressibly, prayerful to see that form perfect, that my full thought is not to be 60 written. Unable to express it fully, I have considered it best to put it in the simplest manner of words. I believe in the human form; let me find something, some method, by which that form may achieve the utmost beauty. Its beauty is like an arrow, which may 65 be shot any distance according to the strength of the bow. So the idea expressed in the human shape is capable of indefinite expansion and elevation of beauty.

Of the mind, the inner consciousness, the soul, my prayer desired that I might discover a mode of life for 70 it, so that it might not only conceive of such a life for it, but actually enjoy it on the earth. I wished to search out a new and higher set of ideas on which the mind should work. The simile of a new book of the soul is the nearest to convey the meaning—a book drawn from 75 the present and future, not the past. Instead of a set of

ideas based on tradition, let me give the mind a new thought drawn straight from the wondrous present, direct this very hour. Next, to furnish the soul with the means of executing its will, of carrying thought into action. In 80 other words, for the soul to become a power. These three formed the Lyra prayer, of which the two first are immeasurably the more important. I believe in the human being, mind and flesh, form and soul.

SIR GALAHAD

ALFRED, LORD TENNYSON

My good blade carves the casques of men,  
My tough lance thrusteth sure,  
My strength is as the strength of ten,  
Because my heart is pure.  
The shattering trumpet shrilleth high,  
The hard brands shiver on the steel,  
The splinter'd spear-shafts crack and fly,  
The horse and rider reel :  
They reel, they roll in clanging lists,  
And when the tide of combat stands,  
Perfume and flowers fall in showers,  
That lightly rain from ladies' hands.

How sweet are looks that ladies bend  
On whom their favors fall !  
For them I battle till the end, 15  
To save from shame and thrall :  
But all my heart is drawn above,  
My knees are bow'd in crypt and shrine :

I never felt the kiss of love,  
Nor maiden's hand in mine. 20  
More bounteous aspects on me beam,  
Me mightier transports move and thrill ;  
So keep I fair thro' faith and prayer  
A virgin heart in work and will.

When down the stormy crescent goes, 25  
A light before me swims,  
Between dark stems the forest glows,  
I hear a noise of hymns :  
Then by some secret shrine I ride ;  
I hear a voice but none are there ; 30  
The stalls are void, the doors are wide,  
The tapers burning fair.  
Fair gleams the snowy altar-cloth,  
The silver vessels sparkle clean,  
The shrill bell rings, the censer swings, 35  
And solemn chants resound between.

Sometimes on lonely mountain-meres  
I find a magic bark ;  
I leap on board : no helmsman steers :  
I float till all is dark. 40  
A gentle sound, an awful light !  
Three angels bear the Holy Grail :  
With folded feet, in stoles of white,  
On sleeping wings they sail.  
Ah, blessed vision ! blood of God ! 45  
My spirit beats her mortal bars,  
As down dark tides the glory slides,  
And star-like mingles with the stars.

When on my goodly charger borne  
Thro' dreaming towns I go, 50  
The cock crows ere the Christmas morn,  
The streets are dumb with snow.  
The tempest crackles on the leads,  
And, ringing, spins from brand and mail ;  
But o'er the dark a glory spreads, 55  
And gilds the driving hail.  
I leave the plain, I climb the height ;  
No branchy thicket shelter yields ;  
But blessed forms in whistling storms  
Fly o'er waste fens and windy fields. 60

A maiden knight — to me is given  
Such hope, I know not fear ;  
I yearn to breathe the airs of heaven  
That often meet me here.  
I muse on joy that will not cease, 65  
Pure spaces cloth'd in living beams,  
Pure lilies of eternal peace,  
Whose odors haunt my dreams ;  
And, stricken by an angel's hand,  
This mortal armor that I wear, 70  
This weight and size, this heart and eyes,  
Are touch'd, are turn'd to finest air.

The clouds are broken in the sky,  
And thro' the mountain-walls  
A rolling organ-harmony 75  
Swell up, and shakes and falls.  
Then move the trees, the copses nod,  
Wings flutter, voices hover clear :

53. *leads*, the leaden plates of the roofs.

“O just and faithful knight of God !

Ride on ! the prize is near.”

80

So pass I hostel, hall, and grange ;

By bridge and ford, by park and pale,

All-arm'd I ride, whate'er betide,

Until I find the Holy Grail.

The poem is a panorama, beginning with a picture of the actual jousts of knighthood, then proceeding with magic picture after magic picture of what happened to Galahad on his quest. These pictures are partly from the old Celtic legends of the miraculous sights that Galahad saw ; but they are mostly the product of Tennyson's imagination. Try to tell from memory the successive pictures, entering into the mysterious feeling of the poem.

---

**Plan of Summary.** — Reviewing the chapter, (1) enumerate the kinds of metre, designating them by the number of accents, and by the predominant foot. Then (2) say which poem is most noticeable for melody ; (3) which for beauty of suggested sights ; (4) which for pleasure of suggested sounds ; (5) which for pleasure of suggested activity ; (6) which for pleasure of suggested odors or tastes ; (7) which is most easily understood ; (8) which moves the reader most deeply ; (9) which shows most skill in character drawing ; (10) which has the best unity ; (11) which, your critical judgment tells you, is the best piece of work ; (12) which you like the best, without regard to its deserved rank, or its fame.

## CHAPTER V

### THE ADVENTURER

Boys do not need to be urged to read the Leather-Stocking Tales, in which the actors have to depend on their native gifts of eye and ear and limb, like that embodiment of self-reliance, Natty Bumppo. It is a sign of old age not to like a good story of pioneer life, or of shipwreck on a desert island.

Some forms of adventure are best told in verse. Rhythm is necessary in order to suggest the sense of freedom felt by a roving cow-boy. Longfellow, who was fond of travelling by imagination, usually chose verse rather than prose to express the dreamy flight his fancy took to other lands. He watches the red sand in the hour-glass, and gradually he sees, in his mind's eye, the wastes of Arabia, the caravans, the sand-storms, and even the biblical scenes that we associate with the desert. Longfellow finds that the impulse to explore the sea and the mysterious lands beyond it is a poetic impulse. His poem reminds grown men of the days when they fancied that everything beyond the horizon was strange and new, and that the very soil of foreign lands was magically different from our own. But chiefly it reminds them that the secret of the sea always remains a secret except to those who brave its dangers.

Nor are the adventurers celebrated in song less brave than those of prose. Longfellow told in simple verse the story of the old Viking who discovered the North Cape. Such a man was surely as venturesome as Jim Hawkins in Treasure Island. The parrots and savages of Crusoe's

The Cow-  
Boy, p. 198.

Sand of the  
Desert in  
an Hour-  
Glass,  
p. 200.

The Secret  
of the Sea,  
p. 202.

acquaintance are inconsiderable when compared with the creatures of the haunted isles seen by the old Irish voyagers in Tennyson's *Maeldune*. And Pathfinder's excursions through the woods or the prairies were not more wonderful than the voyage of Ulysses beyond the sunset and the baths of all the western stars.

The Voy-  
age of  
Maeldune,  
p. 203.

Tennyson's *Maeldune* is an old Irish legend of a hero who put to sea with his friends to find the slayer of his father. As they approached the murderer's island home, a wind blew them out and away into the boundless sea. They came to an island where all was silence; even the waterfall made no sound; then to one where all was shouting and uproar. They sailed on to an isle of flowers—nothing but flowers—then to one all fruits. Some of their number perished at the land of fire, and others at the magic isle under the sea. At the isle of bounty a magic hand fed all until they became slothful and quarrelsome. Then the isle of witches tried to coax their ship upon the rocks. After that they passed to the isle of the double towers, strange buildings that rocked against each other, one smooth, one sculptured. Here they insanely fell to fighting each other over the merits of the opposing towers, and half were slain. At last they came to the isle of a saint, who bade Maeldune remember that vengeance is the Lord's, and sent him back home, exhausted and awed.

Ulysses,  
p. 211.

Tennyson's *Ulysses* is in the spirit of the antique, but it represents that hero as doing something not told of in the *Odyssey*. Once restored to his native Ithaca after long wanderings, he cannot rest, but must adventure again. He calls to his friends to embark once more with him, and sitting well in order smite the sounding furrows. He will sail into the uttermost west. It may be that the gulfs will wash him down; it may be he will reach the happy isles of the dead. At all events, he is determined to strive, to



seek, to find, and not to yield. The brave Norse explorer who built and ventured in the *Fram* has given a new force to these last words by quoting them as the expression of his own ambition.

To speak of discoverers is to recall the famous finding of Livingstone. It used to be said that a redskin would make an appointment, months ahead, to be at a certain tree in a far-distant region at precisely such an hour, and would keep the appointment to the minute. But the Indian, achieving such a feat in a temperate climate, among tribes closely related to him in nature and speech, is less remarkable than young Stanley, fighting his way for months through unmapped tropical forests, amid the gravest dangers from heat, miasma, serpents, wild beasts, and wilder savages, yet reaching the hut he sought. Stanley himself has told the story with fine restraint. Every American is glad that their young countryman did not gush at the last moment, but merely said, "Dr. Livingstone, I presume."

A Meeting  
in the Heart  
of Africa,  
p. 214.

In one of his poems Mr. Kipling speaks of the "out-trail," — the path of the adventurer. The "out-trail" calls to the blood of every youth, and in one form or another it must be obeyed. It may call neither to Africa, nor China, nor the plains. It may call the country lad to that worst of wildernesses, the city. It often summons the ambitious son of poverty to school, whither he thought he never could afford to go. To start out, with no visible means of support, to get an education, is as adventurous as piracy. But, whithersoever the out-trail may call, the youth ought to leave home with a pang. A youth who is unqualifiedly glad to get away from home promises ill. Robert Louis Stevenson's ballad of a *Christmas at Sea* puts this matter in just the right light. A young sailor is telling of the trouble his ship had in putting to sea on a given Christmas Day. The winds seemed determined to drive the craft on the rocks.

It so happened that all this occurred very close to the spot where the young sailor's father lived. The boy could see the homestead easily, and imagine his parents by the fireside.

"And well I knew the talk they had, the talk that was of me,  
Of the shadow on the household and the son that went to sea ;  
And, oh, the wicked fool I seemed, in every kind of way,  
To be here and hauling frozen ropes on blessed Christmas Day.

"And they heaved a mighty breath, every soul on board but me,  
As they saw her nose again pointing handsome out to sea ;  
But all that I could think of in the darkness and the cold,  
Was just that I was leaving home, and my folks were growing old."

## THE COW-BOY

JOHN ANTROBUS

"What care I, what cares he,  
What cares the world of the life we know !  
Little they reck of the shadowless plains,  
The shelterless mesa, the sun and the rains,  
The wild, free life, as the winds that blow." 5

With his broad sombrero,  
His worn chapparejos,  
And clinking spurs,  
Like a Centaur he speeds,  
Where the wild bull feeds ; 10  
And he laughs ha, ha ! who cares, who cares !

Ruddy and brown — careless and free —  
A king in the saddle — he rides at will  
O'er the measureless range where rarely change,  
The swart gray plains so weird and strange, 15  
Treeless, and streamless, and wondrous still !

4. *mesa*, table-land. 7. *chapparejos* (*chapparayhos*), leather breeches.

With his slouch sombrero,  
His torn chapparejos,  
And clinking spurs,  
Like a Centaur he speeds 20  
Where the wild bull feeds;  
And he laughs ha, ha ! who cares, who cares !  
He of the towns, he of the East,  
Has only a vague dull thought of him ;  
In his far-off dreams the cow-boy seems 25  
A mythical thing, a thing he deems  
A Hun or a Goth, as swart and grim !  
With his stained sombrero,  
His rough chapparejos,  
And clinking spurs, 30  
Like a Centaur he speeds  
Where the wild bull feeds ;  
And he laughs ha, ha ! who cares, who cares !  
Swift and strong, and ever alert,  
Yet sometimes he rests on the dreary vast ; 35  
And his thoughts, like the thoughts of other men,  
Go back to his childhood's days again,  
And to many a loved one in the past.  
With his gay sombrero,  
His rude chapparejos, 40  
And clinking spurs,  
He rests awhile,  
With a tear and a smile,  
Then he laughs ha, ha ! who cares, who cares !  
'Tis over late at the ranchman's gate — 45  
He and his fellows, perhaps a score,  
Halt in a quarrel o'er night begun,  
With a ready blow and a random gun —  
There's a comrade dead, dead ! nothing more.

With his slouched sombrero, 50  
 His dark chapparejos,  
 And clinking spurs,  
 He dashes past  
 With face o'ercast  
 And growls in his throat — who cares, who cares ! 55

The author of this poem was also a painter, and had a picture on the same subject. Note that the refrain has four unrhymed lines. Does this irregular refrain commend itself after several readings ? If so, why ? Are there any gains in the changes in the refrain from stanza to stanza ?

## SAND OF THE DESERT IN AN HOUR-GLASS

HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW

A handful of red sand, from the hot clime  
 Of Arab deserts brought,  
 Within this glass becomes the spy of Time,  
 The minister of Thought.  
 How many weary centuries has it been 5  
 About those deserts blown !  
 How many strange vicissitudes has seen,  
 How many histories known !  
 Perhaps the camels of the Ishmaelite  
 Trampled and passed it o'er, 10  
 When into Egypt from the patriarch's sight  
 His favorite son they bore.  
 Perhaps the feet of Moses, burnt and bare,  
 Crushed it beneath their tread ;  
 Or Pharaoh's flashing wheels into the air 15  
 Scattered it as they sped ;

Or Mary, with the Christ of Nazareth  
Held close in her caress,  
Whose pilgrimage of hope and love and faith  
Illumed the wilderness ; 20

Or anchorites beneath Engaddi's palms  
Pacing the Dead Sea beach,  
And singing slow their old Armenian psalms  
In half-articulate speech ;

Or caravans, that from Bassora's gate 25  
With westward steps depart ;  
Or Mecca's pilgrims, confident of Fate,  
And resolute in heart !

These have passed over it, or may have passed !  
Now in this crystal tower 30  
Imprisoned by some curious hand at last,  
It counts the passing hour.

And as I gaze, these narrow walls expand ; —  
Before my dreamy eye  
Stretches the desert with its shifting sand, 35  
Its unimpeded sky.

And borne aloft by the sustaining blast,  
This little golden thread  
Dilates into a column high and vast,  
A form of fear and dread. 40

And onward, and across the setting sun,  
Across the boundless plain,  
The column and its broader shadow run,  
Till thought pursues in vain.

The vision vanishes ! 'These walls again  
 Shut out the lurid sun,  
 Shut out the hot, immeasurable plain ;  
 The half-hour's sand is run !

## THE SECRET OF THE SEA

HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW

Ah ! what pleasant visions haunt me  
 As I gaze upon the sea !  
 All the old romantic legends,  
 All my dreams come back to me.

Sails of silk and ropes of sendal, 5  
 Such as gleam in ancient lore ;  
 And the singing of the sailors,  
 And the answer from the shore !

Most of all, the Spanish ballad  
 Haunts me oft, and tarries long, 10  
 Of the noble Count Arnaldos  
 And the sailor's mystic song.

Like the long waves on a sea-beach,  
 Where the sand as silver shines,  
 With a soft, monotonous cadence, 15  
 Flow its unrhymed lyric lines ; —

Telling how the Count Arnaldos,  
 With his hawk upon his hand,  
 Saw a fair and stately galley,  
 Steering onward to the land ; — 20

How he heard the ancient helmsman  
 Chant a song so wild and clear,  
 That the sailing sea-bird slowly  
 Poised upon the mast to hear,

Till his soul was full of longing, 25  
 And he cried, with impulse strong, —  
 “Helmsman ! for the love of heaven,  
 Teach me, too, that wondrous song !”  
 “Wouldst thou,” — so the helmsman answered,  
 “Learn the secret of the sea? 30  
 Only those who brave its dangers  
 Comprehend its mystery !”  
 In each sail that skims the horizon,  
 In each landward-blowing breeze,  
 I behold that stately galley, 35  
 Hear those mournful melodies ;  
 Till my soul is full of longing  
 For the secret of the sea,  
 And the heart of the great ocean  
 Sends a thrilling pulse through me. 40

## THE VOYAGE OF MAELDUNE

(FOUNDED ON AN IRISH LEGEND A.D. 700)

ALFRED, LORD TENNYSON

## I

I was the chief of the race — he had stricken my father  
 dead —  
 But I gather'd my fellows together, I swore I would strike  
 off his head.  
 Each of them look'd like a king, and was noble in birth as  
 in worth,  
 And each of them boasted he sprang from the oldest race  
 upon earth. 4

1. What earlier poem in the book has the same metre ?

Each was as brave in the fight as the bravest hero of song,  
 And each of them liefer had died than have done one  
                   another a wrong.

*He* lived on an isle in the ocean — we sail'd on a Friday  
                   morn —

He that had slain my father the day before I was born.

## II

And we came to the isle in the ocean, and there on the  
                   shore was he.

But a sudden blast blew us out and away thro' a boundless  
                   sea. 10

## III

And we came to the Silent Isle that we never had touch'd  
                   at before,

Where a silent ocean always broke on a silent shore,  
 And the brooks glitter'd on in the light without sound, and  
                   the long waterfalls

Pour'd in a thunderless plunge to the base of the mountain  
                   walls,

And the poplar and cypress unshaken by storm flourish'd up  
                   beyond sight, 15

And the pine shot aloft from the crag to an unbelievable  
                   height,

And high in the heaven above it there flicker'd a songless  
                   lark,

And the cock couldn't crow, and the bull couldn't low, and  
                   the dog couldn't bark.

And round it we went, and thro' it, but never a murmur, a  
                   breath —

It was all of it fair as life, it was all of it quiet as death, 20

8-10. Why is this stanza so short? 18. Is this line longer than its  
 neighbors? Note the medial rhyme.



And we hated the beautiful Isle, for whenever we strove to  
speak  
Our voices were thinner and fainter than any flittermouse-  
shriek ;  
And the men that were mighty of tongue and could raise  
such a battle-cry  
That a hundred who heard it would rush on a thousand  
lances and die —  
O they to be dumb'd by the charm ! — so fluster'd with  
anger were they 25  
They almost fell on each other ; but after we sail'd away.

## IV

And we came to the Isle of Shouting, we landed, a score of  
wild birds  
Cried from the topmost summit with human voices and  
words ;  
Once in an hour they cried, and whenever their voices  
peal'd  
The steer fell down at the plough and the harvest died  
from the field, 30  
And the men dropt dead in the valleys and half of the cattle  
went lame,  
And the roof sank in on the hearth, and the dwelling broke  
into flame ;  
And the shouting of these wild birds ran into the hearts of  
my crew,  
Till they shouted along with the shouting and seized one  
another and slew ;  
But I drew them the one from the other ; I saw that we  
could not stay, 35  
And we left the dead to the birds and we sail'd with our  
wounded away.

## V

And we came to the Isle of Flowers: their breath met us  
out on the seas,  
For the Spring and the middle Summer sat each on the lap  
of the breeze ;  
And the red passion-flower to the cliffs, and the dark-blue  
clematis clung,  
And starr'd with a myriad blossom the long convolvulus  
hung ; 40  
And the topmost spire of the mountain was lilies in lieu of  
snow,  
And the lilies like glaciers winded down, running out below  
Thro' the fire of the tulip and poppy, the blaze of gorse, and  
the blush  
Of millions of roses that sprang without leaf or a thorn from  
the bush ;  
And the whole isle-side flashing down from the peak without  
ever a tree 45  
Swept like a torrent of gems from the sky to the blue of the  
sea ;  
And we roll'd upon capes of crocus and vaunted our kith  
and our kin,  
And we wallow'd in beds of lilies, and chanted the triumph  
of Finn,  
Till each like a golden image was pollen'd from head to feet  
And each was as dry as a cricket, with thirst in the middle-  
day heat. 50  
Blossom and blossom, and promise of blossom, but never a  
fruit !  
And we hated the Flowering Isle, as we hated the isle that  
was mute,

38. Note the accent (the correct one always) of *clematis*. 47. The one who boasts of his kin is like a promising blossom without fruit.

And we tore up the flowers by the million and flung them  
in bight and bay,  
And we left but a naked rock, and in anger we sail'd away.

## VI

And we came to the Isle of Fruits : all round from the cliffs  
and the capes, 55

Purple or amber, dangled a hundred fathom of grapes,  
And the warm melon lay like a little sun on the tawny sand,  
And the fig ran up from the beach and rioted over the land,  
And the mountain arose like a jewell'd throne thro' the  
fragrant air,

Glowing with all-color'd plums and with golden masses of  
pear, 60

And the crimson and scarlet of berries that flamed upon  
bine and vine,

But in every berry and fruit was the poisonous pleasure of wine ;  
And the peak of the mountain was apples, the hugest that  
ever were seen,

And they prest, as they grew, on each other, with hardly a  
leaflet between,

And all of them redder than rosiest health or than utterest  
shame, 65

And setting, when Even descended, the very sunset aflame ;  
And we stay'd three days, and we gorged and we madden'd,  
till every one drew

His sword on his fellow to slay him, and ever they struck  
and they slew ;

And myself, I had eaten but sparingly, and fought till I  
sunder'd the fray,

Then I bade them remember my father's death, and we  
sail'd away. 70

## VII

And we came to the Isle of Fire : we were lured by the  
light from afar,  
For the peak sent up one league of fire to the Northern  
Star ;  
Lured by the glare and the blare, but scarcely could stand  
upright,  
For the whole isle shudder'd and shook like a man in a  
mortal affright ;  
We were giddy besides with the fruits we had gorged, and  
so crazed that at last 75  
There were some leap'd into the fire ; and away we sail'd,  
and we past  
Over that undersea isle, where the water is clearer than air :  
Down we look'd : what a garden ! O bliss, what a Paradise  
there !  
Towers of a happier time, low down in a rainbow deep  
Silent palaces, quiet fields of eternal sleep ! 80  
And three of the gentlest and best of my people, whate'er  
I could say,  
Plunged head down in the sea, and the Paradise trembled  
away.

## VIII

And we came to the Bounteous Isle, where the heavens lean  
low on the land,  
And ever at dawn from the cloud glitter'd o'er us a sunbright  
hand,  
Then it open'd and dropt at the side of each man, as he rose  
from his rest, 85  
Bread enough for his need till the laborless day dipt under  
the West ;

77. Poe's *City in the Sea* and Southey's *Curse of Kehama*, § XVI, furnish interesting comparisons.

And we wander'd about it and thro' it. O never was time  
so good !  
And we sang of the triumphs of Finn, and the boast of our  
ancient blood,  
And we gazed at the wandering wave as we sat by the gurgle  
of springs,  
And we chanted the songs of the Bards and the glories of  
fairy kings ; 90  
But at length we began to be weary, to sigh, and to stretch  
and yawn,  
Till we hated the Bounteous Isle and the sunbright hand of  
the dawn,  
For there was not an enemy near, but the whole green Isle  
was our own,  
And we took to playing at ball, and we took to throwing the  
stone,  
And we took to playing at battle, but that was a perilous  
play, 95  
For the passion of battle was in us, we slew and we sail'd  
away.

## IX

And we past to the Isle of Witches and heard their musical  
cry —  
“Come to us, O come, come” in the stormy red of a sky  
Dashing the fires and the shadows of dawn on the beautiful  
shapes,  
For a wild witch naked as heaven stood on each of the  
loftiest capes, 100  
And a hundred ranged on the rock like white sea-birds in  
a row,  
And a hundred gamboll'd and pranced on the wrecks in the  
sand below,

94. Anglo-Saxon poets habitually called battle the “sword-play.”

And a hundred splash'd from the ledges, and bosom'd the  
burst of the spray,  
But I knew we should fall on each other, and hastily sail'd  
away.

## X

And we came in an evil time to the Isle of the Double  
Towers, 105  
One was of smooth-cut stone, one carved all over with  
flowers,  
But an earthquake always moved in the hollows under the  
dells,  
And they shock'd on each other and butted each other with  
clashing of bells,  
And the daws flew out of the Towers and jangled and  
wrangled in vain,  
And the clash and boom of the bells rang into the heart and  
the brain. 110  
Till the passion of battle was on us, and all took sides with  
the Towers,  
There were some for the clean-cut stone, there were more  
for the carven flowers,  
And the wrathful thunder of God peal'd over us all the day,  
For the one half slew the other, and after we sail'd away.

## XI

And we came to the Isle of a Saint who had sail'd with  
St. Brendan of yore, 115  
He had lived ever since on the Isle and his winters were  
fifteen score,  
And his voice was low as from other worlds, and his eyes  
were sweet,  
And his white hair sank to his heels and his white beard fell  
to his feet,

And he spake to me, "O Maeldune, let be this purpose of  
thine !

Remember the words of the Lord when he told us 'Ven-  
geance is mine !' 120

His fathers have slain thy fathers in war or in single strife,  
Thy fathers have slain his fathers, each taken a life for a life,  
Thy father had slain his father, how long shall the murder  
last?

Go back to the Isle of Finn and suffer the Past to be Past."  
And we kiss'd the fringe of his beard and we pray'd as we  
heard him pray, 125

And the Holy man he assoil'd us, and sadly we sail'd away.

## XII

And we came to the Isle we were blown from, and there on  
the shore was he,

The man that had slain my father. I saw him and let  
him be.

O weary was I of the travel, the trouble, the strife and  
the sin,

When I landed again, with a tithe of my men, on the Isle  
of Finn. 130

Tennyson is remarkable among poets for the number of beautiful images  
he can suggest in a line. Take the sixth stanza, for example, and read it  
several times, trying to realize all it conveys. Could any painting represent  
all that is suggested here ?

## ULYSSES

ALFRED, LORD TENNYSON

It little profits that an idle king,  
By this still hearth, among these barren crags,  
Match'd with an aged wife, I mete and dole  
Unequal laws unto a savage race,

1. What is the metre ? What previous example of it have we seen ?

That hoard, and sleep, and feed, and know not me. 5  
 I cannot rest from travel : I will drink  
 Life to the lees : all times I have enjoy'd  
 Greatly, have suffer'd greatly, both with those  
 That lov'd me, and alone ; on shore, and when  
 Thro' scudding drifts the rainy Hyades 10  
 Vex'd the dim sea. I am become a name ;  
 For always roaming with a hungry heart  
 Much have I seen and known : cities of men  
 And manners, climates, councils, governments,  
 Myself not least, but honor'd of them all ; 15  
 And drunk delight of battle with my peers,  
 Far on the ringing plains of windy Troy.  
 I am a part of all that I have met ;  
 Yet all experience is an arch wherethro'  
 Gleams that untravell'd world, whose margin fades 20  
 For ever and for ever when I move.  
 How dull it is to pause, to make an end,  
 To rust unburnish'd, not to shine in use !  
 As tho' to breathe were life. Life pil'd on life  
 Were all too little, and of one to me 25  
 Little remains : but every hour is sav'd  
 From that eternal silence, something more,  
 A bringer of new things ; and vile it were  
 For some three suns to store and hoard myself,  
 And this gray spirit yearning in desire 30  
 To follow knowledge like a sinking star,  
 Beyond the utmost bound of human thought.

This is my son, mine own Telemachus,

10. The *Hyades* are a constellation of seven stars. When they rose with the sun they were thought by the ancients to denote the approach of rain. 11. *I am become a name*, that is, have become famous. 29. *suns* here means yearly revolutions of the sun. 30. Note the compression of the phrase *gray spirit*, — transfer of *gray* from gray head to spirit. An adjective so applied is called a *transferred epithet*.



To whom I leave the sceptre and the isle —  
Well-lov'd of me, discerning to fulfil 35  
This labor, by slow prudence to make mild  
A rugged people, and thro' soft degrees  
Subdue them to the useful and the good.  
Most blameless is he, centred in the sphere  
Of common duties, decent not to fail 40  
In offices of tenderness, and pay  
Meet adoration to my household gods,  
When I am gone. He works his work, I mine.

There lies the port ; the vessel puffs her sail :  
There gloom the dark broad seas. My mariners, 45  
Souls that have toil'd, and wrought, and thought with me —  
That ever with a frolic welcome took  
The thunder and the sunshine, and oppos'd  
Free hearts, free foreheads — you and I are old ;  
Old age hath yet his honor and his toil ; 50  
Death closes all ; but something ere the end,  
Some work of noble note, may yet be done,  
Not unbecoming men that strove with Gods.  
The lights begin to twinkle from the rocks :  
The long day wanes : the slow moon climbs : the deep 55  
Moans round with many voices. Come, my friends,  
'Tis not too late to seek a newer world.  
Push off, and sitting well in order smite  
The sounding furrows ; for my purpose holds  
To sail beyond the sunset, and the baths 60  
Of all the western stars, until I die.  
It may be that the gulfs will wash us down :  
It may be we shall touch the Happy Isles,  
And see the great Achilles, whom we knew.  
Tho' much is taken, much abides ; and tho' 65

45. Note the compression of *gloom* ; a noun is made into a verb and does the work of a long phrase.

We are not now that strength which in old days  
Mov'd earth and heaven, that which we are, we are :  
One equal temper of heroic hearts,  
Made weak by time and fate, but strong in will  
To strive, to seek, to find, and not to yield. 70

This stately and inspiring poem is somewhat in the Greek spirit; it sounds like Homer, though less simple than Homer. Lines 43-70 are eminently worth learning by heart.

Is the poem lyrical, expressing a personal mood of the author, or narrative? or is it a dramatic monologue?

## A MEETING IN THE HEART OF AFRICA

HENRY MORTON STANLEY

We push on rapidly, lest the news of our coming might reach the people of Bunder Ujiji before we come in sight and are ready for them. We halt at a little brook, then ascend the long slope of a naked ridge, the very last of the myriads we have crossed. This alone prevents us 5 from seeing the lake in all its vastness. We arrive at the summit, travel across and arrive at its western rim, and — pause, reader — the port of Ujiji is below us, embowered in the palms, only five hundred yards from us! At this grand moment we do not think of the five hundred miles 10 we have marched, of the hundreds of hills that we have ascended and descended, of the many forests we have traversed, of the jungles and thickets that annoyed us, of the fervid salt plains that blistered our feet, of the hot suns that scorched us, nor the dangers and difficulties, 15 now happily surmounted. At last the sublime hour has arrived! our dreams, our hopes and anticipations, are about to be realized! Our hearts and feelings are with our eyes as we peer into the palms and try to make out in

which hut or house lives the white man with the gray beard we heard about on the Malagarazi. 20

"Unfurl the flags, and load your guns!"

"Ay Wallah, ay Wallah, bana!" respond the men, eagerly.

"One, two, three, fire!"

25

A volley from nearly fifty guns roars like a salute from a battery of artillery; we shall note its effect presently on the peaceful-looking village below.

"Now, kirangozi, hold the white man's flag up high, and let the Zanzibar flag bring up the rear. And you 30 men keep close together, and keep firing until we halt in the market-place, or before the white man's house. You have said to me often that you could smell the fish of the Tanganika. I can smell the fish of the Tanganika now. There are fish, and beer, and a long rest waiting for you. 35 March!"

Before we had gone a hundred yards our repeated volleys had the effect desired. We had awakened Ujiji to the knowledge that a caravan was coming, and the people were witnessed rushing up in hundreds to meet 40 us. The mere sight of the flags informed every one immediately that we were a caravan, but the American flag, borne aloft by the gigantic Asmani, whose face was one vast smile on this day, rather staggered them at first. However, many of the people who now approached us 45 remembered the flag. They had seen it float above the American Consulate, and from the masthead of many a ship in the harbor of Zanzibar, and they were soon heard welcoming the beautiful flag with cries of "Bindera kisungu!" — a white man's flag! "Bindera Merikani!" 50 — the American flag!

Then we were surrounded by them — by Wajiji, Wanyamwezi, Wangwana, Warundi, Waghuhha, Wamanyuema,

and Arabs — and were almost deafened with the shouts of “Yambo, yambo, bana! Yambo, bana! Yambo, bana!” To all and each of my men the welcome was given.

We were now about three hundred yards from the village of Ujiji, and the crowds are dense about me. Suddenly I hear a voice on my right say: — 60

“Good morning, sir!”

Startled at hearing this greeting in the midst of such a crowd of black people, I turn sharply around in search of the man, and see him at my side, with the blackest of faces, but animated and joyous — a man dressed in a long 65 white shirt, with a turban of American sheeting around his woolly head, and I ask: —

“Who the mischief are you?”

“I am Susi, the servant of Dr. Livingstone,” said he, smiling, and showing a gleaming row of teeth. 70

“What! Is Dr. Livingstone here?”

“Yes, sir.”

“In this village?”

“Yes, sir.”

“Are you sure?” 75

“Sure, sure, sir. Why, I leave him just now.”

“Good morning, sir,” said another voice.

“Hallo,” said I, “is this another one?”

“Yes, sir.”

“Well, what is your name?” 80

“My name is Chumah, sir.”

“What! are you Chumah, the friend of Wekotani?”

“Yes, sir.”

“And is the Doctor well?”

“Not very well, sir.” 85

“Where has he been so long?”

“In Manyuema.”

"Now, you Susi, run, and tell the Doctor I am coming."

"Yes, sir," and off he darted like a madman.

By this time we were within two hundred yards of the village, and the multitude was getting denser, and almost preventing our march. Flags and streamers were out; Arabs and Wangwana were pushing their way through the natives in order to greet us, for, according to their account, we belonged to them. But the great wonder of all was, "How did you come from Unyanyembe?"

Soon Susi came running back, and asked me my name; he had told the Doctor that I was coming, but the Doctor was too surprised to believe him, and, when the Doctor asked him my name, Susi was rather staggered.

But, during Susi's absence, the news had been conveyed to the Doctor that it was surely a white man that was coming, whose guns were firing and whose flag could be seen; and the great Arab magnates of Ujiji — Moham-med bin Sali, Sayd bin Majid, Abid bin Suliman, Moham-med bin Gharib, and others — had gathered together before the Doctor's house, and the Doctor had come out from his veranda to discuss the matter and await my arrival.

In the meantime the head of the expedition had halted, and the kirangozi was out of the ranks, holding his flag aloft, and Selim said to me: "I see the Doctor, sir. Oh, what an old man! He has got a white beard." And I — what would I not have given for a bit of friendly wilderness, where, unseen, I might vent my joy in some mad freak, such as idiotically biting my hand, turning a somersault, or slashing at trees, in order to allay those exciting feelings that were well-nigh uncontrollable. My heart beats fast, but I must not let my face betray my emotions, lest it shall detract from the dignity of a white man appearing under such extraordinary circumstances.

So I did that which I thought was most dignified. I pushed back the crowds, and, passing from the rear, walked down a living avenue of people, until I came in front of the semicircle of Arabs, in the front of which stood the white man with the gray beard. As I advanced slowly toward him I noticed he was pale, looked wearied, had a gray beard, wore a bluish cap with a faded gold band round it, had on a red-sleeved waistcoat, and a pair of gray tweed trousers. I would have run to him, only I was a coward in the presence of such a mob ; would have embraced him, only, he being an Englishman, I did not know how he would receive me ; so I did what cowardice and false pride suggested was the best thing ; walked deliberately to him, took off my hat, and said : —

“Dr. Livingstone, I presume?”

“Yes,” said he, with a kind smile, lifting his cap slightly.

I replace my hat on my head, and he puts on his cap, and we both grasp hands, and I then say aloud : —

“I thank God, Doctor, I have been permitted to see you.”

He answered : “I feel thankful that I am here to welcome you.”

I turn to the Arabs, take off my hat to them in response to the saluting of “Yambos” I receive, and the Doctor introduces them to me by name. Then, oblivious of the crowds, oblivious of the men who shared with me my dangers, we — Livingstone and I — turn our faces toward his tembe. He points to the veranda, or, rather, mud platform, under the broad overhanging eaves ; he points to his own particular seat, which I see his age and experience in Africa have suggested, namely, a straw mat with a goatskin over it, and another skin nailed against the wall to protect his back from contact with the cold mud.

I protest against taking this seat, which so much more befits him than me, but the Doctor will not yield ; I must take it.

We are seated — the Doctor and I — with our backs to the wall. The Arabs take seats on our left. More than a 160 thousand natives are in our front, filling the whole square densely, indulging their curiosity, and discussing the fact of two white men meeting at Ujiji — one just come from Manyuema, in the west, the other from Unyanyembe, in the east.

165

Conversation began. What about? I declare I have forgotten. Oh ! we simultaneously asked questions of one another, such as “How did you come here?” and “Where have you been all this long time? The world has believed you to be dead.” Yes, that was the way it 170 began ; but whatever the Doctor informed me, and that which I communicated to him, I cannot correctly report, for I found myself gazing at him, conning the wonderful man at whose side I now sat in Central Africa. Every hair of his head and beard, every wrinkle of his face, the 175 wanness of his features, and the slightly wearied look he wore, were all imparting intelligence to me ; the knowledge I craved for so much ever since I heard the words, “Take what you want, but find Livingstone.” What I saw was deeply interesting intelligence to me, and unvar- 180 nished truth. I was listening and reading at the same time. What did these dumb witnesses relate to me?

Oh, reader, had you been at my side on this day in Ujiji, how eloquently could be told the nature of this man's work ! Had you been there but to see and hear ! 185 His lips gave me the details ; lips that never lie. I cannot repeat what he said ; I was too much engrossed to take my note-book out and begin to stenograph his story. He had so much to say that he began at the end, seem-

ingly oblivious of the fact that five or six years had to be 190 accounted for. But his account was oozing out; it was growing fast into grand proportions, into a most marvelous history of deeds.

The Arabs rose up, with a delicacy I approved, as if they intuitively knew that we ought to be left to our- 195 selves. I sent Bombay with them, to give them the news they also wanted so much to know about the affairs at Unyanyembe. Sayd bin Majid was the father of the gallant young man whom I saw at Masange, and who fought with me at Zimbizo, and who soon afterward was 200 killed by Mirambo's Ruga-Ruga in the forest of Wilyankuru; and, knowing that I had been there, he earnestly desired to hear the tale of the fight; but they had all friends at Unyanyembe, and it was but natural that they should be anxious to hear of what concerned them. 205

After giving orders to Bombay and Asmani for the provisioning of the men of the expedition, I called "Kaif-Halek," or "How-do-ye-do," and introduced him to Dr. Livingstone as one of the soldiers in charge of certain goods left at Unyanyembe, whom I had com- 210 pelled to accompany me to Ujiji, that he might deliver in person to his master the letter-bag he had been intrusted with by Dr. Kirk. This was that famous letter-bag marked "Nov. 1st, 1870," which was now delivered into the Doctor's hands 365 days after it left Zanzi- 215 bar! How long, I wonder, had it remained at Unyanyembe had I not been despatched into Central Africa in search of the great traveller!

The Doctor kept the letter-bag on his knee, then presently opened it, looked at the letters contained there, and 220 read one or two of his children's letters, his face, in the meanwhile, lighting up.

He asked me to tell him the news. "No, Doctor,"



said I; "read your letters first, which I am sure you must be impatient to read." 225

"Ah," said he, "I have waited years for letters, and I have been taught patience. I can surely afford to wait a few hours longer. No, tell me the general news; how is the world getting along?"

"You probably know much already. Do you know 230 that the Suez canal is a fact—is opened, and a regular trade carried on between Europe and India through it?"

"I did not hear about the opening of it. Well, that is grand news! What else?"

Shortly I found myself enacting the part of an annual 235 periodical to him. There was no need of exaggeration—of any penny-a-line news, or of any sensationalism. The world had witnessed and experienced much the last few years. The Pacific Railroad had been completed; Grant had been elected President of the United States; Egypt 240 had been flooded with savans; the Cretan rebellion had terminated; a Spanish revolution had driven Isabella from the throne of Spain, and a regent had been appointed; General Prim was assassinated; a Castelar had electrified Europe with his advanced ideas upon the liberty of 245 worship; Prussia had humbled Denmark and annexed Schleswig-Holstein, and her armies were now around Paris; the "Man of Destiny" was a prisoner at Wilhelmshöhe; the Queen of Fashion and the Empress of the French was a fugitive; and the child born in the 250 purple had lost forever the imperial crown intended for his head; the Napoleon dynasty was extinguished by the Prussians, Bismarck and Von Moltke; and France, the proud empire, was humbled to the dust.

What could a man have exaggerated of these facts? 255 What a budget of news it was to one who had emerged from the depths of the primeval forests of Manyuema!

The reflection of the dazzling light of civilization was cast on him while Livingstone was thus listening in wonder to one of the most exciting pages of history ever repeated. 260 How the puny deeds of barbarism paled before these ! Who could tell under what new phases of uneasy life Europe was laboring even then, while we, two of her lonely children, rehearsed the tale of her late woes and glories? More worthily, perhaps, had the tongue of a 265 lyric Demodocus recounted them ; but, in the absence of the poet, the newspaper correspondent performed his part as well and truthfully as he could.

Not long after the Arabs had departed, a dishful of hot hashed-meat cakes was sent to us by Sayd bin Majid, 270 and a curried chicken was received from Mohammed bin Sali, and Moeni Kheri sent a dishful of stewed goat-meat and rice ; and thus presents of food came in succession, and as fast as they were brought we set to. I had a healthy, stubborn digestion. The exercise I had taken 275 had put it in prime order ; but Livingstone—he had been complaining that he had no appetite, that his stomach refused everything but a cup of tea now and then—he ate also, ate like a vigorous, hungry man ; and, as he vied with me in demolishing the pancakes, he kept 280 repeating, “You have brought me new life ; you have brought me new life.”

“Oh, by George !” I said ; “I have forgotten something. Hasten, Selim, and bring that bottle ; you know which. And bring me the silver goblets. I brought 285 this bottle on purpose for this event, which I hoped would come to pass, though often it seemed useless to expect it.”

Selim knew where the bottle was, and he soon returned

with it—a bottle of Sillery champagne; and, handing <sup>290</sup> the Doctor a silver goblet brimful of the exhilarating wine, and pouring a small quantity into my own, I said:—

“Dr. Livingstone, to your very good health, sir.”

“And to yours,” he responded.

And the champagne I had treasured for this happy <sup>295</sup> meeting was drunk with hearty good wishes to each other.

---

**Plan of Summary.**—Reviewing the chapter, (1) enumerate the kinds of metre, designating them by the number of accents, and by the predominant foot. Then (2) say which poem is most noticeable for melody; (3) which for beauty of suggested sights; (4) which for pleasure of suggested sounds; (5) which for pleasure of suggested activity; (6) which for pleasure of suggested odors or tastes; (7) which is most easily understood; (8) which moves the reader most deeply; (9) which shows most skill in character drawing; (10) which has the best unity; (11) which, your critical judgment tells you, is the best piece of work; (12) which you like the best,—without regard to its deserved rank, or its fame.

## CHAPTER VI

### THE HEARTH

THE instinct to get away from apron-strings is very active in strong young natures. If it were not, there would never be any men, but only grown-up infants. The instinct spends itself in adventure, pioneering, making one's way in the world, and ends by producing a self-reliant head of a new household. The young man who learns to take care of himself is he who comes to care most for his old home. A really appreciative affection for one's parents is a sign of manhood, because only the grown man can appreciate his parents. Charles Kingsley seems to suggest this fact in *The "Old, Old Song."* At all events, when Kingsley prays that the wild lad, after creeping home spent and maimed, may find one face there he loved when all was young, what face would he so probably have in mind as that of the mother?

The "Old,  
Old Song,"  
p. 229.

In war-time some parents are foolish enough to oppose a strong, healthy son in his wish to leave home and serve his country. Sons are sometimes inconsiderate enough to abandon parents who can ill spare them, and go to war for the sake of adventure and glory. If, in any case of running away to the war, the youth be killed, the satisfaction of having said good-bye is then denied the survivors. If he gets back home, in spite of false rumors that he is among the missing, the situation is somewhat better, as in Mrs. Osgood's poem.

Driving  
Home the  
Cows,  
p. 230.

But an honest good-bye and an honest return make the best case of all. The boy whose going causes honest tears and whose coming causes honest joy will not miss his wel-

come when he is the head of a house. His homecoming will be, to him and his, one of the few great pleasures that our checkered life has to give. Many a king never knows what such a poem as *There's Nae Luck about the House* means to the nation that produces it.

There's  
Nae Luck,  
p. 232.

Few subjects have appealed to the poets more than the mother's love for the child. Some of the greatest lyrics in literature picture the tragic grief of the mother over her child. Tennyson's *Rizpah* is such a masterpiece, revealing the heart of an old woman who goes by night to collect, from the ground beneath a gibbet, the bones of her luckless son. Two poems in the present chapter exhibit this passionate motherly love for the dead child. One is by Barnes of Dorsetshire, — William Barnes, who wrote in the Dorsetshire dialect. The peasant woman, "Mëary-Ann," is alone with her babe, in her house with the trees overhead. There is a storm outside. In the evening she notices that the child is not well. He grows worse with the advancing night, and she clasps him to her bosom. His struggles grow weak, and his cries die away. By a gleam of the moon she sees that his face is white as ashes. The other poem, Sydney Dobell's *How's my Boy?* is a short dramatic dialogue, almost a monologue. The mother is asking for news of her sailor boy. The sailor stares at her, and in her vexation she declares that she might as well have asked some landsman. Finally he tells her that her boy's ship has gone down. "What cares she for the ship? How is her boy?" "Every man on the ship went down." Even then she will not listen to the awful news, but cries, "What care I for the men, sailor? How's my boy — my boy?"

Mary-  
Ann's  
Child,  
p. 234.

How's my  
Boy?  
p. 236.

In Matthew Arnold's beautiful little myth, *The Forsaken Merman*, there is a mother of most unmotherly heart. The poet imagines a merman, a sea king, who has won a mortal maiden for his bride. By some magic, Margaret is enabled

The For-  
saken Mer-  
man, p. 238.

to live in the deep sea-caves. But by and by she grows anxious for her soul. It is Easter-time in the world, and she says she must go and pray in the little gray church on the shore. The merman lovingly bids her farewell for the time. Margaret departs, and does not return. Her husband and her little ones wait for her in vain. Then they steal up and gaze at her through the window of the church. He whispers to her, and the little ones call to her, but she gives them no look. They return with sad hearts to their pearly caves; but the father promises the children that they shall go again by night and gaze on the white, sleeping town.

In Arnold's *Merman* it is really the father's love that charms us. Poetry is full of that, too. From the terrible warrior Hector playing with his babe Astyanax, beautiful as a star, to the serene thinker Emerson, voicing in his *Threnody* his anguish for the star-eyed boy whom he lost, there is something about a father's love that ennobles its possessor. King David was never so kingly as in his grief over Absalom. Longfellow's *The Chamber over the Gate* is the modern version of that story, though nothing can match the pathos of the account in Samuel, translated into the short, simple words of our mother tongue.

David and  
Absalom,  
p. 235.

The Toys,  
p. 243.

Coventry Patmore wrote a poem in which a father grieves at his own harshness to his child. Mr. James Whitcomb Riley has a few heart-breaking lines on a similar subject. The parent cannot forget his cross rebuke of the baby, now dead, who came rowdying up to interrupt her busy father.

Dante tells of a Florentine, Ugolino, whose enemy starved him and his sons in a tower. When the poet met him in the lower world, Ugolino told the story of the boys' death in this hunger-tower. "I did not suffer; I grew as hard as stone. It was they who suffered." Ugolino's depth of grief and his hatred for his tormentor made him tearless. But

there may be tearless grief without hate. Symonds,<sup>1</sup> the heroic man of letters who banished himself to the higher Alps in order to live, just as Stevenson banished himself to Samoa, has a poem of how a father's love may control a father's grief. Again the story is of an Italian. The artist Luca Signorelli belonged to the great painters that made Italy in the fifteenth century a new Athens. Friends brought home the painter's son dead, a youth of seventeen. Luca did not weep. He would do the boy one last honor, and make for himself and the world one sad but enduring pleasure. He seized his brush, and began to paint the lad's picture. All day long he worked, and at eve they found him still painting with unerring handstroke. He was firm and dry-eyed.

An Episode,  
p. 244.

Neither in Ugolino's case nor in Luca's was there any chance for self-sacrifice on the part of the parent. Ugolino would have grasped eagerly any chance of starving to save his children from this fate. That was what the father of little Rhodopè did, with a willingness so quiet that his child did not suspect. Landor tells this story in prose which has never been surpassed for beauty.

The Selling  
of Rhodopè,  
p. 245.

Some such simplicity as Ugolino's, the simplicity which arises when a mourner can utter but few words, and must let these stand for all the unspoken anguish, appears in Kingsley's *The Merry Lark*. Like the other two songs by the same author (pp. 125, 229), this one is very sad, but it is perhaps more beautiful than either. Some father or mother is speaking of a great loss. The lark was merry, the hare was feeding in the field, the bells were ringing to the laughter of the child. Now the hare is killed, the lark has gone, the bells are silent, the baby lies in its cradle in the churchyard till the bells shall bring the parent there too.

The Merry  
Lark,  
p. 252.

Time cannot change the parent's love. Even the sin of

<sup>1</sup> The *y* in *Symonds* is short, like *y* in *Lynn*.

Two Sons, the child cannot destroy it. The old man in Mr. Robert  
P. 253. Buchanan's poem has two sons, but these twain are one. There is the rough, cold soldier across the water ; there is the sinless little child upon his mother's knee. The first is a hard reality ; the second is a memory.

Though filial love is a rare theme in poetry, there are  
Sohrab and some glorious exceptions. Matthew Arnold's *Sohrab and*  
Rustum, *Rustum*, one of the great poems of the century, is such an  
P. 254. exception. It is based on an old Persian legend of the love between a child and a parent, made known to each too late. In its Persian form the story of Sohrab and Rustum was the work of the poet Firdusi, who lived in the tenth century, and wrote the national epic, *The Shah-Nameh*, "Book of Kings." As Arnold tells it, modifying the ancient version somewhat, the story is this. Rustum, the mightiest of Persian warriors, made a long visit, when a young man, to the king of the Koords. The king gave Rustum his daughter in marriage. Before Rustum became a father, the old desire of wandering seized him, and he departed. He gave his wife a seal, that she might prick it on the arm of the babe she bore. The princess gave birth to a son, whom she named Sohrab. He grew in stature and strength, and became a warrior of the greatest promise. Learning the name of his father, Sohrab longed to see him, and determined at last to seek him through the world. He joined the Tartars in their war on the Persians, chiefly in the hope of finding his father. When the two armies were encamped beside the Oxus, Sohrab proposed that the enemy be challenged to send a champion to meet him in single combat ; for thus, he reasoned, he should come to the notice of the man he sought. The Persians persuaded Rustum himself to accept the challenge. Of course the latter did not know the identity of Sohrab. Likewise it happened that the mighty Rustum concealed his own name, being ashamed to



have it said he had stooped to meet any one man on equal terms. The two champions stood forth. In a long fight Sohrab proved a match for his antagonist; but when the latter finally shouted "Rustum!" as a war-cry, the youth was unmanned, and before he could recover himself was struck down. Dying, he showed to Rustum the seal upon his arm. The love he had so long borne to this unseen parent he now poured out with his blood. He crawled upon the ground to where his heart-broken father lay, and kissed him, and called him back to life.

## THE "OLD, OLD SONG"

CHARLES KINGSLEY

When all the world is young, lad,  
And all the trees are green;  
And every goose a swan, lad,  
And every lass a queen, —  
Then hey for boot and horse, lad, 5  
And round the world away;  
Young blood must have its course, lad,  
And every dog his day.

When all the world is old, lad,  
And all the trees are brown; 10  
And all the sport is stale, lad,  
And all the wheels run down, —  
Creep home, and take your place there,  
The spent and maimed among:  
God grant you find one face there 15  
You loved when all was young.

## DRIVING HOME THE COWS

KATE PUTNAM OSGOOD

Out of the clover and blue-eyed grass  
He turned them into the river lane ;  
One after another he let them pass,  
Then fastened the meadow bars again.

Under the willows, and over the hill, 5  
He patiently followed their sober pace ;  
The merry whistle for once was still,  
And something shadowed the sunny face.

Only a boy ! and his father had said  
He never could let his youngest go : 10  
Two already were lying dead  
Under the feet of the trampling foe.

But after the evening work was done,  
And the frogs were loud in the meadow-swamp,  
Over his shoulder he slung his gun 15  
And stealthily followed the footpath damp.

Across the clover and through the wheat  
With resolute heart and purpose grim,  
Though cold was the dew on his hurrying feet,  
And the blind bat's flitting startled him. 20

Thrice since then had the lanes been white,  
And the orchards sweet with apple-bloom ;  
And now, when the cows come back at night,  
The feeble father drove them home.

For news had come to the lonely farm 25  
That three were lying where two had lain ;  
And the old man's tremulous, palsied arm  
Could never lean on a son's again.

The summer day grew cool and late :  
 He went for the cows when the work was done ;      30  
 But down the lane, as he opened the gate,  
 He saw them coming, one by one —

Brindle, Ebony, Speckle, and Bess,  
Shaking their horns in the evening wind ;  
Cropping the buttercups out of the grass, — 35  
But who was it following close behind ?

Loosely swayed in the idle air  
The empty sleeve of army blue ;  
And worn and pale, from the crisping hair,  
Looked out a face that the father knew.

For gloomy prisons will sometimes yawn,  
And yield their dead unto life again :  
And the day that comes with a cloudy dawn  
In golden glory at last may wane.

The great tears sprang to their meeting eyes ;                 45  
For the heart must speak when the lips are dumb :  
And under the silent evening skies  
Together they followed the cattle home.

Name the metre according to the number of accents. Trochaic or iambic? Name the stanza and give the rhyme-scheme.

Supposing that Mrs. Osgood could have commanded such quantities of picturesque detail as appear in *The Voyage of Maeldune*, would she have done well to fill this poem with such detail? Give your reasons.

## THERE'S NAE LUCK ABOUT THE HOUSE

WILLIAM JULIUS MICKLE (?)

JEAN ADAMS (?)

And are ye sure the news is true !  
 And are ye sure he's weel ?  
 Is this a time to think of wark !  
 Mak haste, lay by your wheel ;  
 Is this the time to spin a thread, 5  
 When Colin's at the door !  
 Reach me my cloak, I'll to the quay,  
 And see him come ashore.

For there's nae luck about the house,  
 There's nae luck at a' ; 10  
 There's little pleasure in the house  
 When our gudeman's awa.

And gie to me my bigonet,  
 My bishop's satin gown ;  
 For I maun tell the baillie's wife 15  
 That Colin's come to town.  
 My 'Turkey slippers maun gae on,  
 My stockings pearly blue ;  
 It's a' to pleasure my gudeman,  
 For he's baith leal and true. 20

Rise, lass, and mak a clean fireside,  
 Put on the muckle pot,  
 Gie little Kate her button gown,  
 And Jock his Sunday coat ;

13. *bigonet*, a woman's cap. 22. *muckle*, large.

And mak their shoon as black as slaes, 25  
 Their hose as white as snaw,  
 It's a' to please my ain gudeman,  
 For he's been long awa.

There's twa fat hens upo' the bank  
 Been fed this month and mair, 30  
 Mak haste and thraw their necks about,  
 That Colin weel may fare ;  
 And mak the table neat and clean,  
 Gar ilka thing look braw,  
 For wha can tell how Colin far'd 35  
 When he was far awa ?

Sae true his heart, sae smooth his speech,  
 His breath like caller air,  
 His very foot has music in't  
 As he comes up the stair ! 40  
 And will I see his face again,  
 And will I hear him speak ?  
 I'm downright dizzy wi' the thought,  
 In troth I'm like to greet.

If Colin's weel, and weel content, 45  
 I hae nae mair to crave :  
 And gin I live to keep him sae,  
 I'm blest aboon the lave.  
 And will I see his face again,  
 And will I hear him speak ? 50  
 I'm downright dizzy wi' the thought,  
 In troth I'm like to greet.

25. *slaes*, sloes. 34. Make everything look neat. 38. *caller*, sweet, fresh.  
 41. The Scotch, like the Americans, are weak in their knowledge of *shall*  
 and *will*. 44. *greet*, cry. 47. *gin*, if. 48. *aboon the lave*, above the rest.

For there's nae luck about the house,  
 There's nae luck at a' ;  
 There's little pleasure in the house 55  
 When our gudeman's awa.

Is this poem purely narrative or purely lyrical, or a mixture of both tones ? The familiar Scotch music to which it is set is excellent.

### MARY-ANN'S CHILD

WILLIAM BARNES

Mary-Ann was alone with her baby in arms,  
 In her house with the trees overhead,  
 For her husband was out in the night and the storms,  
 In his business a-toiling for bread ;  
 And she, as the wind in the elm-heads did roar, 5  
 Did grieve to think he was all night out of door.

And her kinsfolk and neighbors did say of her child  
 (Under the lofty elm-tree),  
 That a prettier never did babble and smile  
 Up a-top of a proud mother's knee ; 10  
 And his mother did toss him, and kiss him, and call  
 Him her darling, and life, and her hope and her all.

But she found in the evening the child was not well  
 (Under the gloomy elm-tree),  
 And she felt she could give all the world for to tell 15  
 Of a truth what his ailing could be ;  
 And she thought on him last in her prayers at night,  
 And she look'd at him last as she put out the light.

And she found him grow worse in the dead of the night  
 (Under the gloomy elm-tree), 20  
 And she press'd him against her warm bosom so tight,  
 And she rock'd him so sorrowfully ;  
 And there, in his anguish, a-nestling he lay,  
 Till his struggles grew weak, and his cries died away.

And the moon was a-shining down into the place 25  
 (Under the gloomy elm-tree),  
 And his mother could see that his lips and his face  
 Were as white as clean ashes could be ;  
 And her tongue was a-tied, and her still heart did swell  
 Till her senses came back with the first tear that fell. 30

Never more can she feel his warm face in her breast  
 (Under the leafy elm-tree),  
 For his eyes are a-shut, and his hands are at rest,  
 And he's now from his pain a-set free ;  
 For his soul we do know is to heaven a-fled, 35  
 Where no pain is a-known, and no tears are a-shed.

Is the metre anapestic or dactylic? What is the rhyme-scheme?

Is the poem eminently simple in diction, or is it elaborate? Is elaborate diction natural to the expression of deep grief? Is the poem chiefly lyrical, or chiefly narrative?

## DAVID AND ABSALOM

2 Samuel xviii.

And David sat between the two gates : and the watch-  
 man said, Methinketh the running of the foremost is like  
 the running of Ahimaaz the son of Zadok. And the king  
 said, He is a good man, and cometh with good tidings.  
 And Ahimaaz called, and said unto the king, All is well. 5  
 And he fell down to the earth upon his face before the

king, and said, Blessed be the Lord thy God, which hath delivered up the men that lifted up their hand against my lord the king. And the king said, Is the young man Absalom safe? And Ahimaaz answered, When Joab sent 10 the king's servant, and me thy servant, I saw a great tumult, but I knew not what it was. And the king said unto him, Turn aside, and stand here. And he turned aside, and stood still. And, behold, Cushie came; and Cushie said, Tidings, my lord the king: for the Lord hath 15 avenged thee this day of all them that rose up against thee. And the king said unto Cushie, Is the young man Absalom safe? And Cushie answered, The enemies of my lord the king, and all that rise against thee to do thee hurt, be as that young man is. And the king was much 20 moved, and went up to the chamber over the gate, and wept: and as he went, thus he said, O my son Absalom, my son, my son Absalom! would God I had died for thee, O Absalom, my son, my son.

From your knowledge of rhetoric, say whether the sentences are loose or periodic. Are periodic sentences natural to the expression of deep grief? Note the great number of initial *And*s; do they lend simplicity or complexity to the tone of the narrative?

## HOW'S MY BOY?

SYDNEY DOBELL

"Ho, Sailor of the sea!  
 How's my boy — my boy?"  
 "What's your boy's name, good wife,  
 And in what good ship sail'd he?"  
 "My boy John —  
 He that went to sea —  
 What care I for the ship, sailor?  
 My boy's my boy to me.



“You come back from sea,  
And not know my John? 10  
I might as well have ask’d some landsman  
Yonder down in the town.  
There’s not an ass in all the parish  
But he knows my John.

“How’s my boy — my boy? 15  
And unless you let me know  
I’ll swear you are no sailor,  
Blue jacket or no,  
Brass buttons or no, sailor,  
Anchor and crown or no! 20  
Sure his ship was the *Jolly Briton*” —  
“Speak low, woman, speak low!”  
“And why should I speak low, sailor,  
About my own boy John?  
If I was loud as I am proud 25  
I’d sing him over the town!  
Why should I speak low, sailor?”  
“That good ship went down.”

“How’s my boy — my boy?  
What care I for the ship, sailor? 30  
I was never aboard her.  
Be she afloat or be she aground,  
Sinking or swimming, I’ll be bound,  
Her owners can afford her!  
I say, how’s my John?” 35  
“Every man on board went down,  
Every man aboard her.”  
“How’s my boy — my boy?  
What care I for the men, sailor?

I'm not their mother —  
 How's my boy — my boy?  
 Tell me of him and no other!  
 How's my boy — my boy?"

40

Is there any excuse for the irregular metre of this poem? Is the poem chiefly lyrical or chiefly narrative?

## THE FORSAKEN MERMAN

MATTHEW ARNOLD

Come, dear children, let us away;  
 Down and away below!  
 Now my brothers call from the bay,  
 Now the great winds shoreward blow,  
 Now the salt tides seaward flow; 5  
 Now the wild white horses play,  
 Champ and chafe and toss in the spray.  
 Children dear, let us away!  
 This way, this way!  
 Call her once before you go — 10  
 Call once yet!  
 In a voice that she will know:  
 "Margaret! Margaret!"  
 Children's voices should be dear  
 (Call once more) to a mother's ear; 15  
 Children's voices, wild with pain —  
 Surely she will come again!  
 Call her once and come away;  
 This way, this way!  
 "Mother dear, we cannot stay! 20  
 The wild white horses foam and fret."  
 Margaret! Margaret!

Come, dear children, come away down;  
Call no more!

One last look at the white-wall'd town, 25  
And the little gray church on the windy shore;  
Then come down!

She will not come though you call all day;  
Come away, come away!

Children dear, was it yesterday 30  
We heard the sweet bells over the bay?

In the caverns where we lay,  
Through the surf and through the swell,  
The far-off sound of a silver bell?  
Sand-strewn caverns, cool and deep, 35  
Where the winds are all asleep;

Where the spent lights quiver and gleam,  
Where the salt weed sways in the stream,  
Where the sea-beasts, ranged all round,  
Feed in the ooze of their pasture-ground; 40

Where the sea-snakes coil and twine,  
Dry their mail and bask in the brine;  
Where great whales come sailing by,  
Sail and sail, with unshut eye,  
Round the world for ever and aye? 45

When did music come this way?  
Children dear, was it yesterday?

Children dear, was it yesterday  
(Call yet once) that she went away?  
Once she sate with you and me, 50

On a red gold throne in the heart of the sea,  
And the youngest sate on her knee.  
She comb'd its bright hair, and she tended it well,  
When down swung the sound of a far-off bell.

She sigh'd, she look'd up through the clear green sea; 55  
She said: "I must go, for my kinsfolk pray  
In the little gray church on the shore to-day.  
'Twill be Easter-time in the world — ah me!  
And I lose my poor soul, Merman! here with thee."  
I said: "Go up, dear heart, through the waves; 60  
Say thy prayer, and come back to the kind sea-caves!"  
She smiled, she went up through the surf in the bay.  
Children dear, was it yesterday?

Children dear, were we long alone?  
"The sea grows stormy, the little ones moan; 65  
Long prayers," I said, "in the world they say;  
Come!" I said; and we rose through the surf in the bay.  
We went up the beach, by the sandy down  
Where the sea-stocks bloom, to the white-wall'd town;  
Through the narrow paved streets, where all was still, 70  
To the little gray church on the windy hill.  
From the church came a murmur of folk at their prayers,  
But we stood without in the cold blowing airs.  
We climb'd on the graves, on the stones worn with rains,  
And we gazed up the aisle through the small leaded panes.  
She sate by the pillar; we saw her clear: 76  
"Margaret, hist! come quick, we are here!  
Dear heart," I said, "we are long alone;  
The sea grows stormy, the little ones moan."  
But, ah, she gave me never a look, 80  
For her eyes were seal'd to the holy book!  
Loud prays the priest; shut stands the door.  
Come away, children, call no more!  
Come away, come down, call no more!

Down, down, down! 85  
Down to the depths of the sea!

She sits at her wheel in the humming town,  
Singing most joyfully.  
Hark what she sings: "O joy, O joy,  
For the humming street, and the child with its toy! 90  
For the priest, and the bell, and the holy well;  
For the wheel where I spun,  
And the blessed light of the sun!"  
And so she sings her fill,  
Singing most joyfully, 95  
Till the spindle drops from her hand,  
And the whizzing wheel stands still.  
She steals to the window, and looks at the sand,  
And over the sand at the sea;  
And her eyes are set in a stare; 100  
And anon there breaks a sigh,  
And anon there drops a tear,  
From a sorrow-clouded eye,  
And a heart sorrow-laden,  
A long, long sigh; 105  
For the cold strange eyes of a little Mermaiden  
And the gleam of her golden hair.

Come away, away, children;  
Come children, come down!  
The hoarse wind blows coldly; 110  
Lights shine in the town.  
She will start from her slumber  
When gusts shake the door;  
She will hear the winds howling,  
Will hear the waves roar. 115  
We shall see, while above us  
The waves roar and whirl,  
A ceiling of amber,  
A pavement of pearl.

Singing: "Here came a mortal,  
But faithless was she!  
And alone dwell forever  
The kings of the sea." 120

But, children, at midnight,  
When soft the winds blow, 125  
When clear falls the moonlight,  
When spring-tides are low;  
When sweet airs come seaward  
From heaths starr'd with broom,  
And high rocks throw mildly 130  
On the blanch'd sands a gloom;  
Up the still, glistening beaches,  
Up the creeks we will hie,  
Over banks of bright seaweed  
The ebb-tide leaves dry. 135  
We will gaze, from the sand-hills,  
At the white, sleeping town;  
At the church on the hill-side —  
And then come back down.  
Singing: "There dwells a loved one, 140  
But cruel is she!  
She left lonely forever  
The kings of the sea."

This poem must not be read hastily when read aloud; let the voice linger a little after each short line, and what seems like awkward irregularity will prove a true rhythm, pleasantly varied.

Is the poem mostly narrative or mostly lyrical? Which of these words might be applied to the merman: gentle, melancholy, pathetic, treacherous, true? How does Arnold succeed in making the depths of the sea attractive? Can you remember stories in which the same regions were rendered very unlovely? What physical traits of the merman and his children are mentioned? Is there anything in Arnold's conception of the merman different from a human being, except the ability to breathe in water?

## THE TOYS

COVENTRY PATMORE

My little son, who look'd from thoughtful eyes  
And mov'd and spoke in quiet grown-up wise,  
Having my law the seventh time disobey'd,  
I struck him, and dismiss'd  
With hard words and unkiss'd, 5  
His Mother, who was patient, being dead.  
Then, fearing lest his grief should hinder sleep,  
I visited his bed,  
But found him slumbering deep,  
With darken'd eyelids, and their lashes yet 10  
From his late sobbing wet.  
And I, with moan,  
Kissing away his tears, left others of my own;  
For, on a table drawn beside his head,  
He had put, within his reach, 15  
A box of counters and a red-vein'd stone,  
A piece of glass abraded by the beach,  
And six or seven shells,  
A bottle with bluebells  
And two French copper coins, ranged there with careful  
art, 20  
To comfort his sad heart.  
So when that night I pray'd  
To God, I wept, and said:  
Ah, when at last we lie with tranced breath,  
Not vexing Thee in death, 25  
And Thou rememberest of what toys  
We made our joys,

How weakly understood  
 Thy great commanded good,  
 Then, fatherly not less 30  
 Than I whom Thou hast moulded from the clay,  
 Thou'lt leave Thy wrath, and say,  
 "I will be sorry for their childishness."

## AN EPISODE

JOHN ADDINGTON SYMONDS

Vasari tells that Luca Signorelli,  
 The morning star of Michael Angelo,  
 Had but one son, a youth of seventeen summers,  
 Who died. That day the master at his easel  
 Wielded the liberal brush wherewith he painted 5  
 At Orvieto, on the Duomo's walls,  
 Stern forms of Death and Heaven and Hell and Judgment.  
 Then came they to him, and cried: "Thy son is dead,  
 Slain in a duel; but the bloom of life  
 Yet lingers round red lips and downy cheek." 10  
 Luca spoke not, but listen'd. Next they bore  
 His dead son to the silent painting-room,  
 And left on tiptoe son and sire alone.  
 Still Luca spoke and groan'd not; but he rais'd  
 The wonderful dead youth, and smooth'd his hair, 15  
 Wash'd his red wounds, and laid him on a bed,  
 Naked and beautiful, where rosy curtains  
 Shed a soft glimmer of uncertain splendor  
 Lifelike upon the marble limbs below.

2. That is, the herald of Michael Angelo; Luca preceded Angelo, and as an artist was like him in many ways. 6. *Duomo* means cathedral; the German word is *Dom*; our English *dome* is the same word, with a changed meaning.



Then Luca seiz'd his palette : hour by hour 20  
 Silence was in the room ; none durst approach :  
 Morn wore to noon, and noon to eve, when shyly  
 A little maid peep'd in, and saw the painter  
 Painting his dead son with unerring handstroke,  
 Firm and dry-ey'd before the lordly canvas. 25

What is the metre? What previous examples of it?

## THE SELLING OF RHODOPÈ

WALTER SAVAGE LANDOR

*Rhodopè.* Never shall I forget the morning when my father, sitting in the coolest part of the house, exchanged his last measure of grain for a chlamys of scarlet cloth fringed with silver. He watched the merchant out of the door, and then looked wistfully into the corn chest. 5  
 I, who thought there was something worth seeing, looked in also, and finding it empty, expressed my disappointment, not thinking, however, about the corn. A faint and transient smile came over his countenance at the sight of mine. He unfolded the chlamys, stretched it 10  
 out with both hands before me, and then cast it over my shoulders. I looked down on the glittering fringe and screamed with joy. He then went out; and I know not what flowers he gathered, but he gathered many; and some he placed in my bosom, and some in my hair. 15  
 But I told him with captious pride, first that I could arrange them better, and again that I would have only the white. However, when he had selected all the white, and I had placed a few of them according to my

3. *chlamys* (a kind of cloak) is pronounced *clamis*.

fancy, I told him (rising in my slipper) he might crown 20  
me with the remainder. The splendor of my apparel  
gave me a sensation of authority. Soon as the flowers  
had taken their station on my head, I expressed a dig-  
nified satisfaction at the taste displayed by my father,  
just as if I could have seen how they appeared! But he 25  
knew that there was at least as much pleasure as pride  
in it, and perhaps we divided the latter (alas! not both)  
pretty equally. He now took me into the market place,  
where a concourse of people was waiting for the purchase  
of slaves. Merchants came and looked at me; some 30  
commending, others disparaging; but all agreeing that I  
was slender and delicate, that I could not live long, and  
that I should give much trouble. Many would have  
bought the chlamys, but there was something less salable  
in the child and flowers. 35

*Æsop.* Had thy features been coarse, and thy voice  
rustic, they would all have patted thy cheeks and found  
no fault in thee.

*Rhod.* As it was, every one had bought exactly such  
another in time past, and been a loser by it. At these 40  
speeches I perceived the flowers tremble slightly on my  
bosom, from my father's agitation. Although he scoffed  
at them, knowing my healthiness, he was troubled inter-  
nally, and said many short prayers, not very unlike  
imprecations, turning his head aside. Proud was I, 45  
prouder than ever, when at last several talents were  
offered for me, and by the very man who, in the begin-  
ning, had undervalued me the most, and prophesied the  
worst of me. My father scowled at him and refused the  
money. I thought he was playing a game, and began to 50  
wonder what it could be, since I had never seen it  
played before. Then I fancied it might be some cele-  
bration because plenty had returned to the city, inso-

much that my father had bartered the last of the corn he hoarded. I grew more and more delighted at the sport. But soon there advanced an elderly man, who said gravely: "Thou hast stolen this child: her vesture alone is worth above a hundred drachmas. Carry her home again to her parents, and do it directly, or Nemesis and the Eumenides will overtake thee." Knowing the estimation in which my father had always been holden by his fellow-citizens, I laughed again, and pinched his ear. He, although naturally choleric, burst forth into no resentment at these reproaches, but said calmly, "I think I know thee by name, O guest! Surely thou art Xanthus the Samian. Deliver this child from famine."

Again I laughed aloud and heartily; and thinking it was now my part of the game, I held out both my arms and protruded my whole body towards the stranger. He would not receive me from my father's neck, but he asked me with benignity and solicitude if I was hungry; at which I laughed again, and more than ever; for it was early in the morning, soon after the first meal, and my father had nourished me most carefully and plentifully in all the days of the famine. But Xanthus, waiting for no answer, took out of a sack, which one of his slaves carried at his side, a cake of wheaten bread and a piece of honeycomb, and gave them to me. I held the honeycomb to my father's mouth, thinking it the most of a dainty. He dashed it to the ground; but seizing the bread, he began to devour it ferociously. This, also, I thought was in play; and I clapped my hands at his distortions. But Xanthus looked on him like one

59. *Nemesis* was the Greek name for the avenging fate that follows sin. The *Eumenides* were the Furies — goddesses whose duty was to hunt down criminals.

afraid, and smote the cake from him, crying aloud, 85  
"Name the price." My father now placed me in his  
arms, naming a price much below what the other had  
offered, saying, "The gods are ever with thee, O Xan-  
thus! therefore to thee do I consign my child." But  
while Xanthus was counting out the silver, my father 90  
seized the cake again, which the slave had taken up and  
was about to replace in the wallet. His hunger was  
exasperated by the taste and the delay. Suddenly there  
arose much tumult. Turning round in the old woman's  
bosom who had received me from Xanthus, I saw my 95  
beloved father struggling on the ground, livid and  
speechless. The more violent my cries, the more rap-  
idly they hurried me away; and many were soon between  
us. Little was I suspicious that he had suffered the  
pangs of famine long before: alas! and he had suffered 100  
them for me. Do I weep while I am telling you how  
they ended? I could not have closed his eyes, I was too  
young; but I might have received his last breath, the  
only comfort of an orphan's bosom. Do you now think  
him blamable, O Æsop? 105

*Æs.* It was sublime humanity: it was forbearance  
and self-denial which even the immortal gods have never  
shown us. He could endure to perish by those torments  
which alone are both acute and slow; he could number  
the steps of death and miss not one; but he could never 110  
see thy tears, nor let thee see his. O weakness above  
all fortitude! Glory to the man who rather bears a grief  
corroding his breast, than permits it to prowl beyond,  
and to prey on the tender and compassionate! Women  
commiserate the brave, and men the beautiful. The 115  
dominion of pity has usually this extent, no wider.  
Thy father was exposed to the obloquy not only of the  
malicious, but also of the ignorant and thoughtless, who

condemn in the unfortunate what they applaud in the prosperous. There is no shame in poverty or in slavery, <sup>120</sup> if we neither make ourselves poor by our improvidence nor slaves by our venality. The lowest and the highest of the human race are sold: most of the intermediate are also slaves, but slaves who bring no money into the market. 125

*Rhod.* Surely the great and powerful are never to be purchased, are they?

*Æs.* It may be a defect in my vision, but I cannot see greatness on the earth. What they tell me is great and aspiring, to me seems little and crawling. Let me <sup>130</sup> meet thy question with another. What monarch gives his daughter for nothing? Either he receives stone walls and unwilling cities in return, or he barter her for a parcel of spears and horses and horsemen, waving away from his declining and helpless age young joyous <sup>135</sup> life, and trampling down the freshest and sweetest memories. Midas, in the height of prosperity, would have given his daughter to Sycaon, rather than to the gentlest, the most virtuous, the most intelligent of his subjects. Thy father threw wealth aside, and, placing <sup>140</sup> thee under the protection of virtue, rose up from the house of famine to partake in the festivals of the gods. Release my neck, O Rhodopè! for I have other questions to ask of thee about him.

*Rhod.* To hear thee converse on him in such a <sup>145</sup> manner I can do even that.

*Æs.* Before the day of separation was he never sorrowful? Did he never by tears or silence reveal the secret of his soul?

*Rhod.* I was too infantine to perceive or imagine his <sup>150</sup> intention. The night before I became the slave of Xanthus, he sat on the edge of my bed. I pretended

to be asleep: he moved away silently and softly. I saw him collect in the hollow of his hand the crumbs I had wasted on the floor, and then eat them, and then look <sup>155</sup> if any were remaining. I thought he did so out of fondness for me, remembering that, even before the famine, he had often swept up off the table the bread I had broken, and had made me put it between his lips. I would not dissemble very long, but said:— <sup>160</sup>

“Come, now you have wakened me, you must sing me asleep again, as you did when I was little.”

He smiled faintly at this, and after some delay, when he had walked up and down the chamber, thus began:—

“I will sing to thee one song more, my wakeful <sup>165</sup> Rhodopè! my chirping bird! over whom is no mother’s wing! That it may lull thee asleep. I will celebrate no longer, as in the days of wine and plenteousness, the glory of Mars, guiding in their invisibly rapid onset the dappled steeds of Rhæsus. What hast thou to do, <sup>170</sup> my little one, with arrows tired of clustering in the quiver? How much quieter is thy pallet than the tents which whitened the plain of Simois! What knowest thou about the river Eurotas? What knowest thou about its ancient palace, once trodden by the assembled <sup>175</sup> gods, and then polluted by the Phrygians? What knowest thou of perfidious men or of sanguinary deeds?

“Pardon me, O goddess who presidest in Cythera! I am not irreverent to thee, but ever grateful. May she upon whose brow I laid my hand praise and bless thee <sup>180</sup> for evermore.

“Ah yes! continue to hold up above the coverlet those fresh and rosy palms clasped together; her benefits have

<sup>170.</sup> *Rhæsus* was a hero, mentioned in Homer’s *Iliad*, who was famous for his steeds, the gift of a god. <sup>178.</sup> Mount *Cythera*, the favorite abode of Venus.

descended on thy beauteous head, my child. The fates also have sung beyond thy hearing, of pleasanter scenes 185 than the snow-fed Hebrus; of more than dim grottoes and sky-bright waters. Even now a low murmur swells upward to my ear; and not from the spindle comes the sound, but from those who sing slowly over it, bending all three their tremulous heads together. I wish thou 190 could'st hear it; for seldom are their voices so sweet. Thy pillow intercepts the song perhaps, lie down again, lie down, my Rhodopè — I will repeat what they are saying: —

“Happier shalt thou be, nor less glorious than even 195 she, the truly beloved, for whose return to the distaff and the lyre, the portals of Tænarus flew open. In the woody dells of Ismarus, and when she bathed among the swans of Strymon, the nymphs called her Eurydice. Thou shalt behold that fairest and that fondest one here- 200 after. But first thou must go unto the land of the lotos, where famine never cometh, and where alone the works of man are immortal.’ O my child! the undeceiving fates have uttered this. Other powers have visited me, and have strengthened my heart with dreams and visions. 205 We shall meet again, my Rhodopè, in shady groves and verdant meadows, and we shall sit by the side of those who loved us.”

He was rising: I threw my arms about his neck, and before I would let him go, I made him promise to place 210 me, not by the side, but between them; for I thought of her who had left us. At that time there were but two, O Æsop! You ponder; you are about to reprove my assurance in having thus repeated my own praises.

188. The *spindle* is that of the fates, the goddesses who spin the thread of life and cut it.

I would have omitted some of the words, only that it<sup>215</sup> might have disturbed the measure and cadences, and have put me out. They are the very words my dearest father sang; and they are the last. Yet, shame upon me! the nurse (the same who stood listening near, who attended me into this country) could remember them<sup>220</sup> more perfectly; it is from her I have learned them since; she often sings them, even by herself.

*Æs.* So shall others. There is much both in them and in thee to render them memorable. . . . The dullest of mortals, seeing and hearing thee, would never<sup>225</sup> misinterpret the prophecy of the fates. If, turning back, I could overpass the vale of years, and could stand on the mountain top, and could look again far before me at the bright ascending morn, we could enjoy the prospect together; we would walk along the summit<sup>230</sup> hand in hand, O Rhodopè! and we would only sigh at last when we found ourselves below with others.

This exquisite prose will bear the closest reading. Note its carefully chosen poetic words, and its stately sentence-structure.

## THE MERRY LARK

CHARLES KINGSLEY

The merry, merry lark was up and singing,  
 And the hare was out and feeding on the lea,  
 And the merry, merry bells below were ringing,  
 When my child's laugh rang through me. 4  
 Now the hare is snared and dead beside the snowyard,  
 And the lark beside the dreary winter sea,  
 And my baby in his cradle in the churchyard  
 Waiteth there until the bells bring me.



TWO SONS<sup>1</sup>

ROBERT BUCHANAN

I have two sons, wife —  
Two, and yet the same;  
One his wild way runs, wife,  
Bringing us to shame.

The one is bearded, sunburnt, grim, and fights across the  
sea, 5  
The other is a little child who sits upon your knee.

One is fierce and cold, wife,  
As the wayward deep;  
Him no arms could hold, wife,  
Him no breast could keep. 10  
He has tried our hearts for many a year, not broken them;  
for he  
Is still the sinless little one that sits upon your knee.

One may fall in fight, wife —  
Is he not our son?  
Pray with all your might, wife, 15  
For the wayward one;  
Pray for the dark, rough soldier, who fights across the sea,  
Because you love the little shade who smiles upon your  
knee.

One across the foam, wife,  
As I speak may fall; 20  
But this one at home, wife,  
Cannot die at all.  
They both are only one; and how thankful should we be,  
We cannot lose the darling son who sits upon your knee!

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted by permission of Little, Brown, & Co.

## SOHRAB AND RUSTUM

## AN EPISODE

MATTHEW ARNOLD

And the first gray of morning filled the east,  
 And the fog rose out of the Oxus stream.  
 But all the Tartar camp along the stream  
 Was hushed, and still the men were plunged in sleep;  
 Sohrab alone, he slept not; all night long 5  
 He had lain wakeful, tossing on his bed;  
 But when the gray dawn stole into his tent,  
 He rose, and clad himself, and girt his sword,  
 And took his horseman's cloak, and left his tent,  
 And went abroad into the cold wet fog, 10  
 Through the dim camp to Peran-Wisa's tent.

Through the black Tartar tents he passed, which stood  
 Clustering like beehives on the low flat strand  
 Of Oxus, where the summer floods o'erflow  
 When the sun melts the snows in high Pamere; 15  
 Through the black tents he passed, o'er that low strand,  
 And to a hillock came, a little back  
 From the stream's brink — the spot where first a boat,  
 Crossing the stream in summer, scrapes the land.  
 The men of former times had crowned the top 20  
 With a clay fort; but that was fall'n, and now  
 The Tartars built there Peran-Wisa's tent,  
 A dome of laths, and o'er it felts were spread.  
 And Sohrab came there, and went in, and stood  
 Upon the thick piled carpets in the tent, 25  
 And found the old man sleeping on his bed

Of rugs and felts, and near him lay his arms.  
And Peran-Wisa heard him, though the step  
Was dulled; for he slept light, an old man's sleep;  
And he rose quickly on one arm, and said: —

30

“Who art thou? for it is not yet clear dawn.  
Speak! is there news, or any night alarm?”

But Sohrab came to the bedside, and said:  
“Thou know'st me, Peran-Wisa! it is I.

The sun is not yet risen, and the foe  
Sleep; but I sleep not; all night long I lie  
Tossing and wakeful, and I come to thee.

35

For so did King Afrasiab bid me seek  
Thy counsel, and to heed thee as thy son,  
In Samarcand, before the army marched;  
And I will tell thee what my heart desires.

40

Thou know'st if, since from Ader-baijan first  
I came among the Tartars and bore arms,  
I have still served Afrasiab well, and shown,  
At my boy's years, the courage of a man.

45

This too thou know'st, that while I still bear on  
The conquering Tartar ensigns through the world,  
And beat the Persians back on every field,  
I seek one man, one man, and one alone —

Rustum, my father; who I hoped should greet,  
Should one day greet, upon some well-fought field,  
His not unworthy, not inglorious son.

50

So I long hoped, but him I never find.

Come then, hear now, and grant me what I ask.

Let the two armies rest to-day; but I  
Will challenge forth the bravest Persian lords

55

To meet me, man to man; if I prevail,  
Rustum will surely hear it; if I fall —  
Old man, the dead need no one, claim no kin.

Dim is the rumor of a common fight, 60  
Where host meet host, and many names are sunk;  
But of a single combat fame speaks clear."

He spoke; and Peran-Wisa took the hand  
Of the young man in his, and sighed, and said:

"O Sohrab, an unquiet heart is thine! 65

Canst thou not rest among the Tartar chiefs,  
And share the battle's common chance with us  
Who love thee, but must press forever first,  
In single fight incurring single risk,  
To find a father thou hast never seen? 70

That were far best, my son, to stay with us  
Unmurmuring; in our tents, while it is war,  
And when 'tis truce, then in Afrasiab's towns.  
But, if this one desire indeed rules all,  
To seek out Rustum — seek him not through fight! 75  
Seek him in peace, and carry to his arms,  
O Sohrab, carry an unwounded son!

But far hence seek him; for he is not here.  
For now it is not as when I was young,  
When Rustum was in front of every fray; 80  
But now he keeps apart, and sits at home,  
In Seistan, with Zal, his father old.

Whether that his own mighty strength at last  
Feels the abhorred approaches of old age,  
Or in some quarrel with the Persian King. 85

There go! — thou wilt not? Yet my heart forebodes  
Danger or death awaits thee on this field.

Fain would I know thee safe and well, though lost  
To us; fain therefore send thee hence, in peace  
To seek thy father, not seek single fights 90

In vain; — but who can keep the lion's cub  
From ravening, and who govern Rustum's son?  
Go, I will grant thee what thy heart desires."

So said he, and dropped Sohrab's hand, and left  
 His bed, and the warm rugs whereon he lay; 95  
 And o'er his chilly limbs his woollen coat  
 He passed, and tied his sandals on his feet,  
 And threw a white cloak round him, and he took  
 In his right hand a ruler's staff, no sword;  
 And on his head he set his sheepskin cap, 100  
 Black, glossy, curled, the fleece of Kara-Kul;  
 And raised the curtain of his tent, and called  
 His herald to his side, and went abroad.

The sun by this had risen, and cleared the fog  
 From the broad Oxus and the glittering sands. 105  
 And from their tents the Tartar horsemen filed  
 Into the open plain; so Haman bade —  
 Haman, who next to Peran-Wisa ruled  
 The host, and still was in his lusty prime.  
 From their black tents, long files of horse, they streamed; 110  
 As when some gray November morn the files,  
 In marching order spread, of long-necked cranes  
 Stream over Casbin and the southern slopes  
 Of Elburz, from the Aralian estuaries,  
 Or some froze Caspian reed-bed, southward bound 115  
 For the warm Persian seaboard — so they streamed.  
 The Tartars of the Oxus, the King's guard,  
 First, with black sheepskin caps and with long spears;

94-103. This is in imitation of Homer. 111-116. This is what is called an Homeric simile. The mark of it is the poet's drifting away from the exact point of the comparison to other details where the comparison does not hold. The horses were in files, like cranes; but the horses were not moving over Casbin, etc., to the Persian seaboard. 115. *froze* means frozen. To emphasize a description of cold, Milton uses the phrase "burned frore." 116-135. This enumeration is in imitation of Homer. Poetic enumeration had much interest to the old Greek audiences, whose tribes and ancestors were included. It has some interest for modern readers, giving a notion of vast numbers, and many incidental touches of picturesqueness.

Large men, large steeds; who from Bokhara come  
And Khiva, and ferment the milk of mares. 120  
Next, the more temperate Toorkmuns of the south,  
The Tukas, and the lances of Salore,  
And those from Attruck and the Caspian sands;  
Light men and on light steeds, who only drink  
The acrid milk of camels, and their wells. 125  
And then a swarm of wandering horse, who came  
From far, and a more doubtful service owned;  
The Tartars of Ferghana, from the banks  
Of the Jaxartes, men with scanty beards  
And close-set skullcaps; and those wilder hordes 130  
Who roam o'er Kipchak and the northern waste,  
Kalmucks and unkempt Kuzzaks, tribes who stray  
Nearest the Pole, and wandering Kirghizzes,  
Who come on shaggy ponies from Pamere;  
These all filed out from camp into the plain. 135  
And on the other side the Persians formed;—  
First a light cloud of horse, Tartars they seemed,  
The Ilyats of Khorassan; and behind,  
The royal troops of Persia, horse and foot,  
Marshalled battalions bright in burnished steel. 140  
But Peran-Wisa with his herald came,  
Threading the Tartar squadrons to the front,  
And with his staff kept back the foremost ranks.  
And when Ferood, who led the Persians, saw  
That Peran-Wisa kept the Tartars back, 145  
He took his spear, and to the front he came,  
And checked his ranks, and fixed them where they stood.  
And the old Tartar came upon the sand  
Betwixt the silent hosts, and spake, and said:  
“Ferood, and ye, Persians and Tartars, hear! 150  
Let there be truce between the hosts to-day.  
But choose a champion from the Persian lords

To fight our champion Sohrab, man to man."

As, in the country, on a morn in June,  
When the dew glistens on the pearled ears, 155  
A shiver runs through the deep corn for joy —  
So, when they heard what Peran-Wisa said,  
A thrill through all the Tartar squadrons ran  
Of pride and hope for Sohrab, whom they loved.

But as a troop of pedlers, from Cabool, 160  
Cross underneath the Indian Caucasus,  
That vast sky-neighboring mountain of milk snow;  
Crossing so high, that, as they mount, they pass  
Long flocks of travelling birds dead on the snow,  
Choked by the air, and scarce can they themselves 165  
Slake their parched throats with sugared mulberries —  
In single file they move, and stop their breath,  
For fear they should dislodge the o'erhanging snows —  
So the pale Persians held their breath with fear.

And to Ferood his brother chiefs came up 170  
To counsel; Gudurz and Zoarrah came,  
And Feraburz, who ruled the Persian hosts  
Second, and was the uncle of the King;  
These came and counselled, and then Gudurz said:

"Ferood, shame bids us take their challenge up, 175  
Yet champion have we none to match this youth.  
He has the wild stag's foot, the lion's heart.  
But Rustum came last night; aloof he sits  
And sullen, and has pitched his tents apart.  
Him will I seek, and carry to his ear 180  
The Tartar challenge, and this young man's name.  
Haply he will forget his wrath, and fight.  
Stand forth the while, and take their challenge up."

160-169. A very fine Homeric simile, but without a counterpart in Homer. 166. *sugared mulberries* of course does not mean fresh mulberries, though all mulberries are excessively sweet.

So spake he; and Ferood stood forth and cried:  
"Old man, be it agreed as thou hast said! 185  
Let Sohrab arm, and we will find a man."

He spake: and Peran-Wisa turned, and strode  
Back through the opening squadrons to his tent.  
But through the anxious Persians Gudurz ran,  
And crossed the camp which lay behind, and reached, 190  
Out on the sands beyond it, Rustum's tents.  
Of scarlet cloth they were, and glittering gay,  
Just pitched; the high pavilion in the midst  
Was Rustum's, and his men lay camped around.  
And Gudurz entered Rustum's tent, and found 195  
Rustum; his morning meal was done, but still  
The table stood before him, charged with food —  
A side of roasted sheep, and cakes of bread,  
And dark-green melons; and there Rustum sate  
Listless, and held a falcon on his wrist, 200  
And played with it; but Gudurz came and stood  
Before him; and he looked, and saw him stand,  
And with a cry sprang up and dropped the bird,  
And greeted Gudurz with both hands, and said:

"Welcome! these eyes could see no better sight. 205  
What news? but sit down first, and eat and drink."

But Gudurz stood in the tent door, and said:  
"Not now! a time will come to eat and drink,  
But not to-day; to-day has other needs.  
The armies are drawn out, and stand at gaze; 210  
For from the Tartars is a challenge brought  
To pick a champion from the Persian lords  
To fight their champion — and thou know'st his name —  
Sohrab men call him, but his birth is hid.  
O Rustum, like thy might is this young man's! 215  
He has the wild stag's foot, the lion's heart;  
And he is young, and Iran's chiefs are old,



Or else too weak; and all eyes turn to thee.  
Come down and help us, Rustum, or we lose!"

He spoke; but Rustum answered with a smile: 220  
"Go to! if Iran's chiefs are old, then I  
Am older; if the young are weak, the King  
Errs strangely; for the King, for Kai Khosroo,  
Himself is young, and honors younger men  
And lets the aged moulder to their graves. 225  
Rustum he loves no more, but loves the young —  
The young may rise at Sohrab's vaunts, not I.  
For what care I, though all speak Sohrab's fame?  
For would that I myself had such a son,  
And not that one slight helpless girl I have — 230  
A son so famed, so brave, to send to war,  
And I to tarry with the snow-haired Zal,  
My father, whom the robber Afghans vex,  
And clip his borders short, and drive his herds,  
And he has none to guard his weak old age. 235  
There would I go, and hang my armor up,  
And with my great name fence that weak old man,  
And spend the goodly treasures I have got,  
And rest my age, and hear of Sohrab's fame,  
And leave to death the hosts of thankless kings, 240  
And with these slaughterous hands draw sword no  
more."

He spoke, and smiled; and Gudurz made reply:  
"What then, O Rustum, will men say to this,  
When Sohrab dares our bravest forth, and seeks  
Thee most of all, and thou, whom most he seeks, 245  
Hidest thy face? Take heed lest men should say:  
'Like some old miser, Rustum hoards his fame,  
And shuns to peril it with younger men.'"

And, greatly moved, then Rustum made reply:  
"O Gudurz, wherefore dost thou say such words? 250

Thou knowest better words than this to say.  
What is one more, one less, obscure or famed,  
Valiant or craven, young or old, to me?  
Are not they mortal, am not I myself?  
But who for men of naught would do great deeds? 255  
Come, thou shalt see how Rustum hoards his fame!  
But I will fight unknown, and in plain arms;  
Let not men say of Rustum, he was matched  
In single fight with any mortal man."

He spoke, and frowned; and Gudurz turned, and  
ran 260

Back quickly through the camp in fear and joy —  
Fear at his wrath, but joy that Rustum came.  
But Rustum strode to his tent door, and called  
His followers in, and bade them bring his arms,  
And clad himself in steel; the arms he chose 265  
Were plain, and on his shield was no device,  
Only his helm was rich, inlaid with gold,  
And, from the fluted spine atop, a plume  
Of horsehair waved, a scarlet horsehair plume.  
So armed, he issued forth; and Ruksh, his horse, 270  
Followed him like a faithful hound at heel —  
Ruksh, whose renown was noised through all the earth,  
The horse, whom Rustum on a foray once  
Did in Bokhara by the river find  
A colt beneath its dam, and drove him home, 275  
And reared him; a bright bay, with lofty crest,  
Dight with a saddlecloth of broidered green  
Crusted with gold, and on the ground were worked  
All beasts of chase, all beasts which hunters know.  
So followed, Rustum left his tents, and crossed 280  
The camp, and to the Persian host appeared.  
And all the Persians knew him, and with shouts  
Hailed; but the Tartars knew not who he was.

And dear as the wet diver to the eyes  
Of his pale wife who waits and weeps on shore, 285  
By sandy Bahrein, in the Persian Gulf,  
Plunging all day in the blue waves, at night,  
Having made up his tale of precious pearls,  
Rejoins her in their hut upon the sands —  
So dear to the pale Persians Rustum came. 290

And Rustum to the Persian front advanced,  
And Sohrab armed in Haman's tent, and came.  
And as afield the reapers cut a swath  
Down through the middle of a rich man's corn,  
And on each side are squares of standing corn, 295  
And in the midst a stubble, short and bare —  
So on each side were squares of men, with spears  
Bristling, and in the midst, the open sand.  
And Rustum came upon the sand, and cast  
His eyes toward the Tartar tents, and saw 300  
Sohrab come forth, and eyed him as he came.

As some rich woman, on a winter's morn,  
Eyes through her silken curtains the poor drudge  
Who with numb blackened fingers makes her fire —  
At cockcrow, on a starlit winter's morn, 305  
When the frost flowers the whitened window-panes —  
And wonders how she lives, and what the thoughts  
Of that poor drudge may be; so Rustum eyed  
The unknown adventurous youth, who from afar  
Came seeking Rustum, and defying forth 310  
All the most valiant chiefs; long he perused

284. The simile is perhaps suggested by Homer, 701-708, where Paris and Hector are as dear to the eyes of their despairing comrades as a favorable wind to sailors becalmed. 286. *Bahrein*—the last syllable is like *rain*. 288. *tale* means reckoning. Thus Milton's shepherd "tells his tale"—that is, counts his sheep. Probably the King James translators did not mean by tale a "story," when they wrote, "We spend our days as a tale that is told."

His spirited air, and wondered who he was.  
For very young he seemed, tenderly reared;  
Like some young cypress, tall, and dark, and straight,  
Which in a queen's secluded garden throws 315  
Its slight dark shadow on the moonlit turf,  
By midnight, to a bubbling fountain's sound —  
So slender Sohrab seemed, so softly reared.  
And a deep pity entered Rustum's soul  
As he beheld him coming; and he stood, 320  
And beckoned to him with his hand, and said:  
    "O thou young man, the air of heaven is soft,  
And warm, and pleasant; but the grave is cold!  
Heaven's air is better than the cold dead grave.  
Behold me! I am vast, and clad in iron, 325  
And tried; and I have stood on many a field  
Of blood, and I have fought with many a foe —  
Never was that field lost, or that foe saved.  
O Sohrab, wherefore wilt thou rush on death?  
Be governed! quit the Tartar host, and come 330  
To Iran, and be as my son to me,  
And fight beneath my banner till I die!  
There are no youths in Iran brave as thou."  
So he spake, mildly; Sohrab heard his voice,  
The mighty voice of Rustum, and he saw 335  
His giant figure planted on the sand,  
Sole, like some single tower, which a chief  
Hath builded on the waste in former years  
Against the robbers; and he saw that head,  
Streaked with its first gray hairs; — hope filled his soul, 340  
And he ran forward and embraced his knees,  
And clasped his hand within his own, and said:  
    "Oh, by thy father's head! by thine own soul!  
Art thou not Rustum? speak! art thou not he?"  
But Rustum eyed askance the kneeling youth, 345

And turned away, and spake to his own soul:

“Ah me, I muse what this young fox may mean!  
False, wily, boastful, are these Tartar boys.  
For if I now confess this thing he asks,  
And hide it not, but say: ‘Rustum is here!’ 350  
He will not yield indeed, nor quit our foes,  
But he will find some pretext not to fight,  
And praise my fame, and proffer courteous gifts,  
A belt or sword perhaps, and go his way.  
And on a feast-tide, in Afrasiab’s hall, 355  
In Samarcand, he will arise and cry:  
‘I challenged once, when the two armies camped  
Beside the Oxus, all the Persian lords  
To cope with me in single fight; but they  
Shrank, only Rustum dared; then he and I 360  
Changed gifts, and went on equal terms away.’  
So will he speak, perhaps, while men applaud;  
Then were the chiefs of Iran shamed through me.”

And then he turned, and sternly spake aloud:  
“Rise! wherefore dost thou vainly question thus 365  
Of Rustum? I am here, whom thou hast called  
By challenge forth; make good thy vaunt, or yield!  
Is it with Rustum only thou wouldst fight?  
Rash boy, men look on Rustum’s face and flee!  
For well I know, that did great Rustum stand 370  
Before thy face this day, and were revealed,  
There would be then no talk of fighting more.  
But being what I am, I tell thee this —  
Do thou record it in thine inmost soul:  
Either thou shalt renounce thy vaunt and yield, 375  
Or else thy bones shall strew this sand, till winds  
Bleach them, or Oxus with his summer floods,  
Oxus in summer wash them all away.”

He spoke; and Sohrab answered, on his feet:

"Art thou so fierce? Thou wilt not fright me so! 380  
I am no girl, to be made pale by words.  
Yet this thou hast said well, did Rustum stand  
Here on this field, there were no fighting then.  
But Rustum is far hence, and we stand here.  
Begin! thou art more vast, more dread than I, 385  
And thou art proved, I know, and I am young.  
But yet success sways with the breath of heaven.  
And though thou thinkest that thou knowest sure  
Thy victory, yet thou canst not surely know.  
For we are all, like swimmers in the sea, 390  
Poised on the top of a huge wave of fate,  
Which hangs uncertain to which side to fall.  
And whether it will heave us up to land,  
Or whether it will roll us out to sea,  
Back out to sea, to the deep waves of death, 395  
We know not, and no search will make us know;  
Only the event will teach us in its hour."

He spoke, and Rustum answered not, but hurled  
His spear; down from the shoulder, down it came,  
As on some partridge in the corn a hawk, 400  
That long has towered in the airy clouds,  
Drops like a plummet; Sohrab saw it come,  
And sprang aside, quick as a flash; the spear  
Hissed, and went quivering down into the sand,  
Which it sent flying wide; — then Sohrab threw 405  
In turn, and full struck Rustum's shield; sharp rang,  
The iron plates rang sharp, but turned the spear.  
And Rustum seized his club, which none but he  
Could wield; an unlopped trunk it was, and huge,

390-397. This strong simile of fate is Arnold's own. Though the Greeks thought much on fate, the Persians thought of it still more. 408 ff. The description is suggested by Homer's description of Achilles' spear, *Iliad* 19, 388 ff.

Still rough — like those which men in treeless plains 410  
To build them boats fish from the flooded rivers,  
Hyphasis or Hydaspes, when, high up  
By their dark springs, the wind in winter time  
Hath made in Himalayan forests wrack,  
And strewn the channels with torn boughs — so huge 415  
The club which Rustum lifted now, and struck  
One stroke; but again Sohrab sprang aside,  
Lithe as the glancing snake, and the club came  
Thundering to earth, and leapt from Rustum's hand.  
And Rustum followed his own blow, and fell 420  
To his knees, and with his fingers clutched the sand;  
And now might Sohrab have unsheathed his sword,  
And pierced the mighty Rustum while he lay  
Dizzy, and on his knees, and choked with sand;  
But he looked on, and smiled, nor bared his sword, 425  
But courteously drew back, and spoke, and said:  
“Thou strik'st too hard! that club of thine will float  
Upon the summer floods, and not my bones.  
But rise, and be not wroth! not wroth am I;  
No, when I see thee, wrath forsakes my soul, 430  
Thou say'st, thou art not Rustum; be it so!  
Who art thou then, that canst so touch my soul.  
Boy as I am, I have seen battles too —  
Have waded foremost in their bloody waves,  
And heard their hollow roar of dying men; 435  
But never was my heart thus touched before.  
Are they from Heaven, these softening of the heart?  
O thou old warrior, let us yield to Heaven!  
Come, plant we here in earth our angry spears,  
And make a truce, and sit upon this sand, 440  
And pledge each other in red wine, like friends,  
And thou shalt talk to me of Rustum's deeds.  
There are enough foes in the Persian host,

Whom I may meet, and strike, and feel no pang;  
Champions enough Afrasiab has, whom thou 445  
Mayst fight; fight *them*, when they confront thy spear!  
But oh, let there be peace 'twixt thee and me!"

He ceased, but while he spake, Rustum had risen,  
And stood erect, trembling with rage; his club  
He left to lie, but had regained his spear, 450  
Whose fiery point now in his mailed right hand  
Blazed bright and baleful, like that autumn star,  
The baleful sign of fevers; dust had soiled  
His stately crest, and dimmed his glittering arms.  
His breast heaved, his lips foamed, and twice his voice 455  
Was choked with rage; at last these words broke way:

"Girl! nimble with thy feet, not with thy hands!  
Curled minion, dancer, coiner of sweet words!  
Fight, let me hear thy hateful voice no more!  
Thou art not in Afrasiab's gardens now 460  
With Tartar girls, with whom thou art wont to dance;  
But on the Oxus sands, and in the dance  
Of battle, and with me, who make no play  
Of war; I fight it out, and hand to hand.  
Speak not to me of truce, and pledge, and wine! 465  
Remember all thy valor; try thy feints  
And cunning! all the pity I had is gone;  
Because thou hast shamed me before both the hosts  
With thy light skipping tricks, and thy girl's wiles."

He spoke, and Sohrab kindled at his taunts, 470  
And he too drew his sword; at once they rushed  
Together, as two eagles on one prey

457-479. The fierce heat of such lines as these must not be overlooked by those who think of Arnold as a "cold" poet. 472-473. Here is a simile taken from Homer, but it is not Homeric in the sense mentioned above. Neither Homer nor his modern imitator could take time to let his mind stray from the struggle.



Come rushing down together from the clouds,  
One from the east, one from the west; their shield.  
Dashed with a clang together, and a din 475  
Rose, such as that the sinewy woodcutters  
Make often in the forest's heart at morn,  
Of hewing axes, crashing trees — such blows  
Rustum and Sohrab on each other hailed.  
And you would say that sun and stars took part 480  
In that unnatural conflict; for a cloud  
Grew suddenly in heaven, and darkened the sun  
Over the fighters' heads; and a wind rose  
Under their feet, and moaning swept the plain,  
And in a sandy whirlwind wrapped the pair. 485  
In gloom they twain were wrapped, and they alone;  
For both the on-looking hosts on either hand  
Stood in broad daylight, and the sky was pure,  
And the sun sparkled on the Oxus stream.  
But in the gloom they fought, with bloodshot eyes 490  
And laboring breath; first Rustum struck the shield  
Which Sohrab held stiff out; the steel-spiked spear  
Rent the tough plates, but failed to reach the skin,  
And Rustum plucked it back with angry groan.  
Then Sohrab with his sword smote Rustum's helm, 495  
Nor clove its steel quite through; but all the crest  
He shore away, and that proud horsehair plume,  
Never till now defiled, sank to the dust;  
And Rustum bowed his head; but then the gloom  
Grew blacker, thunder rumbled in the air, 500  
And lightnings rent the cloud; and Ruksh, the horse,  
Who stood at hand, uttered a dreadful cry; —  
No horse's cry was that, most like the roar

501. Do you remember the terrible cry of the wolf-hunted horses in "The Last of the Mohicans," Chapter VI.? It frightened even Hawkeye.

Of some pained desert lion, who all day  
Hath trailed the hunter's javelin in his side, 505  
And comes at night to die upon the sand.  
The two hosts heard that cry, and quaked for fear,  
And Oxus curdled as it crossed his stream.  
But Sohrab heard, and quailed not, but rushed on,  
And struck again; and again Rustum bowed 510  
His head; but this time all the blade, like glass,  
Sprang in a thousand shivers on the helm,  
And in the hand the hilt remained alone.  
Then Rustum raised his head; his dreadful eyes  
Glared, and he shook on high his menacing spear, 515  
And shouted: "Rustum!" — Sohrab heard that shout,  
And shrank amazed: back he recoiled one step,  
And scanned with blinking eyes the advancing form;  
And then he stood bewildered; and he dropped  
His covering shield, and the spear pierced his side. 520  
He reeled, and, staggering back, sank to the ground;  
And then the gloom dispersed, and the wind fell,  
And the bright sun broke forth, and melted all  
The cloud; and the two armies saw the pair —  
Saw Rustum standing, safe upon his feet, 525  
And Sohrab, wounded, on the bloody sand.

Then, with a bitter smile, Rustum began:  
"Sohrab, thou thoughtest in thy mind to kill  
A Persian lord this day, and strip his corpse,  
And bear thy trophies to Afrasiab's tent; 530  
Or else that the great Rustum would come down  
Himself to fight, and that thy wiles would move  
His heart to take a gift, and let thee go;  
And then that all the Tartar host would praise  
Thy courage or thy craft, and spread thy fame, 535  
To glad thy father in his weak old age.  
Fool, thou art slain, and by an unknown man!

Dearer to the red jackals shalt thou be  
Than to thy friends, and to thy father old."

And, with a fearless mien, Sohrab replied: 540  
"Unknown thou art; yet thy fierce vaunt is vain.  
Thou dost not slay me, proud and boastful man!  
No! Rustum slays me, and this filial heart.  
For were I matched with ten such men as thee,  
And I were that which till to-day I was, 545  
They should be lying here, I standing there.  
But that belovéd name unnerved my arm —  
That name, and something, I confess, in thee,  
Which troubles all my heart, and made my shield  
Fall; and thy spear transfixed an unarmed foe. 550  
And now thou boastest, and insult'st my fate.  
But hear thou this, fierce man, tremble to hear:  
The mighty Rustum shall avenge my death!  
My father, whom I seek through all the world,  
He shall avenge my death, and punish thee!" 555

As when some hunter in the spring hath found  
A breeding eagle sitting on her nest,  
Upon the craggy isle of a hill lake,  
And pierced her with an arrow as she rose,  
And followed her to find her where she fell 560  
Far off; — anon her mate comes winging back  
From hunting, and a great way off descries  
His huddling young left sole; at that, he checks  
His pinion, and with short uneasy sweeps  
Circles above his eyry, with loud screams 565  
Chiding his mate back to her nest; but she  
Lies dying, with the arrow in her side,  
In some far stony gorge out of his ken,

556-575. Arnold has not forgotten the eagle and its poetic possibilities; now the time has come for him to let his fancy run, and how good is the result! This simile is not in Homer.

A heap of fluttering feathers — never more  
Shall the lake glass her, flying over it; 570  
Never the black and dripping precipices  
Echo her stormy scream as she sails by —  
As that poor bird flies home, nor knows his loss,  
So Rustum knew not his own loss, but stood  
Over his dying son, and knew him not. 575

But, with a cold incredulous voice, he said:  
“What prate is this of fathers and revenge?  
The mighty Rustum never had a son.”

And, with a failing voice, Sohrab replied:  
“Ah yes, he had! and that lost son am I. 580  
Surely the news will one day reach his ear,  
Reach Rustum, where he sits, and tarries long,  
Somewhere, I know not where, but far from here;  
And pierce him like a stab, and make him leap  
To arms, and cry for vengeance upon thee. 585

Fierce man, bethink thee, for an only son!  
What will that grief, what will that vengeance be?  
Oh, could I live till I that grief had seen!  
Yet him I pity not so much, but her,  
My mother, who in Ader-baijan dwells 590  
With that old king, her father, who grows gray  
With age, and rules over the valiant Koords.  
Her most I pity, who no more will see  
Sohrab returning from the Tartar camp,  
With spoils and honor, when the war is done. 595

But a dark rumor will be bruited up,  
From tribe to tribe, until it reach her ear;  
And then will that defenceless woman learn  
That Sohrab will rejoice her sight no more,  
But that in battle with a nameless foe, 600  
By the far-distant Oxus, he is slain.”

He spoke; and as he ceased, he wept aloud,

Thinking of her he left, and his own death.  
He spoke; but Rustum listened, plunged in thought.  
Nor did he yet believe it was his son 605  
Who spoke, although he called back names he knew;  
For he had had sure tidings that the babe,  
Which was in Ader-baijan born to him,  
Had been a puny girl, no boy at all —  
So that sad mother sent him word, for fear 610  
Rustum should seek the boy, to train in arms.  
And so he deemed that either Sohrab took,  
By a false boast, the style of Rustum's son;  
Or that men gave it him, to swell his fame.  
So deemed he: yet he listened, plunged in thought; 615  
And his soul set to grief, as the vast tide  
Of the bright rocking Ocean sets to shore  
At the full moon; tears gathered in his eyes;  
For he remembered his own early youth,  
And all its bounding rapture; as, at dawn, 620  
The shepherd from his mountain lodge descries  
A far, bright city, smitten by the sun,  
Through many rolling clouds — so Rustum saw  
His youth; saw Sohrab's mother, in her bloom;  
And that old king, her father, who loved well 625  
His wandering guest, and gave him his fair child  
With joy; and all the pleasant life they led,  
They three, in that long-distant summer time —  
The castle, and the dewy woods, and hunt  
And hound, and morn on those delightful hills 630  
In Ader-baijan. And he saw that youth,  
Of age and looks to be his own dear son,  
Piteous and lovely, lying on the sand,

620-624. The tone of this exquisite simile is more modern than Homer and yet is antique in its bright simplicity.

Like some rich hyacinth which by the scythe  
Of an unskilful gardener has been cut, 635  
Mowing the garden grassplots near its bed,  
And lies, a fragrant tower of purple bloom,  
On the mown, dying grass — so Sohrab lay,  
Lovely in death, upon the common sand.  
And Rustum gazed on him with grief, and said: 640

“O Sohrab, thou indeed art such a son  
Whom Rustum, wert thou his, might well have loved!  
Yet here thou errest, Sohrab, or else men  
Have told thee false — thou art not Rustum’s son.  
For Rustum had no son; one child he had — 645  
But one — a girl; who with her mother now  
Plies some light female task, nor dreams of us —  
Of us she dreams not, nor of wounds, nor war.”

But Sohrab answered him in wrath; for now  
The anguish of the deep-fixed spear grew fierce, 650  
And he desired to draw forth the steel,  
And let the blood flow free, and so to die —  
But first he would convince his stubborn foe;  
And, rising sternly on one arm, he said:

“Man, who art thou who dost deny my words? 655  
Truth sits upon the lips of dying men,  
And falsehood, while I lived, was far from mine.  
I tell thee, pricked upon this arm I bear  
The seal which Rustum to my mother gave,  
That she might prick it on the babe she bore.” 660

He spoke; and all the blood left Rustum’s cheeks,  
And his knees tottered, and he smote his hand  
Against his breast, his heavy mailed hand,

634-639. Homer likens a slain youth to a drooping poppy, but he would have thought it fanciful and over-elaborate to call a hyacinth “a tower of purple bloom.” How good “common sand” is, contrasted with the delicate fairness of the dead boy!

That the hard iron corselet clanked aloud;  
And to his heart he pressed the other hand, 665  
And in a hollow voice he spake, and said:

“Sohrab, that were a proof which could not lie!  
If thou show this, then art thou Rustum’s son.”

Then, with weak hasty fingers, Sohrab loosed  
His belt, and near the shoulder bared his arm, 670  
And showed a sign in faint vermilion points  
Pricked; as a cunning workman, in Pekin,  
Pricks with vermilion some clear porcelain vase,  
An emperor’s gift — at early morn he paints,  
And all day long, and, when night comes, the lamp 675  
Lights up his studious forehead and thin hands —  
So delicately pricked the sign appeared  
On Sohrab’s arm, the sign of Rustum’s seal.

It was that griffin, which of old reared Zal,  
Rustum’s great father, whom they left to die, 680  
A helpless babe, among the mountain rocks;  
Him that kind creature found and reared, and loved —  
Then Rustum took it for his glorious sign.  
And Sohrab bared that image on his arm,  
And himself scanned it long with mournful eyes, 685  
And then he touched it with his hand, and said:

“How say’st thou? Is that sign the proper sign  
Of Rustum’s son, or of some other man’s?”

He spoke; but Rustum gazed, and gazed, and stood  
Speechless; and then he uttered one sharp cry: 690  
“O boy — thy father!” — and his voice choked there.  
And then a dark cloud passed before his eyes,  
And his head swam, and he sank down to earth.  
But Sohrab crawled to where he lay, and cast

669–678. This lovely simile has a phrase or two from Homer, and is Homeric in its straying from the point; but the beautiful conception is Arnold’s own.

His arms about his neck, and kissed his lips, 695  
And with fond faltering fingers stroked his cheeks,  
Trying to call him back to life; and life  
Came back to Rustum, and he oped his eyes,  
And they stood wide with horror; and he seized  
In both his hands the dust which lay around, 700  
And threw it on his head, and smirched his hair, —  
His hair, and face, and beard, and glittering arms;  
And strong convulsive groanings shook his breast,  
And his sobs choked him; and he clutched his sword,  
To draw it, and forever let life out. 705  
But Sohrab saw his thought, and held his hands,  
And with a soothing voice he spake, and said:  
“Father, forbear! for I but meet to-day  
The doom which at my birth was written down  
In heaven, and thou art heaven’s unconscious hand. 710  
Surely my heart cried out that it was thou,  
When first I saw thee; and thy heart spoke too,  
I know it! but fate trod those promptings down  
Under its iron heel; fate, fate engaged  
The strife, and hurled me on my father’s spear. 715  
But let us speak no more of this! I find  
My father; let me feel that I have found!  
Come, sit beside me on this sand, and take  
My head betwixt thy hands, and kiss my cheeks,  
And wash them with thy tears, and say: ‘My son!’ 720  
Quick! quick! for numbered are my sands of life,  
And swift; for like the lightning to this field  
I came, and like the wind I go away —  
Sudden, and swift, and like a passing wind.  
But it was writ in heaven that this should be.” 725  
So said he, and his voice released the heart  
Of Rustum, and his tears broke forth; he cast  
His arms round his son’s neck, and wept aloud,



And kissed him. And awe fell on both the hosts,  
When they saw Rustum's grief; and Ruksh, the horse, 730  
With his head bowing to the ground and mane  
Sweeping the dust, came near, and in mute woe  
First to the one then to the other moved  
His head, as if inquiring what their grief  
Might mean; and from his dark, compassionate eyes, 735  
The big warm tears rolled down, and caked the sand.  
But Rustum chid him with stern voice, and said:

“Ruksh, now thou grieveest; but, O Ruksh, thy feet  
Should first have rotted on their nimble joints,  
Or ere they brought thy master to this field!” 740

But Sohrab looked upon the horse, and said:  
“Is this, then, Ruksh? How often, in past days,  
My mother told me of thee, thou brave steed,  
My terrible father's terrible horse! and said,  
That I should one day find thy lord and thee. 745  
Come, let me lay my hand upon thy mane!  
O Ruksh, thou art more fortunate than I;  
For thou hast gone where I shall never go,  
And snuffed the breezes of my father's home.  
And thou hast trod the sands of Seistan, 750  
And seen the River of Helmund, and the Lake  
Of Zirrah; and the aged Zal himself  
Has often stroked thy neck, and given thee food,  
Corn in a golden platter, soaked with wine,  
And said: ‘O Ruksh! bear Rustum well,’ — but I 755  
Have never known my grandsire's furrowed face,  
Nor seen his lofty house in Seistan,  
Nor slaked my thirst at the clear Helmund stream;  
But lodged among my father's foes, and seen  
Afrasiab's cities only, Samarcand, 760  
Bokhara, and lone Khiva in the waste,  
And the black Toorkmun tents; and only drunk

The desert rivers, Moorghab and Tejend,  
Kohik, and where the Kalmuks feed their sheep,  
The northern Sir; and this great Oxus stream, 765  
The yellow Oxus, by whose brink I die."

Then, with a heavy groan, Rustum bewailed:  
"Oh, that its waves were flowing over me!  
Oh, that I saw its grains of yellow silt  
Roll tumbling in the current o'er my head!" 770

But, with a grave mild voice, Sohrab replied:  
"Desire not that, my father! thou must live.  
For some are born to do great deeds, and live,  
As some are born to be obscured, and die.  
Do thou the deeds I die too young to do, 775  
And reap a second glory in thine age;  
Thou art my father, and thy gain is mine.  
But come! thou seest this great host of men  
Which follow me; I pray thee, slay not these!  
Let me entreat for them; what have they done? 780  
They followed me, my hope, my fame, my star.  
Let them all cross the Oxus back in peace.  
But me thou must bear hence, not send with them,  
But carry me with thee to Seistan,  
And place me on a bed, and mourn for me, 785  
Thou, and the snow-haired Zal, and all thy friends.  
And thou must lay me in that lovely earth,  
And heap a stately mound above my bones,  
And plant a far-seen pillar over all.  
That so the passing horseman on the waste 790  
May see my tomb a great way off, and cry:  
'Sohrab, the mighty Rustum's son, lies there,  
Whom his great father did in ignorance kill!'  
And I be not forgotten in my grave."

And, with a mournful voice, Rustum replied: 795  
"Fear not! as thou hast said, Sohrab, my son,

So shall it be; for I will burn my tents,  
And quit the host, and bear thee hence with me,  
And carry thee away to Seistan,  
And place thee on a bed, and mourn for thee, 800  
With the snow-headed Zal, and all my friends.  
And I will lay thee in that lovely earth,  
And heap a stately mound above thy bones,  
And plant a far-seen pillar over all,  
And men shall not forget thee in thy grave. 805  
And I will spare thy host; yea, let them go!  
Let them all cross the Oxus back in peace!  
What should I do with slaying any more?  
For would that all that I have ever slain  
Might be once more alive; my bitterest foes, 810  
And they who were called champions in their time,  
And through whose death I won that fame I have —  
And I were nothing but a common man,  
A poor, mean soldier, and without renown,  
So thou mightest live too, my son, my son! 815  
Or rather would that I, even I myself,  
Might now be lying on this bloody sand,  
Near death, and by an ignorant stroke of thine,  
Not thou of mine! and I might die, not thou;  
And I, not thou, be borne to Seistan; 820  
And Zal might weep above my grave, not thine;  
And say: 'O son, I weep thee not too sore,  
For willingly, I know, thou met'st thine end!'  
But now in blood and battles was my youth,  
And full of blood and battles is my age, 825  
And I shall never end this life of blood."

Then, at the point of death, Sohrab replied:  
"A life of blood indeed, thou dreadful man!  
But thou shalt yet have peace; only not now,  
Not yet! but thou shalt have it on that day 830

When thou shalt sail in a high-masted ship,  
Thou and the other peers of Kai Khosroo,  
Returning home over the salt blue sea,  
From laying thy dear master in his grave."

And Rustum gazed in Sohrab's face, and said: 835  
"Soon be that day, my son, and deep that sea!  
Till then, if fate so wills, let me endure."

He spoke; and Sohrab smiled on him, and took  
The spear, and drew it from his side, and eased  
His wound's imperious anguish; but the blood 840  
Came welling from the open gash, and life  
Flowed with the stream;—all down his cold white  
side

The crimson torrent ran, dim now and soiled,  
Like the soiled tissue of white violets  
Left, freshly gathered, on their native bank, 845  
By children whom their nurses call with haste  
Indoors from the sun's eye; his head drooped low,  
His limbs grew slack; motionless, white, he lay—  
White, with eyes closed; only when heavy gasps,  
Deep heavy gasps quivering through all his frame, 850  
Convulsed him back to life, he opened them,  
And fixed them feebly on his father's face;  
Till now all strength was ebbd, and from his limbs  
Unwillingly the spirit fled away,  
Regretting the warm mansion which it left, 855  
And youth, and bloom, and this delightful world.

So, on the bloody sand, Sohrab lay dead;  
And the great Rustum drew his horseman's cloak  
Down o'er his face, and sate by his dead son.  
As those black granite pillars, once high-reared 860  
By Jemshid in Persepolis, to bear  
His house, now 'mid their broken flight of steps  
Lie prone, enormous, down the mountain side—

So in the sand lay Rustum by his son.

And night came down over the solemn waste, 865  
 And the two gazing hosts, and that sole pair,  
 And darkened all; and a cold fog, with night,  
 Crept from the Oxus. Soon a hum arose,  
 As of a great assembly loosed, and fires  
 Began to twinkle through the fog; for now 870  
 Both armies moved to camp, and took their meal;  
 The Persians took it on the open sands  
 Southward, the Tartars by the river marge;  
 And Rustum and his son were left alone.

But the majestic river floated on, 875  
 Out of the mist and hum of that low land,  
 Into the frosty starlight, and there moved,  
 Rejoicing, through the hushed Chorasmian waste,  
 Under the solitary moon; — he flowed  
 Right for the polar star, past Orgunjé, 880  
 Brimming, and bright, and large; then sands begin  
 To hem his watery march, and dam his streams,  
 And split his currents; that for many a league  
 The shorn and parcelled Oxus strains along  
 Through beds of sand and matted rushy isles — 885  
 Oxus, forgetting the bright speed he had  
 In his high mountain cradle in Pamere,  
 A foiled circuitous wanderer — till at last  
 The longed-for dash of waves is heard, and wide  
 His luminous home of waters opens, bright 890  
 And tranquil, from whose floor the new-bathed stars  
 Emerge, and shine upon the Aral Sea.

875-892. It is not fanciful to say that this superb passage is an allegory of human life. It is pure allegory, not mixed; that is, no definite word, like *life*, gives us the clue. Is "Pilgrim's Progress" a pure allegory, or mixed?

Has the poem high seriousness? Is it musical? Is it strong in emotional power? in description? in dramatic climax?

**Plan of Summary.** — Reviewing the chapter, (1) enumerate the kinds of metre, designating them by the number of accents and by the predominant foot. Then (2) say which poem is most noticeable for melody; (3) which for beauty of suggested sights; (4) which for pleasure of suggested sounds; (5) which for pleasure of suggested activity; (6) which for pleasure of suggested odors or tastes; (7) which is most easily understood; (8) which moves the reader most deeply; (9) which shows most skill in character drawing; (10) which has the best unity; (11) which, your critical judgment tells you, is the best piece of work; (12) which you like the best, — without regard to its deserved rank, or its fame.

## CHAPTER VII

### THE MORNING LANDSCAPE

THE outdoor world is man's strength, medicine, delight. It seems to him most beautiful when it interprets for him his happiest feelings—as we gather from Thomas Ashe's poem called *Sympathy*. When he feels jolly all things seem jolly ;

*Sympathy*,  
p. 293.

The sun dances up in the sky,  
The moon dances down in the dews.

When he feels sad, nature seems sad also. To the poet the sea-wind yesterday suggested liberty ; to-day it sounds like a fettered soul trying to speak. Doubtless it would be better for man to study nature for its own sake, and learn what it has to say to him ; but, as a matter of fact, man's view of nature is deeply colored by his own moods.

*Watson's  
Changed  
Voices*,  
p. 294.

The outdoor world engages all human beings. It satisfies the curiosity of the child, whose business it is to get acquainted with the wonderful place in which he finds himself. All animals interest him, for he must learn which are naturally his friends and comrades, which his enemies. All physical laws interest him, for nature must teach him that some things are heavy, others light ; some dull, others sharp ; some cold, others hot ; some poisonous, others wholesome. If he does not learn these laws, he will be, as Professor Huxley puts it, "untimely ended."

Nature is the place to which the grown man looks for rest and calm after the struggles of the city. He slips into the woods to be quieted in soul. He goes up into the moun-

tain to seek serenity, for here he looks down upon the warring world and sees that after all it is not to be taken too seriously. The mountain teaches him firmness and faith. And when the stars come out, the man that yesterday tired his eyes over a ledger now soothes them with gazing into infinite miles of rest.

Midway between childhood and manhood is youth, and early youth is the age which loves nature in her fresh and happy moods. Since the world is freshest and happiest in the morning, we may speak in this chapter of nature's cheerful phases under the head of the "Morning Landscape." For the morning landscape is full of exhilaration, and cries out with the joy of activity. "The sun cometh forth from his chamber, and rejoiceth as a strong man to run a race." This is the time of day when hard tasks are play. Every breath seems to reach the finger-tips. Flowers have no heavy sweetness like that of house-blown roses in a room; they are aromatic now. It is the hour of daffodil and brier-rose and clover-dew. The streams are not sluggish and lazy, for the slowest is alive with sun. Let us review the morning moods of the year.

As youth is the morning of life, so, said the Greek, is springtime the youth of the year. The farther south we go, the earlier this youth begins. In Italy it is spring in January. Browning's little heroine, Pippa, is a factory girl, who has but one holiday in the year, and that is New Year's. She leaps from her bed determined to make the most of the time. Wherever she goes she sings merrily, and her songs are overheard by others, and quite unknown to Pippa they save many a life from its evil instincts. The first song that she carols captures in eight lines the whole springtime.

In England in January there are no larks in the heaven nor snails on the thorn; but a little later there is green in the mountains. Among the Westmoreland hills Words-



worth wrote his stanzas on March. No flowers yet, but sunny grass in the field. Cattle are grazing — forty feeding like one — and everybody is at work, from the baby to the grandsire. March,  
p. 295.

Presently, both in England and America, the crocus appears. Mr. Thomas Bailey Aldrich, in a graceful sonnet, has found words for the feeling of surprise and joy that springs up at sight of the first crocus. He likens himself to Crusoe discovering the footprints in the sand. In the mother country the crocus blooms in far greater profusion than in America. Tennyson, remembering the look of these delicate blossoms that mantle the greensward, wrote one of the finest similes in English : —

And at her feet the crocus brake like fire! <sup>1</sup>

Before March is over in England the daffodils arrive ; not in patches beside the door, but in the fields by the thousand. Shakspeare calls them

Daffodils

That come before the swallows dare, and take  
The winds of March with beauty.

It was on one of his long Westmoreland walks that, “wandering lonely as a cloud,” Wordsworth saw a host of these golden flowers, beside the lake, beneath the trees. A very simple matter, surely ; yet Wordsworth received such delight from that glance that those daffodils have become a possession of thousands. They gladdened the poet still more when his memory ran back to them as he lay within doors. The dweller in cities understands what this means, as he thinks back on his summer vacation.

I wandered  
Lonely as a  
Cloud,  
p. 296.

The first poet to praise an American flower was Bryant, in his musical lines on the *Yellow Violet*. This hardiest The Yellow  
Violet,  
p. 297.

<sup>1</sup> From *Enone*, describing the goddess Venus. Flowers were fabled to spring up sometimes where a goddess trod.

little blossom of its family appears in April, on the very edge of the lingering snowbank. Bryant cannot help moralizing (to himself) about it. He is ashamed that in May he should forget the flower he welcomed so joyfully a month before.

The Rhodora,  
p. 298.

Less musical than Bryant's song about the violet, but more profound, are Emerson's lines on the *Rhodora*. Some one had asked him "whence is the flower," and the wise poet answered that "if eyes were made for seeing, then beauty is its own excuse for being." No one knows why or how Heaven made the rhodora. It exists, and it is beautiful to look upon.

Warble for  
Lilac-  
Time,  
p. 299.

Walt Whitman, whom some critics think a true maker of poetry and others think merely a gatherer of poetic material, has a spring poem of reminiscence. He calls it *Warble for Lilac-Time*. He details his memories of spring, — the crisp February days, the sugar-making, the vapors, the haze, the sound of frogs and birds, the melted snow, the yellow-green willow sprouts, then the flowers of April and May, — till he makes those jocund days live again. To remember just what spring was like, most people have to await its return. Not so Walt Whitman.

The Crow,  
p. 300.

One bird, familiar alike to the American and the English spring, even Whitman does not mention, fond as he is of the grotesque. The crow has been sung but little, but he would be greatly missed if he appeared no more in the morning landscape. Mr. Canton pictures him as an old ungodly rogue, whose feathers, torn by shot, show black against the blue sky. He wears funereal garb, but he grins behind it. Suspicious that the frost is not yet gone, and still more suspicious of his enemy the farmer, the crow perches alert on the tip of an ash tree. As his rakish eye looks round, he drinks in the glad morning's sun and air.

In the spring morning landscape of England the lark plays a real part. We have no skylark in America, but we are so

familiar with the bird in poetry that it seems like one of our own possessions. Still, he who hears it for the first time in the English sky has a new experience. He looks aloft, but it is poised invisible in upper air. In Shakspeare's phrase, the lark is singing at heaven's gates.

Hark,  
Hark!  
the Lark!  
p. 301.

This is the moment when the earliest sunshine creeps through the lattice, plays upon the wall, and wakens the sleeper. He turns upon his side, and watches the light in its lambent beauty. This glory, that every morning comes stealing back, and that on every delicate morning seems almost divine, is the theme of Tennyson-Turner's sonnet, *The Lattice at Sunrise*. Mr. Norman Gale thinks of the same moment as that when God returns from his other cares to look at the world; it is the light of his countenance that we see. Longfellow, in one of his boyish poems, finds in the spring sunrise on the hills the perfect look of joy, undimmed by tears.

The Lattice  
at Sunrise,  
p. 302.  
Dawn and  
Dark,  
p. 302.  
Sunrise on  
the Hills,  
p. 303.

With spring come the showers, and with these the rainbow. To Wordsworth, perhaps the greatest poet of nature, the rainbow always gave a thrill at the heart. In his poem he declares that he feels the pleasure as keenly in manhood as he did in childhood. He wishes that the day may never come when he shall cease to be stirred in the same way; that the best joys of his boyhood may last into manhood; that, so to speak, the child may be the father of the man.

My Heart  
leaps up  
when I  
Behold,  
p. 304.

The early summer comes, with what Lowell calls "the perfect days," and Emerson calls "the charmed days." Bryant, in a poem on June, enters into the spirit of this weather, but not with such jubilation as Lowell does in his praise of June, at the opening of Sir Launfal. Bryant hoped that his time to die might be in this month of months. It is interesting to know that his wish was granted. In June of 1878 it could at last be said of him,—

'Twas One  
of the  
Charmed  
Days,  
p. 305.  
June,  
p. 305.

His part in all the pomp that fills  
The circuit of the summer hills,  
Is — that his grave is green.

To the  
Dandelion,  
p. 307.

Intrinsically the dandelion is a very beautiful blossom, and if rare would be costly. Lowell's *Dandelion* is the flower of everybody. Lowell reads everything lovely into it, says it stands to him for the warm land of flowers, calls it his tropics and his Italy. He delights beyond expression to find the first blooms. They remind him of the beauty that might be lighted on in the natures of ordinary people, if it were looked for.

Emerson is another poet who, forsaking the rose and the nightingale, sings of commoner flowers and birds. Note some of his flowers, page 311. Of the birds, he likes best the chickadee, the snow-bird.

Here was this atom in full breath,  
Hurling defiance at vast death.

The  
Humble-  
Bee, p. 309.

It remained for Emerson to celebrate the bumblebee, which gets back from him its proper but less descriptive name, *The Humble-Bee*. Emerson dubs him a philosopher, because, though burly and dozing, he knows enough to sip only what is sweet. Clean and savory flowers furnish forth his meal, and nothing else does he regard — all else was picture as he passed. Emerson grows enthusiastic, and declares that he asks no better clime than that the humble-bee loves. As Lowell called a common flower his tropics, so Emerson calls his burly bee an animated torrid zone. For Emerson, the New England of this yellow-breeched philosopher is good enough; let others sail for Porto Rique — that is the way the poet's fancy takes liberties with geographic names.

The bee is perhaps the most steadily cheerful creature in the landscape, but he is not the most joyful. The bird is the

one being that seems capable of rapturous happiness. The bird is therefore one of the poet's keenest delights, and never has the poet neglected to write of it. For the present, one or two instances must suffice. Let these instances be extremes — "the bird which is most like a bee" (as the poet Forceythe Willson says), and the bird which is most like a beast of prey.

Eight quaint lines by the late Emily Dickinson convey an impression of the humming-bird. He comes like a resonant streak of emerald and red, whirring the blossoms down as he passes. He is probably the morning mail from Africa. In contrast to this revolving wheel of color, consider Tennyson's little picture of the statuesque king of birds. How he catches the genius of the eagle in what he calls *A Fragment!* A few terse lines, if they are the work of a Tennyson, suffice for an eagle: he is too sudden and too secret to be pursued in a long poem up to his hidden eyry. He wheels unceasingly "with clang of wings," as Shelley says; he is glassed in the lake — how Arnold's lines (p. 271) seize that moment; he clasps the crag, near the sun, in the blue; he watches; he falls on his prey like a thunderbolt.

The Hum-  
ming-Bird,  
p. 311.

The Eagle,  
a Frag-  
ment,  
p. 312.

Both these birds are embodiments of swift, exulting strength, the one all delicacy, the other all grandeur. We must look to other poems for the joy of bird-song: to those of Bryant and Mr. Robert Burns Wilson on the bobolink, those of Mr. George Meredith and Mr. William Watson on the lark, those of Walt Whitman and Mr. Maurice Thompson on the mocking-bird, and that of Lowell on the cat-bird. Mean-  
time, a little prose rhapsody of Ruskin will give us whatever impression prose can give of the fragility, the power, the grace, the passionate sweetness and strength of voice, the cloud-like, shadow-like, sky-like beauty of the bird.

The Bird,  
p. 312.

Midsummer comes, the song of birds is still, and the parched plains long for the cool water of rivers. "The dry

Song of the  
Chatta-  
hoochee,  
p. 313.

fields burn, and the mills are to turn," sings the Chatta-hoochee, in Sidney Lanier's poem. The poet Lanier was also a musician, one of the best flute-players of his time, a fact which accounts for the musical quality of his verse. And, indeed, unless one has much music in him, he cannot write the music of a stream. Tennyson has caught the chatter of the brook in his song, *The Brook*. Mr. Maurice Thompson has suggested the flow of the lowland creek, in his *Death of the White Heron*.

Bubble, bubble flows the stream,  
Like an old song through a dream.

Lanier has turned into verse the swift rush of the mountain river.

And now, in our pursuit of the advancing year, we have reached the dog-days. To many of us these bring suggestions of a desire for the seashore. Let us make a digression, take a holiday, and demand of the poets a breath of salt air. First, remembering that we are looking for the cheerful side of nature, we may even dare to enjoy the railway journey shoreward, although Mr. Ruskin objects so strongly to the railway. It is almost incredible that Mr. Ruskin never felt the exultation of becoming, so to speak, a part of the landscape, as the train thundered over hill, down vale. Noise and smoke are occasionally as natural as sunshine and the luminous quiet of evening; the railroad train is a jubilant storm. Nor is it always ugly in the landscape. Miss Dickinson very naturally likes to see it "step around a pile of mountains."

The Rail-  
way Train,  
p. 315.

And now we may imagine ourselves to have passed that line of mystery, the horizon behind which lies the sea. There it stretches, the universe of water, always pulsing and always resounding. The wind that blows from it is the very breath of life to the sick man. Wind and wave alike are full

of dark possibilities, but if no man loved to dare the wind and the wave, it would speak ill for our race and its future. For many years the English race has approved Barry Cornwall's lines beginning with the buoyant cry :—

The sea ! the sea ! the open sea !  
The blue, the fresh, the ever free !

The Sea,  
p. 316.

The seaside has not usually given the poets an inspiration so cheerful as this of Barry Cornwall's. The never ceasing minor music of the surge has often saddened the poet's heart. But even Tennyson sometimes finds delight by the sea, for here as elsewhere he is moved to exclamation at the beauty of the world. For example, he stands in wonder beside a shell, small and pure as a pearl. He dreams of the little living will that made it stir on the shore. He is astonished at its structure, which cannot bear a finger-tap, but which has resisted the shock and pressure of seas that break the three-decker's oaken spine.

The Shell,  
p. 317.

The spring and the summer are usually spoken of as the glad time of the year. When the north wind begins to blow human spirits are supposed to sink. But a stout heart rather enjoys the rough north wind and its promise of healthful cold. On this subject, Mr. W. E. Henley has a poem that is even exultant. The wind, he says, comes roaring from his spacious arctic fastnesses, and like a giant hunter storms down upon the sea ; but the wrinkled sea, Old Indefatigable, merely laughs with delight.

With summer go the flowers. For that matter, some fade every day in the year. The seventeenth-century poet Herrick laments, —

Fair Daffodils, we weep to see  
You haste away so soon :  
As yet the early-rising Sun  
Has not attain'd his Noon.

But that is not the normal way in which to regard flowers and the morning. Mr. Lang sees the grass falling asleep beneath the lullaby the scythe sings to it. That is a normal view. In a wise little book<sup>1</sup> recently written are the following words : —

The people of Japan are passionately fond of flowers. A great many of their holidays are fixed by the blossoming of trees and shrubs. These festivals are known as flower-viewings, when everybody is expected to be out of doors enjoying the rich colors of the landscape. Thus, at a time of year when we are celebrating Washington's birthday, perhaps with the thermometer at zero and snow all over the ground, the Japanese have their plum viewing; the plum blossom being the first to put forth after the snow is gone. This happens commonly in February. In April is the cherry-viewing, in May it is the peonies which cause the schools to close, in August the lotus, in November the chrysanthemum, and these are only a part.

Blossoms do not last forever in Japan any more than in any other country, and no doubt the people are sorry to see them drop and fade away, especially when the fruit is worthless (as in the case of the Japanese plum tree). Still, the Japanese do not have fast-days or mourning-days when the flower-viewing is over, but go cheerfully about their work till the next bloomtime comes. They know that

Leaves have their time to fall

And flowers to wither at the north wind's breath.

Sweet Day,  
so Cool,  
p. 319.

That contemporary of Herrick whom they called Holy George Herbert felt as keenly as any one the passing of the sweet rose, and of the sweet day, so cool, so calm, so bright. Yet the change did not sadden him, for, in his own quaint words, "the sweet and virtuous soul, like seasoned timber, never gives."

The Death  
of the Flow-  
ers, p. 320.

Even when autumn comes, it is not necessary to regard the fall of the leaves as a grievous thing. Bryant calls November "the melancholy days, the saddest of the year." Mr. Frank Stanton, a southern dialect poet, protests : —

<sup>1</sup> Wendell P. Garrison's "Parables for School and Home." Longmans, Green, & Co.



These ain't the "melancholy days" — there's lots o' fun in sight;  
The cool and bracin' mornin's, an' the big oak fires at night.

In a finer vein Whittier has the same protest in his poem called *A Day*. Listening in November to the squirrel dropping nutshells from the shagbark trees, and to the soft whisper of the dark green hemlocks, the poet finds a gracious beauty in the scene. He folds to his heart the memory of "each lovely thing the sweet day yields," and, not disconsolate, waits with the calm patience of the woods for the leaf and blossom of spring. Bryant himself felt that November is not always to be thought of as melancholy. In a poem to November he says: —

Yet one rich smile and we will try to bear  
The piercing winter frost, and winds, and biting air.

November,  
p. 321.

November is distinctly a less agreeable month than December, at least in north temperate latitudes. Snow is a cheerful thing, for what Emerson calls its "frolic architecture" gives to the landscape the charm of strangeness, and merrily shuts human beings indoors "in a tumultuous privacy of storm." Whittier's most poetic poem is the long idyl which details the cosey delights of being snow-bound. A young English poet of our own day, Mr. A. C. Benson, welcomes the rude, rough December because it compels the cheerful indoor life. This is the time of harvests; not those of golden grain, but those of song. In music and book and school are pleasures as real as those of woods and waters.

The Snow-  
Storm,  
p. 322.

Winter  
Harvests,  
p. 323.

## SYMPATHY

THOMAS ASHE

Is nature all so beautiful?  
The human feeling makes it so:  
The sounds we love, the flowers we cull,  
Are hallowed with man's joy or woe.

The lit le speedwell's tender blue 5  
 Is not so pure and delicate,  
 As the simple wish in you  
 That will its tardy advent wait.

The wishing for the green of trees  
 Is fresher than the leaves that come : 10  
 The blowing of a scented breeze  
 Is sweetest round a happy home.

The ripple of a tranquil bay,  
 The water-lisp in curve or creek,  
 Are softest on the welcome day 15  
 We trust to find some friend we seek.

## CHANGED VOICES

WILLIAM WATSON

Last night the sea-wind was to me  
 A metaphor of liberty,  
     And every wave along the beach  
 A starlit music seemed to be.

To-day the sea-wind is to me 5  
 A fettered soul that would be free,  
     And dumbly striving after speech  
 The tides yearn landward painfully.

To-morrow how shall sound for me  
 The changing voice of wind and sea? 10  
     What tidings shall be borne of each?  
 What rumor of what mystery?

SONG FROM *PIPPA PASSES*

ROBERT BROWNING

The year's at the spring,  
And day's at the morn;  
Morning's at seven;  
The hillside's dew-pearl'd;  
The lark's on the wing; 5  
The snail's on the thorn;  
God's in His heaven —  
All's right with the world.

There is a charming buoyancy, elasticity, springiness about the movement of the poem, as if Pippa were dancing down the path. In what ways does Browning secure this effect?

## MARCH

WILLIAM WORDSWORTH

The cock is crowing,  
The stream is flowing,  
The small birds twitter,  
The lake doth glitter,  
The green field sleeps in the sun: 5  
The oldest and youngest  
Are at work with the strongest;  
The cattle are grazing,  
Their heads never raising;  
There are forty feeding like one! 10

Like an army defeated,  
 The snow hath retreated,  
 And now doth fare ill  
 On the top of the bare hill;  
 The ploughboy is whooping anon, anon. 15  
 There's joy in the mountains;  
 There's life in the fountains;  
 Small clouds are sailing,  
 Blue sky prevailing;  
 The rain is over and gone! 20

# I WANDERED LONELY AS A CLOUD

WILLIAM WORDSWORTH

I wandered lonely as a cloud  
 That floats on high o'er vales and hills,  
 When all at once I saw a crowd,  
 A host of golden daffodils;  
 Beside the lake, beneath the trees, 5  
 Fluttering and dancing in the breeze.  
  
 Continuous as the stars that shine  
 And twinkle on the milky way,  
 They stretch in never ending line  
 Along the margin of a bay: 10  
 Ten thousand saw I at a glance,  
 Tossing their heads in sprightly dance.  
  
 The waves beside them danced; but they  
 Out-did the sparkling waves in glee:  
 A poet could not but be gay 15  
 In such a jocund company:  
 I gazed — and gazed — but little thought  
 What wealth the show to me had brought.

For oft, when on my couch I lie  
In vacant or in pensive mood, 20  
They flash upon that inward eye  
Which is the bliss of solitude;  
And then my heart with pleasure fills,  
And dances with the daffodils.

The best way to appreciate the fresh charm of this poem is to learn it. If, as is said, Mrs. Wordsworth composed the last stanza, she was more Wordsworthian than her husband.

## THE YELLOW VIOLET

WILLIAM CULLEN BRYANT

When beechen buds begin to swell,  
And woods the bluebird's warble know,  
The yellow violet's modest bell  
Peeps from the last year's leaves below.

Ere russet fields their green resume, 5  
Sweet flower, I love, in forest bare,  
To meet thee, when thy faint perfume  
Alone is in the virgin air.

Of all her train, the hands of Spring  
First plant thee in the watery mould, 10  
And I have seen thee blossoming  
Beside the snow-bank's edges cold.

Thy parent sun, who bade thee view  
Pale skies, and chilling moisture sip,  
Has bathed thee in his own bright hue, 15  
And streaked with jet thy glowing lip.

Yet slight thy form, and low thy seat,  
 And earthward bent thy gentle eye,  
 Unapt the passing view to meet,  
 When loftier flowers are flaunting nigh. 20

Oft, in the sunless April day,  
 Thy early smile has stayed my walk,  
 But 'midst the gorgeous blooms of May,  
 I passed thee on thy humble stalk.

So they, who climb to wealth, forget 25  
 The friends in darker fortunes tried.  
 I copied them — but I regret  
 That I should ape the ways of pride.

And when again the genial hour  
 Awakes the painted tribes of light, 30  
 I'll not o'erlook the modest flower  
 That made the woods of April bright.

Select from this poem the two lines (consecutive or not) that seem to you the most musical, and tell what vowels and consonants make them so.

### THE RHODORA:

ON BEING ASKED, WHENCE IS THE FLOWER?

RALPH WALDO EMERSON

In May, when sea-winds pierced our solitudes,  
 I found the fresh Rhodora in the woods,  
 Spreading its leafless blooms in a damp nook,  
 To please the desert and the sluggish brook.  
 The purple petals, fallen in the pool, 5  
 Made the black water with their beauty gay;  
 Here might the redbird come his plumes to cool,  
 And court the flower that cheapens his array.

Rhodora! if the sages ask thee why  
 This charm is wasted on the earth and sky, 10  
 Tell them, dear, that if eyes were made for seeing,  
 Then Beauty is its own excuse for being:  
 Why thou wert there, O rival of the rose!  
 I never thought to ask, I never knew;  
 But, in my simple ignorance, suppose 15  
 The self-same Power that brought me there brought you.

WARBLE FOR LILAC-TIME<sup>1</sup>

WALT WHITMAN

Warble me now for joy of lilac-time (returning in remi-  
 niscence),  
 Sort me, O tongue and lips, for Nature's sake, souvenirs of  
 earliest summer,  
 Gather the welcome signs (as children with pebbles or  
 stringing shells),  
 Put in April and May, the hylas croaking in the ponds, the  
 elastic air,  
 Bees, butterflies, the sparrow with its simple notes, 5  
 Bluebird and darting swallow, nor forget the high-hole  
 flashing his golden wings,  
 The tranquil sunny haze, the clinging smoke, the vapor,  
 Shimmer of waters with fish in them, the cerulean above,  
 All that is jocund and sparkling, the brooks running,  
 The maple woods, the crisp February days and the sugar-  
 making, 10  
 The robin where he hops, bright-eyed, brown-breasted,

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted by permission of Small, Maynard, & Co.

4. *hylas* are frogs. How can air be called elastic? 5. Can anything better be said of a sparrow? 8. *cerulean*, blue. 11. Is the robin red-breasted?

With musical clear call at sunrise, and again at sunset,  
Or flitting among the trees of the apple orchard, building  
the nest of his mate,  
The melted snow of March, the willow sending forth its  
yellow-green sprouts,  
For spring-time is here! the summer is here! and what is  
this in it and from it? 15

Thou, soul, unloos'd — the restlessness after I know not what;  
Come, let us lag here no longer, let us be up and away!  
O if one could but fly like a bird!  
O to escape, to sail forth as in a ship!  
To glide with thee, O soul, o'er all, in all, as a ship o'er  
the waters; 20  
Gathering these hints, the preludes, the blue sky, the grass,  
the morning drops of dew,  
The lilac-scent, the bushes with dark green heart-shaped  
leaves,  
Wood-violets, the little delicate pale blossoms called inno-  
cence,  
Samples and sorts not for themselves alone, but for their  
atmosphere,  
To grace the bush I love — to sing with the birds, 25  
A warble for joy of lilac-time, returning in reminiscence.

What senses does the poem appeal to? What emotions does it stir?

## THE CROW

WILLIAM CANTON

With rakish eye and plenished crop,  
Oblivious of the farmer's gun,  
Upon the naked ash tree top  
The Crow sits basking in the sun.



An old ungodly rogue, I wot! 5  
 For, perched in black against the blue,  
 His feathers, torn with beak and shot,  
 Let woful glints of April through.

The year's new grass, and, golden-eyed,  
 The daisies sparkle underneath, 10  
 And chestnut trees on either side  
 Have opened every ruddy sheath.

But doubtful still of frost and snow  
 The ash alone stands stark and bare,  
 And on its topmost twig the Crow 15  
 Takes the glad morning's sun and air.

## HARK ! HARK ! THE LARK

WILLIAM SHAKSPERE

Hark, hark ! the lark at heaven's gate sings,  
 And Phœbus 'gins arise,  
 His steeds to water at those springs  
 On chaliced flowers that lies;  
 And winking Mary-buds begin 5  
 To ope their golden eyes;  
 With everything that pretty bin  
 My lady sweet, arise:  
 Arise, arise.

7. *bin* is an old form for *is*.

The best thing to do with these nine charming lines is to sing them to Schubert's music.

## THE LATTICE AT SUNRISE

CHARLES TENNYSON-TURNER

As on my bed at dawn I mus'd and pray'd,  
 I saw my lattice prank'd upon the wall,  
 The flaunting leaves and flitting birds withal —  
 A sunny phantom interlaced with shade;  
 "Thanks be to heaven," in happy mood I said, 5  
 "What sweeter aid my matins could befall  
 Than the fair glory from the East hath made?  
 What holy sleights hath God, the Lord of all,  
 To bid us feel and see! we are not free  
 To say we see not, for the glory comes 10  
 Nightly and daily, like the flowing sea;  
 His lustre pierceth through the midnight glooms  
 And, at prime hour, behold! He follows me  
 With golden shadows to my secret rooms."

8. *sleights*, of course, means subtle devices. Is the paradox pleasing?

DAWN AND DARK<sup>1</sup>

NORMAN GALE

God with his million cares  
 Went to the left or right,  
 Leaving our world; and the day  
 Grew light.

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted by permission of G. P. Putnam's Sons, the original American publishers of "Orchard Songs."

Back from a sphere He came  
Over a starry lawn,  
Looked at our world; and the dark  
Grew dawn.

5

Is this poem a pleasant and uplifting fancy, or is it a "conceit" — that is, is the fancy rather far-fetched? In deciding, do not be too much influenced by your conviction that God never leaves His world. Of course He does not. The question is, May we find pleasure in fancying that He goes and returns?

## SUNRISE ON THE HILLS

HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW

I stood upon the hills, when heaven's wide arch  
Was glorious with the sun's returning march,  
And woods were brightened, and soft gales  
Went forth to kiss the sun-clad vales.  
The clouds were far beneath me; — bathed in light, 5  
They gathered mid-way round the wooded height,  
And, in their fading glory, shone  
Like hosts in battle overthrown,  
As many a pinnacle, with shifting glance,  
Through the gray mist thrust up its shattered lance, 10  
And rocking on the cliff was left  
The dark pine blasted, bare, and cleft.  
The veil of cloud was lifted, and below  
Glowed the rich valley, and the river's flow  
Was darkened by the forest's shade, 15  
Or glistened in the white cascade;  
Where upward, in the mellow blush of day,  
The noisy bittern wheeled his spiral way.

I heard the distant waters dash,  
 I saw the current whirl and flash, — 20  
 And richly, by the blue lake's silver beach,  
 The woods were bending with a silent reach.  
 Then o'er the vale, with gentle swell,  
 The music of the village bell  
 Came sweetly to the echo-giving hills; 25  
 And the wild horn, whose voice the woodland fills,  
 Was ringing to the merry shout,  
 That faint and far the glen sent out,  
 Where, answering to the sudden shot, thin smoke,  
 Through thick-leaved branches, from the dingle broke. 30

If thou art worn and hard beset  
 With sorrows, that thou wouldst forget,  
 If thou wouldst read a lesson, that will keep  
 Thy heart from fainting and thy soul from sleep,  
 Go to the woods and hills! — No tears 35  
 Dim the sweet look that Nature wears.

### MY HEART LEAPS UP WHEN I BEHOLD

WILLIAM WORDSWORTH

My heart leaps up when I behold  
 A rainbow in the sky :  
 So was it when my life began ;  
 So is it now I am a man ;  
 So be it when I shall grow old, 5  
 Or let me die !  
 The Child is father of the Man ;  
 And I could wish my days to be  
 Bound each to each by natural piety.

What line in this poem is an epigram, and has become famous as such ?

## 'T WAS ONE OF THE CHARMÉD DAYS

RALPH WALDO EMERSON

'Twas one of the charméd days,  
 When the genius of God doth flow,  
 The wind may alter twenty ways,  
 A tempest cannot blow;  
 It may blow north, it still is warm;  
 Or south, it still is clear;  
 Or east, it smells like a clover-farm;  
 Or west, no thunder fear.

5

## JUNE

WILLIAM CULLEN BRYANT

I gazed upon the glorious sky  
 And the green mountains round;  
 And thought, that when I came to lie  
 Within the silent ground,  
 'Twere pleasant, that in flowery June,  
 When brooks sent up a cheerful tune,  
 And groves a joyous sound,  
 The sexton's hand, my grave to make,  
 The rich, green mountain turf should break.

5

A cell within the frozen mould,  
 A coffin borne through sleet,  
 And icy clods above it rolled,  
 While fierce the tempests beat —  
 Away! — I will not think of these —  
 Blue be the sky and soft the breeze,  
 Earth green beneath the feet,  
 And be the damp mould gently pressed  
 Into my narrow place of rest.

10

15

There, through the long, long summer hours  
The golden light should lie, 20  
And thick young herbs and groups of flowers  
Stand in their beauty by.

The oriole should build and tell  
His love-tale, close beside my cell;  
The idle butterfly 25  
Should rest him there, and there be heard  
The housewife bee and humming-bird.

And what if cheerful shouts, at noon,  
Come from the village sent,  
Or songs of maids, beneath the moon, 30  
With fairy laughter blent?

And what if, in the evening light,  
Betrothed lovers walk in sight  
Of my low monument?  
I would the lovely scene around 35  
Might know no sadder sight or sound.

I know, I know I should not see  
The season's glorious show,  
Nor would its brightness shine for me,  
Nor its wild music flow; 40

But if, around my place of sleep,  
The friends I love should come to weep,  
They might not haste to go.  
Soft airs and song, and light, and bloom,  
Should keep them lingering by my tomb. 45

These to their softened hearts should bear  
The thought of what has been,  
And speak of one who cannot share  
The gladness of the scene;

Whose part, in all the pomp that fills 50  
 The circuit of the summer hills,  
     Is — that his grave is green;  
 And deeply would their hearts rejoice  
 To hear, again, his living voice.

50-52. These lines were much admired by Edgar Poe, whose ear for music in poetry was very true.

## TO THE DANDELION

JAMES RUSSELL LOWELL

Dear common flower, that grow'st beside the way,  
 Fringing the dusty road with harmless gold,  
     First pledge of blithesome May,  
 Which children pluck, and, full of pride uphold,  
     High-hearted buccaneers, o'erjoyed that they 5  
 An Eldorado in the grass have found,  
     Which not the rich earth's ample round  
     May match in wealth, thou art more dear to me  
     Than all the prouder summer-blooms may be.

Gold such as thine ne'er drew the Spanish prow 10  
 Through the primeval hush of Indian seas,  
     Nor wrinkled the lean brow  
 Of age, to rob the lover's heart of ease;  
 'Tis the Spring's largess, which she scatters now  
 To rich and poor alike, with lavish hand, 15  
     Though most hearts never understand  
     To take it at God's value, but pass by  
     The offered wealth with unrewarded eye.

6. *Eldorado*, a fabled land rich in gold — "golden land."

Thou art my tropics and mine Italy;  
To look at thee unlocks a warmer clime; 20

    The eyes thou givest me  
Are in the heart, and heed not space or time:

    Not in mid June the golden-cuirassed bee  
Feels a more summer-like warm ravishment

        In the white lily's breezy tent, 25  
    His fragrant Sybaris, than I, when first  
    From the dark green thy yellow circles burst.

    Then think I of deep shadows on the grass,  
Of meadows where in sun the cattle graze,

        Where, as the breezes pass, 30  
The gleaming rushes lean a thousand ways,  
    Of leaves that slumber in a cloudy mass,  
Or whiten in the wind, of waters blue

        That from the distance sparkle through  
    Some woodland gap, and of a sky above, 35  
    Where one white cloud like a stray lamb doth move.

    My childhood's earliest thoughts are linked with thee;  
The sight of thee calls back the robin's song,

        Who, from the dark old tree  
Beside the door, sang clearly all day long, 40  
    And I, secure in childish piety,  
Listened as if I heard an angel sing

        With news from heaven, which he could bring  
    Fresh every day to my untainted ears  
    When birds and flowers and I were happy peers. 45

    How like a prodigal doth nature seem,  
When thou, for all thy gold, so common art!

        Thou teachest me to deem  
More sacredly of every human heart,

26. *Sybaris*, a town in ancient Italy, famous for its luxury.



Since each reflects in joy its scanty gleam 50  
Of heaven, and could some wondrous secret show,

Did we but pay the love we owe,  
And with a child's undoubting wisdom look  
On all these living pages of God's book.

What is the rhyme-scheme? How many lines in a stanza? Which stanza recalls to the poet certain pictures of his boyhood, which certain sounds? Is it natural that so trifling a thing as a flower should recall so much to one? The first three stanzas are eminently worth learning.

### THE HUMBLE-BEE

RALPH WALDO EMERSON

Burly, dozing humble-bee,  
Where thou art is clime for me.  
Let them sail for Porto Rique,  
Far-off heats through seas to seek;  
I will follow thee alone, 5  
Thou animated torrid zone!  
Zigzag steerer, desert cheerer,  
Let me chase thy waving lines;  
Keep me nearer, me thy hearer,  
Singing over shrubs and vines. 10

Insect lover of the sun,  
Joy of thy dominion!  
Sailor of the atmosphere;  
Swimmer through the waves of air;  
Voyager of light and noon; 15  
Epicurean of June!

16. *Epicurean* should be accented on the second *e*, though to do so here will require breaking this vowel into two syllables. The Epicureans were a school of Greek philosophers who believed that death ends all. Can you infer how the word came to be applied to those who are fond of dainty food?

Wait, I prithee, till I come  
 Within earshot of thy hum, —  
 All without is martyrdom.

When the south wind, in May days, 20  
 With a net of shining haze  
 Silvers the horizon wall,  
 And, with softness touching all,  
 Tints the human countenance  
 With the color of romance, 25  
 And infusing subtle heats  
 Turns the sod to violets,  
 Thou, in sunny solitudes,  
 Rover of the underwoods,  
 The green silence dost displace 30  
 With thy mellow, breezy bass.

Hot midsummer's petted crone,  
 Sweet to me thy drowsy tone  
 Tells of countless sunny hours,  
 Long days, and solid banks of flowers; 35  
 Of gulfs of sweetness without bound  
 In Indian wildernesses found;  
 Of Syrian peace, immortal leisure,  
 Firmest cheer, and bird-like pleasure.

Aught unsavory or unclean 40  
 Hath my insect never seen;  
 But violets and bilberry bells,  
 Maple sap and daffodels,  
 Grass with green flag half-mast high,

19. This is what is called hyperbole, — a poetic exaggeration. 25. There is no particular *color of romance*. What does Emerson mean? 26. Is the sod actually turned into violets? 38. *Syrian* is a pleasant word, and the poet probably uses it in the larger sense of Oriental; the Orientals are always leisurely; they are not prompt, and cannot understand our Western notions of the value of time.

Succory to match the sky, 45  
 Columbine with horn of honey,  
 Scented fern, and agrimony,  
 Clover, catchfly, adder's-tongue,  
 And brier-roses, dwelt among;  
 All beside was unknown waste, 50  
 All was picture as he passed.

Wiser far than human seer,  
 Yellow-breeched philosopher!  
 Seeing only what is fair,  
 Sipping only what is sweet, 55  
 Thou dost mock at fate and care,  
 Leave the chaff and take the wheat.  
 When the fierce northwestern blast  
 Cools sea and land so far and fast,  
 Thou already slumberest deep; 60  
 Woe and want thou canst outsleep;  
 Want and woe, which torture us,  
 Thy sleep makes ridiculous.

50-51. In Shakspeare's time (not Emerson's) *waste*, like *vast*, rhymed with *passed*. 56-57. Is the metaphor a trifle mixed? 62-63. Note Emerson's epigrammatic power.

THE HUMMING-BIRD<sup>1</sup>

EMILY DICKINSON

A route of evanescence  
 With a revolving wheel;  
 A resonance of emerald,

<sup>1</sup> From "Poems," Second Series, Copyright, 1891, by Roberts Bros.; now published by Little, Brown, & Co., Boston, and reprinted by their permission and that of Miss Lavinia N. Dickinson.

1. Here *route* is used in the old sense, of *rush*. 3. Is this line truthful to the impression the bird gives? 2, 4. Would it have been better not to rhyme these lines?

A rush of cochineal ;  
 And every blossom on the bush 5  
 Adjusts its tumbled head, —  
 The mail from Tunis, probably,  
 An easy morning's ride.

## THE EAGLE

## FRAGMENT

ALFRED, LORD TENNYSON

He clasps the crag with hookéd hands ;  
 Close to the sun in lonely lands,  
 Ringed with the azure world, he stands.

The wrinkled sea beneath him crawls ;  
 He watches from his mountain walls, 5  
 And like a thunderbolt he falls.

## THE BIRD

JOHN RUSKIN

The bird is little more than a drift of the air brought into form by plumes ; the air is in all its quills, it breathes through its whole frame and flesh, and glows with air in its flying, like a blown flame : it rests upon the air, subdues it, surpasses it, outraces it, — *is* the air, conscious 5 of itself, conquering itself, ruling itself.

Also, into the throat of the bird is given the voice of the air. All that in the wind itself is weak, wild, useless in sweetness, is knit together in its song. As we may

imagine the wild form of the cloud closed into the 10  
perfect form of the bird's wings, so the wild voice  
of the cloud into its ordered and commanded voice;  
unwearied, rippling through the clear heaven in its glad-  
ness, interpreting all intense passion through the soft  
spring nights, bursting into acclaim and rapture of choir 15  
at daybreak, or lisping and twittering among the boughs  
and hedges through heat of day, like little winds that  
only make the cowslip bells shake, and ruffle the petals  
of the wild rose.

Also, upon the plumes of the bird are put the colors 20  
of the air: on these the gold of the cloud, that cannot  
be gathered by any covetousness; the rubies of the  
clouds, the vermilion of the cloud-bar, and the flame  
of the cloud-crest, and the snow of the cloud, and its  
shadow, and the melted blue of the deep wells of the sky 25  
— all these, seized by the creating spirit, and woven into  
films and threads of plume; with wave on wave following  
and fading along breast, and throat, and opened wings,  
infinite as the dividing of the foam and the sifting of the  
sea-sand. 30

## SONG OF THE CHATTAHOOCHEE<sup>1</sup>

SIDNEY LANIER

Out of the hills of Habersham,  
Down through the valleys of Hall,  
I hurry amain to reach the plain,  
Run the rapid and leap the fall,  
Split at the rock and together again,

5

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted by permission of Charles Scribner's Sons.

Accept my bed, or narrow or wide,  
And flee from folly on every side,  
With a lover's pain to attain the plain  
Far from the hills of Habersham,  
Far from the valleys of Hall.

10

All down the hills of Habersham,  
All through the valleys of Hall,  
The rushes cried, "Abide, abide,"  
The wilful waterweeds held me thrall,  
The loving laurel turned my tide,  
The ferns and the fondling grass said, "Stay,"  
The dewberry dipped for to work delay,  
And the little reeds sighed, "Abide, abide,"  
Here in the hills of Habersham,  
Here in the valleys of Hall.

15

20

High o'er the hills of Habersham,  
Veiling the valleys of Hall,  
The hickory told me manifold  
Fair tales of shade ; the poplar tall  
Wrought me her shadowy self to hold ;  
The chestnut, the oak, the walnut, the pine,  
Overleaning, with flickering meaning and sign,  
Said : "Pass not so cold, these manifold  
Deep shades of the hills of Habersham,  
These glades in the valleys of Hall."

25

30

And oft in the hills of Habersham,  
And oft in the valleys of Hall,  
The white quartz shone, and the smooth brook stone  
Did bar me of passage with friendly brawl ;  
And many a luminous jewel lone

35

(Crystals clear or a-cloud with mist,  
 Ruby, garnet, or amethyst)  
 Made lures with the lights of streaming stone  
     In the clefts of the hills of Habersham,  
     In the beds of the valleys of Hall. 40

    But oh ! not the hills of Habersham,  
     And oh ! not the valleys of Hall  
 Avail ; I am fain for to water the plain.  
 Downward the voices of Duty call ;  
 Downward to toil and be mixed with the main. 45  
 The dry fields burn, and the mills are to turn,  
 And a myriad flowers mortally yearn,  
 And the lordly main from beyond the plain  
     Calls o'er the hills of Habersham,  
     Calls through the valleys of Hall. 50

The poem is distinctly worth learning. The swift melody of it is obvious.  
 Is the melody obtained at the expense of thought and of pictures, or is there  
 a happy blending of poetic qualities ?

## THE RAILWAY TRAIN<sup>1</sup>

EMILY DICKINSON

I like to see it lap the miles,  
     And lick the valleys up,  
 And stop to feed itself at tanks ;  
     And then, prodigious, step  
  
 Around a pile of mountains, 5  
     And, supercilious, peer  
 In shanties by the sides of roads ;  
     And then a quarry pare

<sup>1</sup> From "Poems," Second Series, Copyright, 1891, by Roberts Brothers ;  
 now published by Little, Brown, & Co., Boston, and reprinted by their per-  
 mission and that of Miss Lavinia N. Dickinson.

To fit its sides, and crawl between,  
 Complaining all the while 10  
 In horrid, hooting stanza ;  
 Then chase itself down hill

And neigh like Boanerges ;  
 Then, punctual as a star,  
 Stop — docile and omnipotent — 15  
 At its own stable door.

13. *Boanerges*, "sons of thunder."

For what do you praise, for what adversely criticise, this poem ?

## THE SEA

BARRY CORNWALL

The sea ! the sea ! the open sea !  
 The blue, the fresh, the ever free !  
 Without a mark, without a bound,  
 It runs the earth's wide regions round ;  
 It plays with the clouds ; it mocks the skies, 5  
 Or like a cradled creature lies.

I'm on the sea ! I'm on the sea !  
 I am where I would ever be,  
 With the blue above and the blue below,  
 And silence wheresoe'er I go ; 10  
 If a storm should come and awake the deep,  
 What matter ? I shall ride and sleep.

I love, oh ! how I love to ride  
 On the fierce, foaming, bursting tide,  
 When every mad wave drowns the moon, 15



Or whistles aloud his tempest tune,  
And tells how goeth the world below,  
And why the southwest blasts do blow.

I never was on the dull, tame shore,  
But I loved the great sea more and more, 20  
And back I flew to her billowy breast,  
Like a bird that seeks its mother's nest ;  
And a mother she *was* and *is* to me,  
For I was born on the deep blue sea !

And I have lived, in calm and strife, 25  
Full fifty summers a sailor's life,  
With wealth to spend and power to range,  
But never have sought or sighed for change ;  
And Death, whenever he comes to me,  
Shall come on the wild and boundless sea. 30

### THE SHELL

ALFRED, LORD TENNYSON

See what a lovely shell,  
Small and pure as a pearl,  
Lying close to my foot,  
Frail, but a work divine,  
Made so fairly well 5  
With delicate spine and whorl,  
How exquisitely minute,  
A miracle of design !

What is it? A learned man  
Could give it a clumsy name. 10  
Let him name it who can,  
The beauty would be the same.

The tiny cell is forlorn,  
 Void of the little living will  
 That made it stir on the shore. 15  
 Did he stand at the diamond door  
 Of his house in a rainbow frill?  
 Did he push, when he was uncurl'd,  
 A golden foot or a fairy horn  
 Thro' his dim water-world? 20

Slight, to be crush'd with a tap  
 Of my finger-nail on the sand,  
 Small, but a work divine,  
 Frail, but of force to withstand,  
 Year upon year, the shock 25  
 Of cataract seas that snap  
 The three-decker's oaken spine  
 Athwart the ledges of rock,  
 Here on the Breton strand !

Write the rhyme-scheme of each stanza. Why is the second the shortest? Are short lines better than long for a poem on a tiny shell? Do they lend a certain sense of care, as if the poet paused in time, even held his breath, as he touched it?

### SCYTHER SONG

ANDREW LANG

Mowers, weary and brown and blithe,  
 What is the word methinks ye know,  
 Endless over-word that the scythe  
 Sings to the blades of the grass below?  
 Scythes that swing in the grass and clover, 5  
 Something, still, they say as they pass;  
 What is the word that, over and over,  
 Sings the scythe to the flowers and grass?

*Hush, ah hush, the scythes are saying,*  
*Hush, and heed not, and fall asleep ;* 10  
*Hush, they say to the grasses swaying,*  
*Hush, they sing to the clover deep !*  
*Hush, — 'tis the lullaby Time is singing, —*  
*Hush, and heed not, for all things pass,*  
*Hush, ah hush ! and the scythes are swinging* 15  
 Over the clover, over the grass !

Is there in this poem onomatopœia, that is, deliberate imitation, by means of words, of some sound in nature ?

## SWEET DAY, SO COOL

GEORGE HERBERT

Sweet day, so cool, so calm, so bright,  
 The bridal of the earth and sky,  
 The dew shall weep thy fall to-night ;  
                     For thou must die.

Sweet rose, whose hue, angry and brave, 5  
 Bids the rash gazer wipe his eye,  
 Thy root is ever in its grave,  
                     And thou must die.

Sweet spring, full of sweet days and roses,  
 A box where sweets compacted lie, 10  
 My music shows ye have your closes,  
                     And all must die.

Only a sweet and virtuous soul,  
 Like season'd timber, never gives ;  
 But though the whole world turn to coal, 15  
                     Then chiefly lives.

## THE DEATH OF THE FLOWERS

WILLIAM CULLEN BRYANT

The melancholy days are come, the saddest of the year,  
Of wailing winds, and naked woods, and meadows brown  
and sere.

Heaped in the hollows of the grove the withered leaves lie  
dead ;

They rustle to the eddying gust, and to the rabbit's tread.  
The robin and the wren are flown, and from the shrubs the  
jay, 5

And from the wood-top calls the crow, through all the  
gloomy day.

Where are the flowers, the fair young flowers, that lately  
sprang and stood

In brighter light and softer airs, a beauteous sisterhood ?

Alas ! they all are in their graves, the gentle race of flowers  
Are lying in their lowly beds, with the fair and good of  
ours. 10

The rain is falling where they lie, but the cold November  
rain,

Calls not, from out the gloomy earth, the lovely ones again.

The wind-flower and the violet, they perished long ago,  
And the brier-rose and the orchis died amid the summer  
glow ;

But on the hill the goldenrod, and the aster in the wood, 15  
And the yellow sunflower by the brook in autumn beauty  
stood,

Till fell the frost from the clear cold heaven, as falls the  
plague on men,

And the brightness of their smile was gone, from upland,  
glade, and glen.

And now, when comes the calm mild day, as still such days  
will come,  
To call the squirrel and the bee from out their winter home ;  
When the sound of dropping nuts is heard, though all the  
trees are still, 21  
And twinkle in the smoky light the waters of the rill,  
The south wind searches for the flowers whose fragrance late  
he bore,  
And sighs to find them in the wood and by the stream no  
more.

And then I think of one who in her youthful beauty died, 25  
The fair, meek blossom that grew up and faded by my side :  
In the cold moist earth we laid her, when the forest cast the  
leaf,  
And we wept that one so lovely should have a life so brief :  
Yet not unmeet it was that one, like that young friend of  
ours,  
So gentle and so beautiful, should perish with the flowers. 30

## NOVEMBER

WILLIAM CULLEN BRYANT

Yet one smile more, departing, distant sun !  
One mellow smile through the soft vapory air,  
Ere, o'er the frozen earth, the loud winds run,  
Or snows are sifted o'er the meadows bare.  
One smile on the brown hills and naked trees, 5  
And the dark rocks whose summer wreaths are cast,  
And the blue Gentian flower, that, in the breeze,  
Nods lonely, of her beauteous race the last.  
Yet a few sunny days, in which the bee  
Shall murmur by the hedge that skirts the way, 10  
Y

The cricket chirp upon the russet lea,  
 And man delight to linger in thy ray.  
 Yet one rich smile, and we will try to bear  
 The piercing winter frost, and winds, and darkened air.

## THE SNOW-STORM

RALPH WALDO EMERSON

Announced by all the trumpets of the sky,  
 Arrives the snow, and, driving o'er the fields,  
 Seems nowhere to alight : the whited air  
 Hides hills and woods, the river, and the heavens,  
 And veils the farmhouse at the garden's end. 5  
 The sled and traveller stopped, the courier's feet  
 Delayed, all friends shut out, the housemates sit  
 Around the radiant fireplace, enclosed  
 In a tumultuous privacy of storm.

Come see the north wind's masonry. 10  
 Out of an unseen quarry evermore  
 Furnished with tile, the fierce artificer  
 Curves his white bastions with projected roof  
 Round every windward stake, or tree, or door.  
 Speeding, the myriad-handed, his wild work 15  
 So fanciful, so savage, nought cares he  
 For number or proportion. Mockingly,  
 On coop or kennel he hangs Parian wreaths ;  
 A swan-like form invests the hidden thorn ;  
 Fills up the farmer's lane from wall to wall, 20  
 Maugre the farmer's sighs ; and, at the gate,

3. Is this line faithful to the appearance of nature? 1-9. These lines would be worth learning, were it only for the condensation of phrase in the ninth. 18. Parian marble was the whitest and finest known to the ancients. Our shops are full of a cheap imitation stone that unfortunately goes by this famous name. 21. *Maugre* is an old French word, meaning *in spite of*.

A tapering turret overtops the work.  
And when his hours are numbered, and the world  
Is all his own, retiring, as he were not,  
Leaves, when the sun appears, astonished Art 25  
To mimic in slow structures, stone by stone,  
Built in an age, the mad wind's night-work,  
The frolic architecture of the snow.

WINTER HARVESTS<sup>1</sup>

ARTHUR CHRISTOPHER BENSON

Pipe, winds of winter,  
O'er the hill's cold brow.  
Shatter and splinter  
The dying, dying bough ;  
  
Brim the icy river, 5  
Let the dead reeds shake ;  
Make the wild swan shiver  
In her northern lake.  
  
O'er the empty cover  
Bid the brown hawk swing, 10  
Send the wailing plover,  
Southward to the spring.  
  
I do not fear thee,  
Wind, harsh and shrill,  
Rather let me hear thee 15  
Thunder in the hill.

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from "Lord Vyet and Other Poems," by permission of Mr. John Lane.

Rude, rough December,  
Thine be all the earth,  
So the ruddy ember  
Rustle on the hearth.

20

When the shadow beckons,  
Home, and bar the door;  
Then the poet reckons  
All his summer store;

Coins his gathered gladness  
Into ringing rhyme,  
Hugs his merry madness,  
'Tis his harvest time.

25

---

**Plan of Summary.**—Reviewing the chapter, (1) enumerate the kinds of metre, designating them by the number of accents, and by the predominant foot. Then (2) say which poem is most noticeable for melody; (3) which for beauty of suggested sights; (4) which for pleasure of suggested sounds; (5) which for pleasure of suggested activity; (6) which for pleasure of suggested odors or tastes; (7) which is most easily understood; (8) which moves the reader most deeply; (9) which shows most skill in character drawing; (10) which has the best unity; (11) which, your critical judgment tells you, is the best piece of work; (12) which you like the best, without regard to its deserved rank, or its fame.



## CHAPTER VIII

### THE GENTLEMAN

THE word which stands at the head of this chapter is a curious example of how language changes its meaning. *Gentile* is from Latin *gentilis*, "belonging to the same clan." The early Christians fell into the Jewish habit of calling all but themselves gentiles. Christianity first spread among the peasants, the poor of the earth. As time went on and almost all the poor embraced the new religion, the only gentiles left were the rich nobles. After a while, therefore, *gentile* meant little more than *nobleman*. Finally even these gentiles became Christians, their native breeding developed into a nobler and finer behavior, and *gentile* came to mean *gentle* in the modern sense. In the sixteenth century the playwright Dekker could speak of Christ as the first gentleman without suggesting *gentile* to any one. Yet it remains true that men are often called gentlemen merely because they happen to be high born.

With such a history the gentleman has long been before the world of letters. In Shakspeare the necessity of being really gentle if high born is often asserted; it is the French doctrine of *noblesse oblige*. In our own time John Ruskin has found it impossible to write on art without defining to himself the difference between gentlemanliness and vulgarity, for some artists have the one quality and some the other. In the course of a chapter on Vulgarity, in his "Modern Painters," Ruskin analyzes at some length the nature of the gentleman. Like Shakspeare he throws great weight on good breeding, even in the sense that a horse

Of Vulgar-  
ity, p. 329.

The  
Young  
Montagu,  
p. 343.

or dog is well bred. Blood will tell, even in a chimney-sweep; an old story to this effect has been rehearsed by Charles Lamb. And Perdita, in Shakspeare's *Winter's Tale*, proves by her acts that if a shepherd lass is a princess in disguise she behaves like the king's daughter. It is only by being of pure race that a man can develop into the fineness of fibre and feeling which distinguishes the courtier from the clown. Sensitiveness to impression, — this is a prime condition of gentlemanly conduct, and this is exactly what the badly bred peasant lacks. The peasant's skin is thick, callous. To be thin-skinned, in the better sense, is what makes men alive to the rights of their fellows. "Tact" means sense of touch; and tact, according to Emerson, will work wonders when all else fails.

Tact,  
p. 345.

Two Gen-  
tlemen at  
Petersburg,  
p. 346.

Breeding shows itself in the unerring emphasis that the gentleman lays upon the really important matters of courtesy. An ill-bred man is often punctilious about some absurd form, thinking that the observance of this shows great knowledge of how things should be done. Not so the two gentlemen whom Mr. Eggleston tells about. Though officers of opposing armies, the one was severely honorable in surrendering a captain who had offended against the letter of the truce-law, the other equally honorable in refusing to punish this captain for a mere inadvertence.

The  
Gentleman,  
p. 349.

The real test of gentlemanliness lies deeper than forms. One may obey all the forms and yet be counted what the English call a "cad," that is, an unmanly, selfish, egotistic bore. According to Cardinal Newman, it is almost a definition of a gentleman to say that he is one who never inflicts pain. Kindliness and consideration are qualities that depend on a knowledge neither of etiquette nor of the newest fashions in dress.

That a man may be boorish in satins or in shirt-sleeves

is exhibited in two selections in this chapter. Shakspeare's delicate irony impales, like a fly on a pin, the exquisite who came to Hotspur in the battlefield, and smiled and talked and took snuff while dead men were carried by. Mr. Eggleston tells a delightful story of how the Southern cavalry leader, Stuart, enforced his objections to a soldier's appearing in shirt-sleeves at table before ladies. Contrast with Shakspeare's fop and Mr. Eggleston's slouches a true gentleman of the battlefield, Bret Harte's John Burns of Gettysburg. The old beau was dressed in the style of a hundred years since, and yet as he stood immovable there, picking the rebels off, the gleam of his old white hat afar rallied the very boys who had mocked him.

A Fop,  
p. 351.

A Breach  
of Eti-  
quette,  
p. 353.

In war or peace, the gentleman is often a hero. His sense of humane courtesy may be so highly developed that the gentleman must some day choose between obeying it and losing his life. This is the sublime alternative which Mr. Henry Newbolt celebrates in a poem on Craven, the hero of Mobile Bay. When only one of two men can pass through a door alive, because there is only a second of time to do it in, the man that says "After you" (as Captain Craven did) must pay for it with his life. The other man may be as brave at heart; but it is the trained gentleman who speaks first and ends the situation.

Certain forms of gentlemanliness which may almost be called heroic, are found among savage or half-civilized races. The Arab will protect with his life the guest who has eaten his salt. The North American Indian, as Franklin has pointed out, will not under any provocation interrupt another when speaking. In China the laws of Confucius forbid a son to approach his father closely without permission.

Remarks  
concerning  
the Savages  
of North  
America,  
p. 355.

According to Dr. Theodore Munger, the foundation of

Omâr and  
the Per-  
sian, p. 362.

the gentlemanly character is truth.<sup>1</sup> Thus, the story told by Sarah Williams, of how the warrior Omâr kept his word to a guest, when to do so was against all traditions of war, belongs here rather than in the preceding chapter on war. The Persian captive was brought before the victor Omâr and told that he must die. The captive thirsted for a cup of wine. It was brought him, but he hesitated to drink it, fearing poison. This touched the victor's pride, and he assured the Persian that his life was safe from poison; nay, it was safe from all harm until he should have slaked his thirst. The Persian smiled and poured the wine upon the ground. At this ruse a shout arose that he should be slain. But Omâr rose to the occasion. "Hold! if there be a sacred thing, it is the warrior's word."

The Octo-  
pus of the  
Golden  
Isle, p. 364.

One mark of the gentleman is freedom from envy. He is alert to recognize merit even in the friend who outstrips him in a race. The "rooter" who cheers when the other team makes a false play does an ungentlemanly thing. The critic who, as Pope says of Addison, "damns with faint praise" the work of his rival reveals the vulgarity of envy. How vigorously Mr. Theodore Watts-Dunton scores this evil in his allegory of the Octopus!

Between Shakspeare's time and Tennyson's, English literature has many portraits of gentlemen. In the early eighteenth century, Steele sketched the character of Sir Roger de Coverley, and his friend Addison completed the picture. Sir Roger is the ideal country gentleman who has a care for all his dependents. Goldsmith, a little later, created Beau Tibbs, the gentleman whose cheerful good manners never fail, though he may owe his family a meal. Early in our own century, Scott gave us his Lord Evandale, his Guy Mannering, and many another prince of courtesy.

<sup>1</sup> "On the Threshold."

Tennyson wrote a long cycle of poems on the death of his friend Hallam, whose exceptional breeding was remarked by all who knew him — by Gladstone, for instance. The one hundred and eleventh poem of *In Memoriam* concerns Arthur's gentlemanliness. The poet declares that the man who is churlish in spirit cannot hide the fact, though he be by blood a king. But Hallam was finer in grain than anything he could do; was more than all the gentleness he seemed to be. Whatever he did, he seemed perfectly natural, wholly himself. Yet he joined in all the social life around him, to which he brought the flower of noble manners without touch of narrowness or spite. And thus he bore without abuse the grand old name of gentleman.

The Churl  
in Spirit,  
p. 365.

To Thackeray the name of gentleman seemed one of the noblest. His Colonel Newcome is one of the gracious figures that cannot be spared from literature. Thackeray closed one of his books with a poem called *The End of the Play*. The author represents himself as an actor after a performance. He bids his audience good night, remembering that they, too, have parts to play, in real life. He wishes them well, but, whatever may betide, wishes them to be superior to their fate. The race is not always to the swift, any more in life than in school. Not all can win, but all can accept their fate like gentlemen.

The End  
of the Play,  
p. 366.

## OF VULGARITY

JOHN RUSKIN

1. Two great errors, coloring, or rather discoloring, severally, the minds of the higher and lower classes, have sown wide dissension, and wider misfortune, through the society of modern days. These errors are in our modes of interpreting the word "gentleman."

Its primal, literal, and perpetual meaning is "a man of pure race"; well bred, in the sense that a horse or dog is well bred.

The so-called higher classes, being generally of purer race than the lower, have retained the true idea, and the convictions associated with it; but are afraid to speak it out, and equivocate about it in public; this equivocation mainly proceeding from their desire to connect another meaning with it, and a false one; — that of "a man living in idleness on other people's labor"; — with which idea, the term has nothing whatever to do.

The lower classes, denying vigorously, and with reason, the notion that a gentleman means an idler, and rightly feeling that the more any one works, the more of a gentleman he becomes, and is likely to become, — have nevertheless got little of the good they otherwise might, from the truth, because, with it, they wanted to hold a falsehood, — namely, that race was of no consequence. It being precisely of as much consequence in man as it is in any other animal.

2. The nation cannot truly prosper till both these errors are finally got quit of. Gentlemen have to learn that it is no part of their duty or privilege to live on other people's toil. They have to learn that there is no degradation in the hardest manual, or the humblest servile, labor, when it is honest. But that there *is* degradation, and that deep, in extravagance, in bribery, in indolence, in pride, in taking places they are not fit for, or in coining places for which there is no need. It does not disgrace a gentleman to become an errand boy, or a day laborer; but it disgraces him much to become a knave, or a thief. And knavery is not the less knavery because it involves large interests, nor theft the less theft because it is countenanced by usage, or accom-

panied by failure in undertaken duty. It is an incom- 40  
parably less guilty form of robbery to cut a purse out of  
a man's pocket, than to take it out of his hand on the  
understanding that you are to steer his ship up channel,  
when you do not know the soundings.

3. On the other hand, the lower orders, and all orders, 45  
have to learn that every vicious habit and chronic disease  
communicates itself by descent; and that by purity of  
birth the entire system of the human body and soul may  
be gradually elevated, or by recklessness of birth,  
degraded; until there shall be as much difference 50  
between the well-bred and ill-bred human creature  
(whatever pains be taken with their education) as  
between a wolf-hound and the vilest mongrel cur. And  
the knowledge of this great fact ought to regulate the  
education of our youth, and the entire conduct of the 55  
nation.

4. Gentlemanliness, however, in ordinary parlance,  
must be taken to signify those qualities which are usually  
the evidence of high breeding, and which, so far as they  
can be acquired, it should be every man's effort to 60  
acquire; or, if he has them by nature, to preserve and  
exalt. Vulgarity, on the other hand, will signify quali-  
ties usually characteristic of ill-breeding which, accord-  
ing to his power, it becomes every person's duty to  
subdue. We have briefly to note what these are. 65

5. A gentleman's first characteristic is that fineness  
of structure in the body, which renders it capable of the  
most delicate sensation; and of structure in the mind  
which renders it capable of the most delicate sympa-  
thies—one may say, simply, "fineness of nature." 70  
This is, of course, compatible with heroic bodily strength  
and mental firmness; in fact, heroic strength is not  
conceivable without such delicacy. Elephantine strength

may drive its way through a forest and feel no touch of the boughs; but the white skin of Homer's Atrides 75 would have felt a bent rose-leaf, yet subdue its feeling in glow of battle, and behave itself like iron. I do not mean to call an elephant a vulgar animal; but if you think about him carefully you will find that his non-vulgarity consists in such gentleness as is possible to 80 elephantine nature; not in his insensitive hide, nor in his clumsy foot; but in the way he will lift his foot if a child lies in his way; and in his sensitive trunk, and still more sensitive mind, and capability of pique on points of honor. 85

6. And, though rightness of moral conduct is ultimately the great purifier of race, the sign of nobleness is not in this rightness of moral conduct, but in sensitiveness. When the make of the creature is fine, its temptations are strong, as well as its perceptions; it is 90 liable to all kinds of impressions from without in their most violent form; liable therefore to be abused and hurt by all kinds of rough things which would do a coarser creature little harm, and thus to fall into frightful wrong if its fate will have it so. Thus David, 95 coming of gentlest as well as royalest race, of Ruth as well as of Judah, is sensitiveness through all flesh and spirit; not that his compassion will restrain him from murder when his terror urges him to it; nay, he is driven to the murder all the more by his sensitiveness 100 to the shame which otherwise threatens him. But when his own story is told him under a disguise, though only a lamb is now concerned, his passion about it leaves him no time for thought. "The man shall die" — note the reason — "because he had no pity." He is so eager 105 and indignant that it never occurs to him as strange that Nathan hides the name. This is true gentleman. A

•



vulgar man would assuredly have been cautious, and asked "who it was?"

7. Hence it will follow that one of the probable signs <sup>110</sup> of high-breeding in men generally, will be their kindness and mercifulness; these always indicating more or less fineness of make in the mind; and miserliness and cruelty the contrary; hence that of Isaiah: "The vile person shall no more be called liberal, nor the churl said <sup>115</sup> to be bountiful." But a thousand things may prevent this kindness from displaying or continuing itself; the mind of the man may be warped so as to bear mainly on his own interests, and then all his sensibilities will take the form of pride, or fastidiousness, or revengefulness; <sup>120</sup> and other wicked, but not ungentlemanly tempers; or, further, they may run into utter sensuality and covetousness, if he is bent on pleasure, accompanied with quite infinite cruelty when the pride is wounded, or the passions thwarted;—until your gentleman becomes <sup>125</sup> Ezzelin, and your lady, the deadly Lucrece; yet still gentleman and lady, quite incapable of making anything else of themselves, being so born.

8. A truer sign of breeding than mere kindness is therefore sympathy; a vulgar man may often be kind in <sup>130</sup> a hard way, on principle, and because he thinks he ought to be; whereas, a highly bred man, even when cruel, will be cruel in a softer way, understanding and feeling what he inflicts, and pitying his victim. Only we must carefully remember that the quality of sym- <sup>135</sup> pathy a gentleman feels can never be judged of by its outward expression, for another of his chief characteristics is apparent reserve. I say "apparent" reserve;

126. *Ezzelin*, a character in Byron's *Lara*, treacherous, revengeful, and cruel. *Lucrece*, Lucretia Borgia, an Italian duchess of the early sixteenth century, famous as a poisoner.

for the sympathy is real, but the reserve not: a perfect gentleman is never reserved, but sweetly and entirely <sup>140</sup> open, so far as it is good for others, or possible that he should be. In a great many respects it is impossible that he should be open except to men of his own kind. To them, he can open himself, by a word, or syllable, or a glance; but to men not of his kind he cannot open <sup>145</sup> himself, though he tried it through an eternity of clear grammatical speech. By the very acuteness of his sympathy he knows how much of himself he can give to anybody; and he gives that much frankly;—would always be glad to give more if he could, but is obliged, <sup>150</sup> nevertheless, in his general intercourse with the world, to be a somewhat silent person; silence is to most people, he finds, less reserved than speech. Whatever he said, a vulgar man would misinterpret: no words that he could use would bear the same sense to the vul- <sup>155</sup> gar man that they do to him; if he used any, the vulgar man would go away saying, "He had said so and so, and meant so and so" (something assuredly he never meant); but he keeps silence, and the vulgar man goes away saying, "He didn't know what to make of him." <sup>160</sup> Which is precisely the fact, and the only fact which he is anywise able to announce to the vulgar man concerning himself.

9. There is yet another quite as efficient cause of the apparent reserve of a gentleman. His sensibility being <sup>165</sup> constant and intelligent, it will be seldom that a feeling touches him, however acutely, but it has touched him in the same way often before, and in some sort is touching him always. It is not that he feels little, but that he feels habitually; a vulgar man having some heart at the <sup>170</sup> bottom of him, if you can by talk or by sight fairly force the pathos of anything down to his heart, will be excited

about it and demonstrative; the sensation of pity being strange to him, and wonderful. But your gentleman has walked in pity all day long; the tears have never<sup>175</sup> been out of his eyes: you thought the eyes were bright only; but they were wet. You tell him a sorrowful story, and his countenance does not change; the eyes can but be wet still; he does not speak neither, there being, in fact, nothing to be said, only something to be<sup>180</sup> done; some vulgar person, beside you both, goes away saying, "How hard he is!" Next day he hears that the hard person has put good end to the sorrow he said nothing about; — and then he changes his wonder and, exclaims, "How reserved he is!"<sup>185</sup>

10. Self-command is often thought a characteristic of high-breeding: and to a certain extent it is so, at least it is one of the means of forming and strengthening character; but it is rather a way of imitating a gentleman than a characteristic of him; a true gentleman has no<sup>190</sup> need of self-command; he simply feels rightly on all occasions: and desiring to express only so much of his feeling as it is right to express, does not need to command himself. Hence perfect ease is indeed characteristic of him; but perfect ease is inconsistent with<sup>195</sup> self-restraint. Nevertheless gentlemen, so far as they fail of their own ideal, need to command themselves, and do so; while, on the contrary, to feel unwisely, and to be unable to restrain the expression of the unwise feeling is vulgarity; and yet even then, the vulgarity,<sup>200</sup> at its root, is not in the mistimed expression, but in the unseemly feeling; and when we find fault with a vulgar person for "exposing himself," it is not his openness, but clumsiness; and yet more the want of sensibility to his own failure, which we blame; so that still the vul-<sup>205</sup>garity resolves itself into want of sensibility. Also, it

is to be noted that great powers of self-restraint may be attained by very vulgar persons, when it suits their purposes.

11. Closely, but strangely, connected with this openness is that form of truthfulness which is opposed to cunning, yet not opposed to falsity absolute. And herein is a distinction of great importance.

Cunning signifies especially a habit or gift of overreaching, accompanied with enjoyment and a sense of superiority. It is associated with small and dull conceit, and with an absolute want of sympathy or affection. Its essential connection with vulgarity may be at once exemplified by the expression of the butcher's dog in Landseer's "Low Life." Cruikshank's "Noah Claypole," in the illustrations to "Oliver Twist," in the interview with the Jew, is, however, still more characteristic. It is the intensest rendering of vulgarity absolute and utter with which I am acquainted.

The truthfulness which is opposed to cunning ought, perhaps, rather to be called the desire of truthfulness; it consists more in unwillingness to deceive than in not deceiving, — an unwillingness implying sympathy with and respect for the person deceived; and a fond observance of truth up to the possible point, as in a good soldier's mode of retaining his honor through a *ruse-de-guerre*. A cunning person seeks for opportunities to deceive; a gentleman shuns them. A cunning person triumphs in deceiving; a gentleman is humiliated by his success, or at least by so much of the success as is dependent merely on the falsehood, and not on his intellectual superiority.

12. The absolute disdain of all lying belongs rather to Christian chivalry than to mere high breeding; as

231. *ruse-de-guerre*, French for *ruse of war*.

connected merely with this latter, and with general <sup>240</sup> refinement and courage, the exact relations of truthfulness may be best studied in the well-trained Greek mind. The Greeks believed that mercy and truth were co-relative virtues—cruelty and falsehood co-relative vices. But they did not call necessary severity, cruelty; <sup>245</sup> nor necessary deception, falsehood. It was needful sometimes to slay men, and sometimes to deceive them. When this had to be done, it should be done well and thoroughly; so that to direct a spear well to its mark, or a lie well to its end, was equally the accomplishment of <sup>250</sup> a perfect gentleman. Hence, in the pretty diamond-cut-diamond scene between Pallas and Ulysses, when she receives him on the coast of Ithaca, the goddess laughs delightedly at her hero's good lying, and gives him her hand upon it; showing herself then in her <sup>255</sup> woman's form, as just a little more than his match. "Subtle would he be, and stealthy, who should go beyond thee in deceit, even were he a god, thou many-witted! What! here in thine own land, too, wilt thou not cease from cheating? Knowest thou not me, Pallas <sup>260</sup> Athena, maid of Jove, who am with thee in all thy labors, and gave thee favor with the Phæacians, and keep thee, and have come now to weave cunning with thee?" But how completely this kind of cunning was looked upon as a part of a man's power, and not as a <sup>265</sup> diminution of faithfulness, is perhaps best shown by the single line of praise in which the high qualities of his servant are summed up by Chremulus in the *Plutus*—"Of all my house servants, I hold you to be the faith-fullest, and the greatest cheat (or thief)." <sup>270</sup>

13. Thus, the primal difference between honorable and base lying in the Greek mind lay in honorable purpose. A man who used his strength wantonly to hurt

others was a monster; so, also, a man who used his cunning wantonly to hurt others. Strength and cunning<sup>275</sup> were to be used only in self-defence, or to save the weak, and then were alike admirable. This was their first idea. Then the second, and perhaps the more essential, difference between noble and ignoble lying in the Greek mind, was that the honorable lie — or, if we<sup>280</sup> may use the strange, yet just expression, the true lie — knew and confessed itself for such — was ready to take the full responsibility of what it did. As the sword answered for its blow, so the lie for its snare. But what the Greeks hated with all their heart was the false lie;<sup>285</sup> the lie that did not know itself, feared to confess itself, which slunk to its aim under a cloak of truth, and sought to do liars' work, and yet not take liars' pay, excusing itself to the conscience by quibble and quirk. Hence the great expression of Jesuit principle by Euripides,<sup>290</sup> "The tongue has sworn, but not the heart," was a subject of execration throughout Greece, and the satirists exhausted their arrows on it — no audience was ever tired hearing (τὸ Εὐριπιδεῖον ἐκείνο) "that Euripidean thing" brought to shame.<sup>295</sup>

14. And this is especially to be insisted on in the early education of young people. It should be pointed out to them with continual earnestness that the essence of lying is in deception, not in words; a lie may be told by silence, by equivocation, by the accent on a syllable,<sup>300</sup> by a glance of the eye attaching a peculiar significance to a sentence; and all these kinds of lies are worse and

290. *Jesuit*. The Society of Jesus, founded by Loyola in the sixteenth century, did a great deal of good and a great deal of harm. *Jesuitical* is sometimes used to mean hypocritical, because the Jesuits believed that lying is excusable if it accomplishes good. *Euripides*, a Greek tragic poet, born 480 B.C.

baser by many degrees than a lie plainly worded; so that no form of blinded conscience is so far sunk as that which comforts itself for having deceived, because the 305 deception was by gesture or silence, instead of utterance; and, finally, according to Tennyson's deep and trenchant line, "A lie which is half a truth is ever the worst of lies."

15. Although, however, ungenerous cunning is usually 310 so distinct an outward manifestation of vulgarity, that I name it separately from insensibility, it is in truth only an effect of insensibility, producing want of affection to others, and blindness to the beauty of truth. The degree in which political subtlety in men such as 315 Richelieu, Machiavel, or Metternich, will efface the gentleman, depends on the selfishness of political purpose to which the cunning is directed, and on the base delight taken in its use. The command, "Be ye wise as serpents, harmless as doves," is the ultimate expres- 320 sion of this principle, misunderstood usually because the word "wise" is referred to the intellectual power instead of the subtlety of the serpent. The serpent has very little intellectual power, but according to that which it has, it is yet, as of old, the subtlest of the beasts 325 of the field.

16. Another great sign of vulgarity is also, when traced to its root, another phase of insensibility, namely, the undue regard to appearances and manners, as in the households of vulgar persons, of all stations, and the 330 assumption of behavior, language, or dress unsuited to them, by persons in inferior stations of life. I say

316. *Richelieu*, born 1585, was the famous cardinal who ruled France under Louis XIII. *Machiavel*, Machiavelli, b. 1469, was a Florentine writer on the art of politics. *Metternich*, b. 1773, was the diplomatist on whom Francis I. of Austria depended.

“undue” regard to appearances, because in the undue-ness consists, of course, the vulgarity. It is due and wise in some sort to care for appearances, in another sort undue and unwise. Wherein lies the difference? 335

At first one is apt to answer quickly: the vulgarity is simply in pretending to be what you are not. But that answer will not stand. A queen may dress like a waiting maid, — perhaps succeed, if she chooses, in passing for one; but she will not, therefore, be vulgar; nay, a waiting maid may dress like a queen, and pretend to be one, and yet need not be vulgar, unless there is inherent vulgarity in her. In Scribe’s very absurd but very amusing “*Reine d’un jour*,” a milliner’s girl sustains 340 the part of a queen for a day. She several times amazes and disgusts her courtiers by her straightforwardness; and once or twice very nearly betrays herself to her maids of honor by an unqueenly knowledge of sewing; but she is not in the least vulgar, for she is sensitive, 350 simple, and generous, and a queen could be no more.

17. Is the vulgarity, then, only in trying to play a part you cannot play, so as to be continually detected? No; a bad amateur actor may be continually detected in his part, but yet continually detected to be a gentle- 355 man: a vulgar regard to appearances has nothing in it necessarily of hypocrisy. You shall know a man not to be a gentleman by the perfect and neat pronunciation of his words: but he does not pretend to pronounce accurately; he *does* pronounce accurately, the vulgarity is in 360 the real (not assumed) scrupulousness.

18. It will be found on further thought, that a vulgar regard for appearances is, primarily, a selfish one, resulting, not out of a wish to give pleasure (as a wife’s wish to make herself beautiful for her husband), but out 365 of an endeavor to mortify others, or attract for pride’s



sake;—the common “keeping up appearances” of society, being a mere selfish struggle of the vain with the vain. But the deepest stain of the vulgarity depends on this being done, not selfishly only, but stupidly, without understanding the impression which is really produced nor the relations of importance between oneself and others, so as to suppose that their attention is fixed upon us, when we are in reality ciphers in their eyes—all which comes of insensibility. Hence pride simple is not vulgar (the looking down on others because of their true inferiority to us), nor vanity simple (the desire of praise), but conceit simple (the attribution to ourselves of qualities we have not), is always so. In cases of over-studied pronunciation, etc., there is insensibility, first, in the person’s thinking more of himself than of what he is saying; and, secondly, in his not having musical fineness of ear enough to feel that his talking is uneasy and strained.

19. Finally, vulgarity is indicated by coarseness of language or manners, only so far as this coarseness had been contracted under circumstances not necessarily producing it. The illiterateness of a Spanish or Calabrian peasant is not vulgar, because they had never an opportunity of acquiring letters; but the illiterateness of an English school-boy is. . . .

20. So also of personal defects, those only are vulgar which imply insensibility or dissipation.

There is no vulgarity in the emaciation of Don Quixote, the deformity of the Black Dwarf, or the corpulence of Falstaff; but much in the same personal characters, as they are seen in Uriah Heep, Quilp, and Chadband.

395. *The Black Dwarf* is a character in Scott’s novel of the same name. 397. *Uriah Heep*, *Quilp*, and *Chadband* are vulgar characters drawn by Dickens.

21. One of the most curious minor questions in this matter is respecting the vulgarity of excessive neatness, complicating itself with inquiries into the distinction<sup>400</sup> between base neatness, and the perfectness of good execution in the fine arts. It will be found on final thought that precision and exquisiteness of arrangement are always noble; but become vulgar only when they arise from an equality (insensibility) of temperament,<sup>405</sup> which is incapable of fine passion, and is set ignobly, and with a dullard mechanism, on accuracy in vile things. In the finest Greek coins, the letters of the inscriptions are purposely coarse and rude, while the reliefs are wrought with inestimable care. But in an<sup>410</sup> English coin, the letters are the best done, and the whole is unredeemably vulgar. In a picture of Titian's, an inserted inscription will be complete in the lettering, as all the rest is; because it costs Titian very little more trouble to draw rightly than wrongly, and in him, there-<sup>415</sup>fore, impatience with the letters would be vulgar, as in the Greek sculptor of the coin, patience would have been. For the engraving of a letter accurately is difficult work, and his time must have been unworthily thrown away.

22. All the different impressions connected with<sup>420</sup> negligence or foulness depend, in like manner, on the degree of insensibility implied. Disorder in a drawing-room is vulgar, in an antiquary's study, not; the black battle-stain on a soldier's face is not vulgar, but the dirty face of a housemaid is.<sup>425</sup>

And lastly, courage, so far as it is a sign of race, is peculiarly the mark of a gentleman or a lady: but it becomes vulgar if rude or insensitive, while timidity is not vulgar, if it be a characteristic of race or fineness of make. A fawn is not vulgar in being timid, nor a<sup>430</sup> crocodile "gentle" because courageous.

23. Without following the inquiry into further detail, we may conclude that vulgarity consists in a deadness of the heart and body, resulting from prolonged, and especially from inherited conditions of "degeneracy,"<sup>435</sup> or literally "un-racing"; — gentlemanliness being another word for an intense humanity. And vulgarity shows itself primarily in dulness of heart, not in rage or cruelty, but in inability to feel or conceive noble character or emotion. This is its essential, pure, and<sup>440</sup> most fatal form. Dulness of bodily sense and general stupidity, with such forms of crime as peculiarly issue from stupidity, are its material manifestation.

## THE YOUNG MONTAGU

CHARLES LAMB

Yet must I confess, that from the mouth of a true sweep a display (even to ostentation) of those white and shining ossifications, strikes me as an agreeable anomaly in manners, and an allowable piece of foppery. It is, as when

A sable cloud

5

Turns forth her silver lining on the night.

It is like some remnant of gentry not quite extinct; a badge of better days; a hint of nobility — and, doubtless, under the obscuring darkness and double night of their<sup>10</sup> forlorn disguisement, oftentimes lurketh good blood and gentle conditions, derived from lost ancestry and a lapsed pedigree. The premature apprenticeships of these tender victims give but too much encouragement, I fear, to clandestine and almost infantile abductions; the seeds<sup>15</sup> of civility and true courtesy, so often discernible in these young grafts (not otherwise to be accounted for), plainly

hint at some forced adoptions; many noble Rachels, mourning for their children even in our days, countenance the fact; the tales of fairy-spiriting may shadow 20 a lamentable verity, and the recovery of the young Montagu be but a solitary instance of good fortune out of many irreparable and hopeless *defiliations*.

In one of the state beds at Arundel Castle, a few years since — under a ducal canopy — (that seat of the How- 25 ards is an object of curiosity to visitors, chiefly for its beds, in which the late duke was especially a connoisseur) — encircled with curtains of delicatest crimson, with starry coronets inwoven — was discovered by chance, after all methods of search had failed, at noonday, fast asleep, 30 a lost chimney-sweeper. The little creature, having somehow confounded his passage among the intricacies of those lordly chimneys, by some unknown aperture had alighted upon this magnificent chamber; and, tired with his tedious explorations, was unable to resist the delicious invitem- 35 ent to repose which he there saw exhibited; so creeping between the sheets very quietly, laid his black head upon the pillow, and slept like a young Howard.

Such is the account given to the visitors at the Castle. But I cannot help seeming to perceive a confirmation of 40 what I have just hinted at in this story. A high instinct was at work in the case, or I am mistaken. Is it probable that a poor child of that description, with whatever weariness he might be visited, would have ventured, under such a penalty as he would be taught to expect, to uncover the 45 sheets of a duke's bed, and deliberately to lay himself down between them, when the rug or the carpet presented an obvious couch, still far above his pretensions — is this probable, I would ask, if the great power of

23. *defiliations*, a word of Lamb's impromptu coinage, to mean the loss of children by kidnapping.

nature, which I contend for, had not been manifested 50  
 within him, prompting to the adventure? Doubtless this  
 young nobleman (for such my mind misgives me that he  
 must be) was allured by some memory, not amounting to  
 full consciousness, of his condition in infancy, when he  
 was used to be lapped by his mother, or his nurse, in just 55  
 such sheets as he there found, into which he was now  
 but creeping back as into his proper *lucunabula* and  
 resting-place. By no other theory than by this sentiment  
 of a preëxistent state (as I may call it) can I explain a  
 deed so venturous, and indeed upon any other system so 60  
 indecorous, in this tender, but unseasonable, sleeper.

Is the diction modern or archaic? Lamb's favorite authors were those  
 of Shakspeare's time, and he was fond of a partly serious, partly playful, use  
 of pompous terms, in imitation of the prose writers of the sixteenth and  
 seventeenth centuries.

## TACT

RALPH WALDO EMERSON

What boots it, thy virtue,  
 What profit thy parts,  
 While one thing thou lackest, —  
 The art of all arts?

The only credentials, 5  
 Passport to success ;  
 Opens castle and parlor, —  
 Address, man, Address.

The maiden in danger  
 Was saved by the swain ; 10  
 His stout arm restored her  
 To Broadway again.

2. *Parts* is an old expression for natural abilities. 5, 7. Note the ellipsis; *address* is (credentials), then *address* (opens).

The maid would reward him, —  
 Gay company come, —  
 They laugh, she laughs with them ;      15  
 He is moonstruck and dumb.

This clinches the bargain ;  
 Sails out of the bay ;  
 Gets the vote in the senate,  
 Spite of Webster and Clay.      20

Has for genius no mercy,  
 For speeches no heed ;  
 It lurks in the eyebeam,  
 Its leaps to its deed.

Church, market, and tavern,      25  
 Bed and board, it will sway.  
 It has no to-morrow,  
 It ends with to-day.

18. Perhaps this means that but for the tact that clinches bargains, there would be no commerce ; every ship that sets sail means so much tact. 23. Is this true ? Can the eye say things that the tongue cannot ? 24. That is, tact comes in play when something must be done quickly, as when danger is averted by a tactful answer made instantly.

## TWO GENTLEMEN AT PETERSBURG

GEORGE CARY EGGLESTON

At that point where the great mine was blown up at Petersburg, the lines of the two armies were within fifty yards of each other.

In the fearful slaughter that ensued, the space between the rival breastworks was literally piled high with dead 5

men, lying one on top of the other. Only in one other place, namely, at Cold Harbor, was there ever so much of slaughter within so small a space.

It was evident, apart from all considerations of decency, that for the comfort of both sides some arrangement must be made for the burial of these dead men. Neither side could have lived long in its works otherwise. 10

Accordingly, a cartel was arranged between General Grant and General Lee. It was stipulated that there should be a cessation of hostilities for a specified number of hours for the purpose of burying the dead. 15

It was arranged that two lines should be formed twelve feet apart in the middle of the space between the works; that one line should be composed of Federal sentinels, the other of Confederates; that the space between these two lines should be a neutral ground, accessible to both sides; but that no person from either side should cross the line established by the other side. It was agreed that the dead men who had fallen within the Confederate line should be dragged to the neutral ground by Confederate soldiers, and there delivered to Federal troops to be carried within their lines for burial. 20 25

There were no Confederate dead there, of course. All of our men who had been killed were killed within our own works. So every corpse on our side of the neutral ground was dragged by a rope to that common space and there delivered to its official friends. 30

It was specially stipulated in the cartel that no officer or soldier on either side should take advantage of the truce to appropriate property of any kind lying upon the field, whether upon the one or the other side of the neutral ground. Swords, pistols, sashes, everything of the kind must, by agreement, be left precisely where they were. 35

Many of us, of course, went out to the neutral ground 40  
to look over the situation. There was a certain gruesome  
delight even in standing upon ground, where for  
a month or more it had been impossible for a twig or  
a blade of grass to grow without instant decapitation, and  
where for months to come it would be equally impossible 45  
for anything having material substance to exist. The very  
turf itself had been literally skinned from the surface of  
the earth by a continuous scything of bullets. For a  
month it had been impossible for any soldier on either  
side even to shoot over the breastworks, for he who tried 50  
to do so was sure to be instantly destroyed. The fire on  
either side had to be through carefully sand-bag-guarded  
port-holes. And even the port-holes had to be protected  
by hanging blankets behind them to conceal the sky, lest  
their darkening by a human head should invite a hail- 55  
storm of alert and waiting bullets.

Of course every man who, during the truce, wandered  
over this perilous space for an hour, must have been  
impressed, if he had any imagination at all, with the  
historical interest of the occasion. Every one desired 60  
naturally to carry away some memento of the event.  
Only one man yielded to this impulse, and he did so  
thoughtlessly. He was a captain of Confederate  
infantry.

He saw lying on the ground a star that had been cut 65  
by a bullet from some officer's coat collar.

It was a worthless bawble, valuable only as a souvenir.  
He picked it up and pocketed it. Instantly he was  
arrested by the Confederate guards and taken before the  
officer in command of the Confederate line. 70

That officer immediately and with great dignity went  
to the Federal commander and said: "I desire under  
the terms of the cartel to surrender this officer to you



for such punishment as a court-martial of your army may see fit to inflict. He has violated the cartel." 75

"What has he done?" asked the Federal officer.

"He has taken possession of property left upon the field, contrary to the terms of the truce."

"Would you mind telling me," asked the Federal officer, "the exact nature and extent of his offence?" 80

A little explanation followed, the Confederate commander remaining stern and uncompromising in his determination to deliver the man for punishment, asking no favors or mercies for him, and offering no apologies for that which he deemed a breach of honor. 85

When the Federal officer had learned the exact facts of the situation, he made the usual military salute and said to the Confederate commander: "I thank you. You have been very honorable and very punctilious, but the officer's fault has been merely one of inadvertence. 90 I beg to return him to you with the assurance that we have no desire to punish so brave a man as he must be, in order to hold his commission in your army, for an act that involved no intention of wrong."

Here were two brave men—two gentlemen—met. 95 Naturally they understood each other.

Examine the paragraphing of this story, and say what paragraphs might be combined.

## THE GENTLEMAN

JOHN HENRY, CARDINAL NEWMAN

Hence it is that it is almost a definition of a gentleman to say he is one who never inflicts pain. This description is both refined and, as far as it goes, accurate. He is mainly occupied in merely removing the obstacles which hinder the free and unembarrassed action of those 5

about him ; and he concurs with their movements rather than takes the initiative himself. His benefits may be considered as parallel to what are called comforts or conveniences in arrangements of a personal nature : like an easy-chair or a good fire, which do their part in dispelling cold and fatigue, though nature provides both means of rest and animal heat without them. The true gentleman in like manner carefully avoids whatever may cause a jar or a jolt in the minds of those with whom he is cast ; — all clashing of opinion, or collision of feeling, all restraint, or suspicion, or gloom, or resentment ; his great concern being to make every one at their ease and at home. He has his eyes on all his company ; he is tender towards the bashful, gentle towards the distant, and merciful towards the absurd ; he can recollect to whom he is speaking ; he guards against unseasonable allusions, or topics which may irritate ; he is seldom prominent in conversation, and never wearisome. He makes light of favors while he does them, and seems to be receiving when he is conferring. He never speaks of himself except when compelled, never defends himself by a mere retort, he has no ears for slander or gossip, is scrupulous in imputing motives to those who interfere with him, and interprets everything for the best. He is never mean or little in his disputes, never takes unfair advantage, never mistakes personalities or sharp sayings for arguments, or insinuates evil which he dare not say out. From a long-sighted prudence, he observes the maxim of the ancient sage, that we should ever conduct ourselves towards our enemy as if he were one day to be our friend. He has too much good sense to be affronted at insults, he is too well employed to remember injuries, and too indolent to bear malice. He is patient, forbearing, and resigned, on philosophical principles ; he sub-

mits to pain, because it is inevitable, to bereavement, 40  
 because it is irreparable, and to death, because it is  
 his destiny. If he engages in controversy of any kind,  
 his disciplined intellect preserves him from the blun-  
 dering discourtesy of better, perhaps, but less educated  
 minds; who, like blunt weapons, tear and hack instead 45  
 of cutting clean, who mistake the point in argument,  
 waste their strength on trifles, misconceive their adver-  
 sary, and leave the question more involved than they find  
 it. He may be right or wrong in his opinion, but he is  
 too clear-headed to be unjust; he is as simple as he 50  
 is forcible, and as brief as he is decisive. Nowhere  
 shall we find greater candor, consideration, indulgence:  
 he throws himself into the minds of his opponents, he  
 accounts for their mistakes.

## A FOP

WILLIAM SHAKSPERE

*Hotspur.* My liege, I did deny no prisoners.  
 But I remember, when the fight was done,  
 When I was dry with rage, and extreme toil,  
 Breathless and faint, leaning upon my sword,  
 Came there a certain lord, neat, trimly dressed, 5  
 Fresh as a bridegroom; and his chin, new reaped,  
 Showed like a stubble-land at harvest-home;  
 He was perfumèd like a milliner;  
 And 'twixt his finger and his thumb he held  
 A pouncet-box, which ever and anon 10  
 He gave his nose, and took't away again; —

3. Note the old accent of *ex'treme*. 6-7. Is this a humorous hyperbole?

9. *pouncet-box*, a box for powder or perfume.

Who therewith angry, when it next came there,  
 Took it in snuff: — and still he smiled and talked;  
 And, as the soldiers bore dead bodies by,  
 He called them untaught knaves, unmannerly, 15  
 To bring a slovenly unhandsome corse  
 Betwixt the wind and his nobility.  
 With many holiday and lady terms  
 He questioned me; among the rest demanded  
 My prisoners, in your majesty's behalf. 20  
 I then, all smarting, with my wounds being cold,  
 To be so pestered with a popinjay,  
 Out of my grief and my impatience,  
 Answered neglectingly, I know not what;  
 He should, or he should not; — for he made me mad 25  
 To see him shine so brisk, and smell so sweet,  
 And talk so like a waiting-gentlewoman,  
 Of guns, and drums, and wounds (God save the mark!),  
 And telling me, the sovereign'st thing on earth  
 Was parmaceti, for an inward bruise; 30  
 And that it was great pity, so it was,  
 That villanous saltpetre should be digged  
 Out of the bowels of the harmless earth,  
 Which many a good tall fellow had destroyed  
 So cowardly; and but for these vile guns, 35  
 He would himself have been a soldier.

13. *To take in snuff* means, of course, to be angry; but see how Shakspeare pleases his whim by using the words at once in their original and in their derived sense, when he is talking of the original function. 25. Is *mad* correctly intended, or does the good Shakspeare nod? That is, does *mad* here really mean *out of his mind with rage*, or has Shakspeare been caught napping? 28. *God save the mark!* is a sarcastic exclamation, as if Hotspur should say, "This popinjay talks about wounds! Heaven preserve us! What does he know about wounds?" Philologists are not sure of the origin of the expression (which is still common). Perhaps it originally referred to the target, in shooting.

This bald unjointed chat of his, my lord,  
 I answered indirectly, as I said;  
 And I beseech you, let not his report  
 Come current for an accusation, 40  
 Betwixt my love and your high majesty.

*Henry IV.*

37. The *unjointed* is clear: the fop's talk was rambling, incoherent. *Bald* is harder, but probably means merely that the popinjay spoke his mind rather too freely and rudely. *Bald* expressions are those which lack the covering of courtesy.

## A BREACH OF ETIQUETTE

GEORGE CARY EGGLESTON

We had marched nearly all night, in order to join Jeb Stuart at the time appointed. This was in the early summer of 1861.

We regarded ourselves with more or less of self-pity, as sleep-sacrificing heroes, who were clearly entitled to 5 a full day's rest.

Jeb Stuart didn't look at it in that way at all. He was a soldier, while we were just beginning to learn how to be soldiers. These things make a difference.

We hadn't got our tents pitched when he ordered us out 10 for a scouting expedition under his personal command.

Our army lay at Winchester. The enemy was at Martinsburg, twenty-two miles away. Stuart, with his four or five hundred horsemen, lay at Bunker Hill, about half-way between but a little nearer to the enemy than to 15 his supports. That was always Stuart's way.

In our scouting expedition that day, we had two or three "brushes" with the enemy — "just to get us used to it," Stuart said.

Finally we went near to Martinsburg, and came upon 20

a farmhouse. The farm gave no appearance of being a large one, or one more than ordinarily prosperous, yet we saw through the open door a dozen or fifteen "farm hands" eating dinner, all of them in their shirt-sleeves.

Stuart rode up, with a few of us at his back, to make inquiries, and we dismounted. Just then a slip of a girl, — not over fourteen, I should say, — accompanied by a thick-set, young bull-dog, with an abnormal development of teeth, ran up to us.

*She distinctly and unmistakably "sicked" that dog upon us.* But as the beast assailed us, the young girl ran after him and restrained his ardor by throwing her arms around his neck. As she did so, she kept repeating in a low but very insistent tone to us: "Make 'em put their coats on! Make 'em put their coats on! Make 'em put their coats on!"

Stuart was a peculiarly ready person. He said not one word to the young girl as she led her dog away, but with a word or two he directed a dozen or so of us to follow him with cocked carbines into the dining room. There he said to the "farm hands": "Don't you know that a gentleman never dines without his coat? Aren't you ashamed of yourselves? And ladies present, too! Get up and put on your coats, every man jack of you, or I'll riddle you with bullets in five seconds."

They sprang first of all into the hallway, where they had left their arms; but either the bull-dog or the fourteen-year-old girl had taken care of that. The arms were gone. Then seeing the carbines levelled, they made a hasty search of the hiding-places in which they had bestowed their coats. A minute later they appeared as fully uniformed, but helplessly unarmed Pennsylvania volunteers.

They were prisoners of war at once, without even an

opportunity to finish that good dinner. As we left the 55  
house the young girl came up to Stuart and said: "Don't  
say anything about it; but the dog wouldn't have bit  
you. He knows which side *we're* on in this war."

As we rode away, this young girl — she of the bull-dog  
— cried out: "To think the wretches made us give 'em 60  
dinner! And in their shirt-sleeves, too!"

Criticise the paragraphing of this story, and suggest improvements.

## REMARKS CONCERNING THE SAVAGES OF NORTH AMERICA

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN

Savages we call them, because their manners differ  
from ours, which we think the perfection of civility;  
they think the same of theirs.

Perhaps, if we could examine the manners of different  
nations with impartiality, we should find no people so 5  
rude as to be without any rules of politeness; or none  
so polite as not to have some remains of rudeness.

The Indian men, when young, are hunters and war-  
riors; when old, counsellors; for all their government is  
by the counsel or advice of the sages. There is no 10  
force, there are no prisons, no officers to compel obedi-  
ence or inflict punishment. Hence they generally study  
oratory, the best speaker having the most influence.  
The Indian women till the ground, dress the food, nurse  
and bring up the children, and preserve and hand down 15  
to posterity the memory of public transactions. These  
employments of men and women are accounted natural  
and honorable. Having few artificial wants, they have  
abundance of leisure for improvement by conversation.  
Our laborious manner of life, compared with theirs, 20

they esteem slavish and base and the learning on which we value ourselves they regard as frivolous and useless. An instance of this occurred at the treaty of Lancaster, in Pennsylvania, anno 1744, between the government of Virginia and the Six Nations. After the principal business was settled, the commissioners from Virginia acquainted the Indians by a speech, that there was at Williamsburg a college, with a fund for educating Indian youth; and that, if the chiefs of the Six Nations would send down half a dozen of their sons to that college, the government would take care that they should be well provided for, and instructed in all the learning of the white people. It is one of the Indian rules of politeness not to answer a public proposition the same day that it is made; they think this would be treating it as a light matter, and that they show it respect by taking time to consider it, as of a matter important. They therefore deferred their answer till the day following, when their speaker began by expressing their deep sense of the kindness of the Virginia government in making them that offer; "for we know," says he, "that you highly esteem the kind of learning taught in those colleges, and that the maintenance of our young men, while with you, would be very expensive to you. We are convinced, therefore, that you mean to do us good by your proposal, and we thank you heartily. But you, who are wise, must know that different nations have different conceptions of things; and you will therefore not take it amiss if our ideas of this kind of education happen not to be the same with yours. We have had some experience of it. Several of our young people were formerly brought up at the colleges of the northern provinces; they were instructed in all your sciences; but, when they came back to us, they were bad runners,



ignorant of every means of living in the woods, unable 55  
to bear either cold or hunger, knew neither how to build  
a cabin, take a deer, nor kill an enemy, spoke our  
language imperfectly; were therefore neither fit for  
hunters, warriors, nor counsellors; they were therefore  
totally good for nothing. We are however not the less 60  
obliged by your kind offer, though we decline accepting  
it; and, to show our grateful sense of it, if the gentle-  
men of Virginia will send us a dozen of their sons, we  
will take great care of their education, instruct them in  
all we know, and make *men* of them.” 65

Having frequent occasions to hold councils, they have  
acquired great order and decency in conducting them.  
The old men sit in the foremost ranks, the warriors in  
the next, and the women and children in the hindmost.  
The business of the women is to take exact notice of 70  
what passes, imprint it in their memories (for they have  
no writing), and communicate it to their children.  
They are the records of the council, and they preserve the  
tradition of the stipulations in treaties a hundred years  
back; which, when we compare with our writings, we 75  
always find exact. He that would speak rises. The  
rest observe a profound silence. When he has finished  
and sits down, they leave him five or six minutes to  
recollect that, if he has omitted anything he intended to  
say, or has anything to add, he may rise again and deliver 80  
it. To interrupt another, even in common conversation,  
is reckoned highly indecent. How different this is from  
the conduct of a polite British House of Commons,  
where scarce a day passes without some confusion that  
makes the speaker hoarse calling *to order*; and how 85  
different from the mode of conversation in many polite  
companies of Europe, where, if you do not deliver your  
sentence with great rapidity, you are cut off in the

middle of it by the impatient loquacity of those you converse with, and never suffered to finish it! 90

The politeness of these savages in conversation is indeed carried to excess, since it does not permit them to contradict or deny the truth of what is asserted in their presence. By this means they indeed avoid disputes; but then it becomes difficult to know their 95 minds, or what impression you make upon them. The missionaries who have attempted to convert them to Christianity all complain of this as one of the great difficulties of their mission. The Indians hear with patience the truths of the Gospel explained to them, 100 and give their usual tokens of assent and approbation. You would think they were convinced. No such matter. It is mere civility.

A Swedish minister, having assembled the chiefs of the Susquehanna Indians, made a sermon to them, acquainting them with the principal historical facts on 105 which our religion is founded, such as the fall of our first parents by eating an apple, the coming of Christ to repair the mischief, his miracles and suffering, etc. When he had finished, an Indian orator stood up to 110 thank him. "What you have told us," says he, "is all very good. It is indeed bad to eat apples. It is better to make them all into cider. We are much obliged by your kindness in coming so far to tell us those things which you have heard from your mothers. In return, I 115 will tell you some of those we have heard from ours. 'In the beginning, our fathers had only the flesh of animals to subsist on, and if their hunting was unsuccessful they were starving. Two of our young hunters, having killed a deer, made a fire in the woods to boil some 120 parts of it. When they were about to satisfy their hunger, they beheld a beautiful young woman descend .

from the clouds and seat herself on that hill which you see yonder among the Blue Mountains. They said to each other, "It is a spirit, that perhaps has smelt our broiling venison and wishes to eat of it; let us offer some to her." They presented her with the tongue; she was pleased with the taste of it, and said: "Your kindness shall be rewarded; come to this place after thirteen moons, and you will find something that will be of great benefit in nourishing you and your children to the latest generations." They did so, and, to their surprise, found plants they had never seen before, but which, from that ancient time, have been constantly cultivated among us to our great advantage. Where her right hand had touched the ground, they found maize; where her left had touched it, they found kidney-beans.' " The good missionary, disgusted with this idle tale, said: "What I delivered to you were sacred truths; but what you tell me is mere fable, fiction, and falsehood." The Indian, offended, replied: "My brother, it seems your friends have not done you justice in your education; they have not well instructed you in the rules of common civility. You saw that we, who understand and practise those rules, believed all your stories; why do you refuse to believe ours?"

When any of them come into our towns, our people are apt to crowd them, gaze upon them, and incommode them where they desire to be private; this they esteem great rudeness, and the effect of the want of instruction in the rules of civility and good manners. "We have," say they, "as much curiosity as you, and when you come into our towns we wish for opportunities of looking at you; but for this purpose we hide ourselves behind bushes where you are to pass, and never intrude ourselves into your company."

Their manner of entering one another's village has likewise its rules. It is reckoned uncivil in travelling strangers to enter a village abruptly without giving notice of their approach. Therefore, as soon as they arrive <sup>160</sup> within hearing they stop and hollow, remaining there until invited to enter. Two old men usually come out to them and lead them in. There is in every village a vacant dwelling, called *the strangers' house*. Here they are placed, while the old men go round from hut to hut <sup>165</sup> acquainting the inhabitants that strangers are arrived, who are probably hungry and weary; and every one sends them what he can spare of victuals, and skins to repose on. When the strangers are refreshed, pipes and tobacco are brought, and then, but not before, conversation <sup>170</sup> begins, with inquiries who they are, whither bound, what news, etc.; and it usually ends with offers of service, if the strangers have occasion for guides, or any necessities for continuing their journey; and nothing is exacted for the entertainment. <sup>175</sup>

The same hospitality, esteemed among them as a principal virtue, is practised by private persons, of which Conrad Weiser, our interpreter, gave me the following instance. He had been naturalized among the Six Nations, and spoke well the Mohawk language. In <sup>180</sup> going through the Indian country to carry a message from our governor to the council at Onondaga, he called at the habitation of Canassetego, an old acquaintance, who embraced him, spread furs for him to sit on, and placed before him some boiled beans and venison, and <sup>185</sup> mixed some rum and water for his drink. When he was well refreshed, and had lit his pipe, Canassetego began to converse with him; asked him how he had fared the many years since they had seen each other, whence he then came, what occasioned the journey, etc. Conrad <sup>190</sup>

answered all his questions; and when the discourse began to flag, the Indian, to continue it, said: "Conrad, you have lived long among the white people, and know something of their customs. I have been sometimes at Albany, and have observed that once in seven <sup>195</sup> days they shut up their shops and assemble all in the great house. Tell me what it is for? What do they do there?" "They meet there," says Conrad, "to hear and learn *good things*." "I do not doubt," says the Indian, "that they tell you so—they have told me the same; <sup>200</sup> but I doubt the truth of what they say, and I will tell you my reasons. I went lately to Albany to sell my skins and buy blankets, knives, powder, rum, etc. You know I used generally to deal with Hans Hanson; but I was a little inclined this time to try some other mer- <sup>205</sup> chants. However, I called first upon Hans, and asked him what he would give for beaver. He said he could not give any more than four shillings a pound; 'but,' says he, 'I cannot talk on business now: this is the day when we meet together to learn *good things*, and I am <sup>210</sup> going to meeting.' So I thought to myself, 'Since I cannot do any business to-day, I may as well go to the meeting too,' and I went with him. There stood up a man in black, and began to talk to the people very angrily. I did not understand what he said, but, per- <sup>215</sup> ceiving that he looked much at me and at Hanson, I imagined he was angry at seeing me there; so I went out, sat down near the house, struck fire and lit my pipe, waiting till the meeting should break up. I thought, too, that the man had mentioned something of beaver, <sup>220</sup> and I suspected it might be the subject of their meeting. So, when they came out, I accosted my merchant. 'Well, Hans,' says I, 'I hope you have agreed to give more than four shillings a pound.' 'No,' says he; 'I

cannot give so much; I cannot give more than three <sup>225</sup> shillings and sixpence.' I then spoke to several dealers, but they all sung the same song, — three and sixpence, — three and sixpence. This made it clear to me that my suspicion was right; and that, whatever they pretended of meeting to learn *good things*, the real purpose <sup>230</sup> was to consult how to cheat Indians in the price of beaver. Consider but a little, Conrad, and you must be of my opinion. If they met so often to learn *good things*, they would certainly have learned some before this time. But they are still ignorant. You know our <sup>235</sup> practice. If a white man, in travelling through our country, enters one of our cabins, we all treat him as I do you: we dry him if he is wet, we warm him if he is cold, and give him meat and drink, that he may allay his thirst and hunger, and we spread soft furs for him <sup>240</sup> to rest and sleep on. We demand nothing in return. But, if I go into a white man's house at Albany and ask for victuals and drink, they say, 'Where is your money?' and if I have none, they say, 'Get out, you Indian dog!' You see they have not learned those little <sup>245</sup> *good things* that we need no meetings to be instructed in, because our mothers taught them to us when we were children; and therefore it is impossible their meetings should be, as they say, for any such purpose, or have any such effect; they are only to contrive *the cheating of* <sup>250</sup> *Indians in the price of beaver.*"

## OMÀR AND THE PERSIAN

SARAH WILLIAMS

The victor stood beside the spoil, and by the grinning dead:  
"The land is ours, the foe is ours, now rest, my men," he  
said.

But while he spoke there came a band of foot-sore, panting  
men:

"The latest prisoner, my lord, we took him in the glen,  
And left behind dead hostages that we would come again." 5

The victor spoke: "Thou, Persian dog! hast cost more  
lives than thine.

That was thy will, and thou shouldst die full thrice, if I  
had mine.

Dost know thy fate, thy just reward?" The Persian bent  
his head,

"I know both sides of victory, and only grieve," he said,  
"Because there will be none to fight 'gainst thee when I am  
dead. 10

"No Persian faints at sight of Death, — we know his face  
too well, —

He waits for us on mountain side, in town, or shelter'd  
dell;

But I crave a cup of wine, thy first and latest boon,

For I have gone three days athirst, and fear lest I may  
swoon,

Or even wrong mine enemy, by dying now, too soon." 15

The cup was brought; but ere he drank the Persian  
shudder'd white.

Omàr replied, "What fearest thou? The wine is clear and  
bright;

We are no poisoners, not we, nor traitors to a guest,

No dart behind, nor dart within, shall pierce thy gallant  
breast;

Till thou hast drain'd the draught, O foe, thou dost in  
safety rest." 20

The Persian smil'd, with parched lips, upon the foemen  
round,

Then pour'd the precious liquid out, untasted, on the  
ground.

"Till that is drunk, I live," said he, "and while I live, I  
fight;

So, see you to your victory, for 'tis undone this night;  
Omàr the worthy, battle fair is but thy godlike right." 25

Upsprang a wrathful army then, — Omàr restrain'd them  
all,

Upon no battlefield had rung more clear his martial call,  
The dead men's hair beside his feet as by a breeze was  
stirr'd,

The farthest henchman in the camp the noble mandate  
heard:

"Hold! if there be a sacred thing, it is the warrior's  
word." 30

## THE OCTOPUS OF THE GOLDEN ISLES<sup>1</sup>

THEODORE WATTS-DUNTON

"What! Will they even strike at *me*?"

Round many an Isle of Song, in seas serene,  
With many a swimmer strove the poet-boy,  
Yet strove in love: their strength, I say, was joy  
To him, my friend — dear friend of godlike mien!  
But soon he felt beneath the billowy green 5  
A monster moving — moving to destroy:  
Limb after limb became the tortured toy  
Of coils that clung and lips that stung unseen.

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from "The Coming of Love, and Other Poems," by permission of Mr. John Lane.



" *And can'st thou strike ev'n me ?* " the swimmer said,  
 As rose above the waves the deadly eyes, 10  
 Arms flecked with mouths that hissed in hellish wise,  
 Quivering in hate around a hateful head. —  
 I saw him fight old Envy's sorceries :  
 I saw him sink : the man I loved is dead !

Does this sonnet, like the former one by the same author, break naturally into the octave and the sestet, devoting each to a distinct phase of the theme?

### THE CHURL IN SPIRIT

ALFRED, LORD TENNYSON

The churl in spirit, up or down  
 Along the scale of ranks, thro' all,  
 To him who grasps a golden ball,  
 By blood a king, at heart a clown ;  
  
 The churl in spirit, howe'er he veil 5  
 His want in forms for fashion's sake,  
 Will let his coltish nature break  
 At seasons thro' the gilded pale :  
  
 For who can always act ? but he,  
 To whom a thousand memories call, 10  
 Not being less but more than all  
 The gentleness he seem'd to be,  
  
 Best seem'd the thing he was, and join'd  
 Each office of the social hour  
 To noble manners, as the flower 15  
 And native growth of noble mind ;

3. The student will perhaps remember statues of Roman emperors holding in the hand a sphere, signifying the earth.

Nor ever narrowness or spite,  
 Or villain fancy fleeting by,  
 Drew in the expression of an eye,  
 Where God and Nature met in light;

20

And thus he bore without abuse  
 The grand old name of gentleman,  
 Defamed by every charlatan,  
 And soil'd with all ignoble use.

In what other poem appeared the same rhyme-scheme? Tennyson made this stanza famous.

## THE END OF THE PLAY

WILLIAM MAKEPEACE THACKERAY

The play is done — the curtain drops,  
 Slow falling to the prompter's bell;  
 A moment yet the actor stops,  
 And looks around, to say farewell.  
 It is an irksome word and task;  
 And, when he's laugh'd and said his say,  
 He shows, as he removes the mask,  
 A face that's anything but gay.

5

One word, ere yet the evening ends:  
 Let's close it with a parting rhyme,  
 And pledge a hand to all young friends,  
 As fits the merry Christmas time;  
 On life's wide scene you, too, have parts,  
 That fate ere long shall bid you play;  
 Good-night! — with honest gentle hearts  
 A kindly greeting go away!

10

15

Good-night! — I'd say the griefs, the joys,  
Just hinted in this mimic page,  
The triumphs and defeats of boys,  
Are but repeated in our age; 20  
I'd say your woes were not less keen,  
Your hopes more vain, than those of men,  
Your pangs or pleasures of fifteen  
At forty-five played o'er again.

I'd say we suffer and we strive 25  
Not less nor more as men than boys,  
With grizzled beards at forty-five,  
As erst at twelve in corduroys.  
And if, in time of sacred youth,  
We learn'd at home to love and pray, 30  
Pray Heaven that early love and truth  
May never wholly pass away.

And in the world, as in the school,  
I'd say how fate may change and shift,—  
The prize be sometimes with the fool, 35  
The race not always to the swift;  
The strong may yield, the good may fall,  
The great man be a vulgar clown,  
The knave be lifted over all,  
The kind cast pitilessly down. 40

Who knows the inscrutable design?  
Blessed be He who took and gave!  
Why should your mother, Charles, not mine,  
Be weeping at her darling's grave?

27. How old was Thackeray when he died? See the Chronological Table.

We bow to Heaven that will'd it so, 45  
That darkly rules the fate of all,  
That sends the respite or the blow,  
That's free to give or to recall.

So shall each mourn, in life's advance,  
Dear hopes, dear friends, untimely kill'd, 50  
Shall grieve for many a forfeit chance,  
And longing passion unfulfill'd.  
Amen! — whatever fate be sent,  
Pray God the heart may kindly glow,  
Although the head with cares be bent, 55  
And whiten'd with the winter snow.

Come wealth or want, come good or ill,  
Let young and old accept their part,  
And bow before the awful will,  
And bear it with an honest heart. 60  
Who misses or who wins the prize —  
Go, lose or conquer as you can;  
But if you fail, or if you rise,  
Be each, pray God, a gentleman.

A gentleman, or old or young! 65  
(Bear kindly with my humble lays);  
The sacred chorus first was sung  
Upon the first of Christmas days;  
The shepherds heard it overhead —  
The joyful angels rais'd it then: 70  
Glory to heaven on high, it said,  
And peace on earth to gentle men!

My song, save this, is little worth;  
I lay the weary pen aside,  
And wish you health, and love, and mirth,       75  
As fits the solemn Christmas-tide.  
As fits the holy Christmas birth,  
Be this, good friends, our carol still:  
Be peace on earth, be peace on earth,  
To men of gentle will.       80

---

**Plan of Summary.** — Reviewing the chapter, (1) enumerate the kinds of metre, designating them by the number of accents and by the predominant foot. Then (2) say which poem is most noticeable for melody; (3) which for beauty of suggested sights; (4) which for pleasure of suggested sounds; (5) which for pleasure of suggested activity; (6) which for pleasure of suggested odors or tastes; (7) which is most easily understood; (8) which moves the reader most deeply; (9) which shows most skill in character drawing; (10) which has the best unity; (11) which, your critical judgment tells you, is the best piece of work; (12) which you like the best, — without regard to its deserved rank, or its fame.

## CHAPTER IX

### WIT AND HUMOR<sup>1</sup>

It is an interesting question to ask ourselves why we laugh. Certainly it is not always because the thing laughed at is funny. People in an audience will guffaw at a joke so poor as to deserve tears; they would not smile if they saw the same stale jest in the morning paper. When people are tired or nervously weak, they laugh at nothing, and we call them hysterical; of this order are the giggling boy and the giggling girl. When a student is at work over an algebraic problem, he sees nothing funny in the mathematical puzzle he is trying to solve. He is very serious indeed, poring with knitted brows over the task. Yet presently when the answer is found, and particularly if it is found in an unexpected way, the brows unbend and a smile breaks out upon the face. Still the answer is not amusing.

The student smiled when the nervous tension of searching for the answer was relaxed. The answer came as a pleasant surprise. Similarly the audience laughed at the poor joke because the tension of expectation ceased. A pleasant relaxing of attention or a pleasant surprise usually produces a smile.

What we call the sense of the ridiculous has in it a great deal of this surprise element. When Patrick Henry exclaimed, "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third—may profit by their example!" he saved himself by a stroke of wit from being

<sup>1</sup> For several anecdotes in this chapter the editor is indebted to Walter Jerrold's "Bon Mots of the Nineteenth Century."

called a traitor. We may be sure his hearers laughed. So did the attendants who, having repeatedly dipped the invalid Charles Lamb into cold water, learned at last that, if they had given the stammering patient time, he would have said, "I was to be di-di-di-dipped only *once*." When Bret Harte's soldier said, "I was with Grant," — the old farmer thought himself face to face with a comrade of his son. He was ridiculously surprised when the stranger, having eaten a good dinner at the farmer's expense, explained that he had worked for Grant some years before the war.

Lamb's  
Salt Dips,  
p. 376.

There is nothing so surprising, and therefore so funny, as to find a thing quite out of its place. If one should see a cow jumping over the moon he would feel that the situation was unnatural for the cow and for the moon. What is called wit consists largely in seeing things or imagining things out of place. What is called a pun is putting the wrong word into a given place because it sounds like the word which really belongs there. Good puns are rare. Two of the three in the following anecdote, told by Mr. Walter Jerrold, are good, the other poor.

As an "elaborately dressed young lady stepped out on the hotel piazza to admire the sunset, a friend whispered to Oliver Wendell Holmes, 'The young lady is in evening dress.'

"'The *close* of the day, my dear sir,' remarked Holmes.

"'That's Holmes' pun,' was the reply.

"'I'm worsted,' added the poet."

The intentional pun is not so funny as the unintentional. Sheridan's Mrs. Malaprop was an adept in the latter species. She wouldn't wish a daughter of hers to become a progeny of learning, but would have her instructed in geometry, that she might know something of contagious countries.

Mrs. Malaprop on  
Education  
for Girls,  
p. 378.

Very like punning is the kind of surprise produced by intentional bad spelling. It is rather a low form of wit,

but now and then a man like Artemus Ward could make it irresistible. His "amoosin' grate show" of one kangaroo was droll enough until every country newspaper began to imitate the method of the fun. Thackeray makes use of bad spelling to burlesque the sentimental love-poetry of his day. The conventional love-lorn youth, apostrophizing the heartless fair who has jilted him for rank and wealth, is displaced in Thackeray's poem by a footman. The latter says exactly what the lover would say, but he spells the words in footman style. He makes a single slip in his use of adjectives: instead of saying "weeping eyes" he says "weeping lips." A careful reader finds that the best thing in the poem.

When  
Moonlike  
ore the  
Hazure  
Seas,  
p. 378.

Now and then the pun is used with great effect for purposes of satire. When Mr. Kipling was a very young man he poured forth great numbers of magazine stories. His fertility did not escape the satire of the late James Kenneth Stephen, who longed for the day "When the Rudyards cease from kipling." Douglas Jerrold said to a writer, "Why, Chorley, your hair's red; your waistcoat's red; your necktie's red; — in fact everything about you is red except your books." One of the most effective forms of satirical wit is irony. This may be illustrated by Mr. Gilbert's congratulation of an Englishman for condescending to be born an Englishman.

Lapsus  
Calami,  
p. 379.

Wit has often been directed against dull poetry. Alexander Pope, in the early eighteenth century, wrote a long poem called *The Dunciad*, in which he flayed all his poetaster rivals, singling out one — Shadwell — as the prince of the dunces. In our own day, Lowell has plied his wit upon American writers in his *Fable for Critics*. In this poem he has a fling against even himself: —

He is an  
English-  
man,  
p. 380.

There is Lowell, who's striving Parnassus to climb  
With a whole bale of *isms* tied together with rhyme.



He might get on alone, spite of brambles and boulders,  
 But he can't with that bundle he has on his shoulders.  
 The top of the hill he will ne'er come nigh reaching  
 Till he learns the distinction 'twixt singing and preaching;  
 His lyre has some chords that would ring pretty well;  
 But he'd rather by half make a drum of the shell,  
 And rattle away till he's old as Methusalem,  
 At the head of a march to the last new Jerusalem.

Here Lowell is remembering the morals he drew from the dandelion, from Sir Launfal, and from many other poetic themes. Lowell felt, with Dr. Garnett, that poetry with a deliberate moral — didactic, or preaching poetry — is not poetry at all; a mule is a mule, no matter what he carries on his back. Lowell wrote a bright satire on didactic poetry, pretending that it originated with the goddess Minerva, who put Jove himself to sleep with it.

The Didactic Poem,  
 p. 380.

Wit is the keenest of weapons. It is, indeed, often cruel and heartless. Napoleon said that "a victory could no more be made without sacrificing men than an omelette without eggs." Similarly the joker thinks that somebody must pay the expense of his jokes. When, however, the biter is bitten, we rejoice; severe repartee is the sweetest of morsels to everybody save one. "A Vienna lady visiting England remarked to Lord Dudley, 'What wretchedly bad French you all speak in London!' 'It is true, madame,' he answered, 'we have not enjoyed the advantage of having the French twice in our capital.'" Even when there is no reasonable justification of the retort, the mere fact of its wittiness will sometimes take the place of reason. "At the East India House the head of the office once reproved Lamb for the excessive irregularity of his attendance. 'Really, Mr. Lamb, you come very late!' observed the official. 'Y-yes,' replied Lamb, with his habitual stammer; 'b-but consi-sider how ear-early I go!'"

It is in rude stages of civilization that the wit which has no personal sting is thought to be no wit. Thus, all savage tribes find personal deformity funny. When Shakspeare wished to make a study of insanity, in Hamlet, he found that his audience—an audience of only three hundred years ago—regarded insanity as comic. To this day a drunken man is laughed at even when, having passed the early stages of his drunken fit, he lies in the gutter, a shame to his race. D'Orsay, the famous dandy, "was irritated at receiving anonymously some offensive verses sealed with a wafer and thimble. These verses caused great laughter at the Beau's expense; D'Orsay, however, had a shrewd idea as to their author, a would-be dandy, deeply marked by small-pox; and meeting him at a club he called out to him, 'The next time, *mon cher*, that you write an anonymous letter, don't seal it with the end of your nose.' " There can be no doubt that D'Orsay's joke was a bit funny. The trouble is that he lacked the gentlemanly sympathy which would have prevented the funny side of the case from presenting itself to his mind. The true gentleman, as Dr. Theodore Munger says, "simply does not see deformity";<sup>1</sup> or, if he does, he reasons to himself that it is only by the grace of God that he himself is free from the same. For that matter, every one probably has something like deformity. Our eyes are bad, or our blood is pale, or somewhere in our system there is a disease slowly developing. We can very properly laugh at the physical inadequacy of our race. Little man takes his gun and goes forth to hunt the red deer and the wild-fowl; meantime some "fearful wild-fowl" like the microbe of malaria starts out in millions to hunt little man. If looked at in a certain way, even little man is something of a joke.

<sup>1</sup> "On the Threshold."

Several distinctions are usually made between wit and humor. For example wit originates bright, sharp expressions, while humor merely appreciates them. General Grant liked a good story, but he rarely tried to tell one. Another distinction is that wit often spends itself in word-play, while humor spreads itself over a general situation. For example, Charles Lamb, having dined very heartily with a company, and afterwards squeezed into a coach with them, sat appreciating the pervading humor of the situation. When presently some one without shouted, "All full within?" Lamb's wit burst forth. "I can't answer for the others, but that last piece of pudding did the business for me."

Wit and humor are alike in enjoying an exaggeration of the truth, but this form of the ridiculous is chiefly a matter of humor. Americans are supposed to supply this kind of joke; but some of the best things in British humor are of the same order. Lamb declared of a certain man, "He'd throw a d-damp upon a-a-a funeral!" "Lamb said that on one occasion he met Coleridge in the street. Coleridge took hold of his friend by the button of his coat and began telling something in his long-drawn-out manner, discussing perhaps one of those questions of 'fate, free-will, foreknowledge absolute,' of which he was so fond. Elia,<sup>1</sup> who was on his way to the India House, had no time for discussion, so he took out his penknife, cut the button off his coat, and, leaving it in Coleridge's hand, continued his way. On his return some hours later, says Elia, he found Coleridge still holding the button, and holding forth to his imagined auditor." It is hard to say which are the calmer and drier, the exaggerations of Dr. Holmes or those of the Rev. Dr. Sydney Smith, the one a Yankee, the other an

<sup>1</sup> Elia (pronounced *El'lia*) was Lamb's literary name, or pseudonym.

The Height  
of the  
Ridiculous,  
p. 381.

Englishman. Dr. Holmes tells the story of the wonderful one-hoss shay that was built so evenly well as to be logically unable to wear out. Again, he says that for years he has not dared to write "as funny as he can," since the time when his doing so almost cost the life of a servant. Elsewhere he adapts the old legend of a headsman whose victims had to sneeze in order to know whether they were already decapitated. Sydney Smith tells of the wonders of Ceylon, where musk is so strong as to infect bottled wine, and a leaf of the talipot tree shelters ten soldiers.

The Pro-  
ductions of  
Ceylon,  
p. 382.

The most important of the distinctions between wit and humor is the following. Humor is closely allied to pathos, wit is usually not. Humor is a feeling, more than an intellectual perception; wit is a cold, intellectual process. Dickens is a great humorist; he makes us laugh and cry in the same breath. His street boys are funny things, but they touch our hearts. Charles Lamb was both wit and humorist, but we value his puns far less than the skilful mixture of comic and pathetic in his praise of chimney-sweepers (cf. page 343). Dr. Holmes, like Lamb, knew the secret of making the lips smile while there is a lump in the throat. The exquisite humor of *The Last Leaf* proves this.

The Last  
Leaf,  
p. 384.

## LAMB'S SALT DIPS

WALTER JERROLD

Lamb had been medically advised to take a course of sea-bathing; and, accordingly, at the door of his bathing machine, whilst he stood shivering with the cold, two stout fellows laid hold of him, one at each shoulder, like heraldic supporters; they waited for the word of command from their principals, who began the following oration to them: —

"Hear me, men! Take notice of this — I am to be dipped." What more he would have said is unknown, for having reached the word "dipped," he commenced 10 such a rolling fire of di-di-di-di, that when at length he descended *à plomb* upon the full word *dipped*, the two men, rather tired of the long suspense, became satisfied that they had reached what lawyers call the "operative clause" of the sentence; and both exclaiming, "Oh yes, 15 sir, we are quite aware of that," down they plunged him into the sea.

On emerging, Lamb sobbed so much from the cold that he found no voice suitable to his indignation; from necessity he seemed tranquil; and again addressing the 20 men, who stood respectfully listening, he began thus: —

"Men! is it possible to obtain your attention?"

"Oh, surely, sir, by all means."

"Then listen; — once more I tell you I am to be di-di-di-di-," and then, with a burst of indignation, 25 "dipped, I tell you."

"Oh, decidedly, sir," rejoined the men, "decidedly," and down the stammerer went for a second time.

Petrified with cold and wrath, once more Lamb made a feeble attempt at explanation : — 30

"Grant me pa-pa-patience! Is it mum-um-murder you me-me-ean? Again, and again I tell you I'm to be di-di-di-dipped," now speaking furiously, with the tone of an injured man.

"Oh yes, sir," the men replied, "we know that; we 35 fully understood it;" and, for the third time, down went Lamb into the sea.

"O limbs of Satan!" he said, on coming up for the third time, "it's now too late; I tell you that I am — no, that I was — by medical direction, to be di-di-di- 40 dipped only *once*."

## MRS. MALAPROP ON EDUCATION FOR GIRLS

RICHARD BRINSLEY SHERIDAN

*Sir Anthony Absolute.* Why, Mrs. Malaprop, in moderation now, what would you have a woman know?

*Mrs. Malaprop.* Observe me, Sir Anthony, I would by no means wish a daughter of mine to be a progeny of learning; I don't think so much learning becomes a young woman; for instance, I would never let her meddle with Greek or Hebrew, or algebra, or simony, or fluxions, or paradoxes, or such inflammatory branches of learning—neither would it be necessary for her to handle any of your mathematical, astronomical, dia-  
bolical instruments. But, Sir Anthony, I would send her, at nine years old, to a boarding-school in order to learn a little ingenuity and artifice. Then, sir, she should have a supercilious knowledge in accounts; and as she grew up, I would have her instructed in geometry,  
that she might know something of contagious countries. But above all, Sir Anthony, she should be mistress of orthodoxy, that she might not mis-spell and mis-pronounce words so shamefully as girls usually do; and likewise that she might reprehend the true meaning of  
what she is saying. This, Sir Anthony, is what I would have a woman know, —and I don't think there is a superstitious article in it.

## WHEN MOONLIKE ORE THE HAZURE SEAS

WILLIAM MAKEPEACE THACKERAY

When moonlike ore the hazure seas  
In soft effulgence swells,  
When silver jews and balmy breeze  
Bend down the Lily's bells;

When calm and deap, the rosy sleep                         5  
Has lapt your soal in dreems,  
R Hangeline! R lady mine!  
Dost thou remember Jeames?

I mark thee in the Marble All,  
Where England's loveliest shine —                    10  
I say the fairest of them hall  
Is Lady Hangeline.

My soul, in desolate eclipse,  
With recollection teems —  
And then I hask, with weeping lips,                 15  
Dost thou remember Jeames?

Away! I may not tell thee hall  
 This soughring heart endures —  
 There is a lonely sperrit-call  
 That Sorrow never cures;  
 There is a little, little Star,  
 That still above me beams;  
 It is the Star of Hope — but ar!  
 Dost thou remember Jeames?

## LAPSUS CALAMI

TO R. K.

JAMES KENNETH STEPHEN

Will there never come a season  
Which shall rid us from the curse  
Of a prose which knows no reason  
And an unmelodious verse:  
When the world shall cease to wonder                 5  
At the genius of an ass,  
And a boy's eccentric blunder  
Shall not bring success to pass:

When mankind shall be delivered  
 From the clash of magazines, 10  
 And the inkstand shall be shivered  
 Into countless smithereens:  
 When there stands a muzzled stripling,  
 Mute, beside a muzzled bore:  
 When the Rudyards cease from kipling 15  
 And the Haggards ride no more.

## HE IS AN ENGLISHMAN

WILLIAM SCHWENK GILBERT

He is an Englishman,  
 For he himself has said it,  
 And it's greatly to his credit  
 That he is an Englishman.  
 For he might have been a Roosian, 5  
 A French, or Turk, or Proosian,  
 Or perhaps Ital-i-an;  
 But in spite of all temptations  
 To belong to other nations,  
 He remains an Englishman. 10

## THE DIDACTIC POEM

RICHARD GARNETT

Soulless, colorless strain, thy words are the words of  
 wisdom.  
 Is not a mule a mule, bear he a burden of gold?



## THE HEIGHT OF THE RIDICULOUS

OLIVER WENDELL HOLMES

I wrote some lines once on a time  
In wondrous merry mood,  
And thought, as usual, men would say  
They were exceeding good.

They were so queer, so very queer, 5  
I laughed as I would die;  
Albeit, in the general way,  
A sober man am I.

I called my servant, and he came;  
How kind it was of him, 10  
To mind a slender man like me,  
He of the mighty limb!

"These to the printer," I exclaimed,  
And, in my humorous way,  
I added (as a trifling jest), 15  
"There'll be the devil to pay."

He took the paper, and I watched,  
And saw him peep within;  
At the first line he read, his face  
Was all upon the grin. 20

He read the next; the grin grew broad,  
And shot from ear to ear.  
He read the third; a chuckling noise  
I now began to hear.

The fourth; he broke into a roar;  
The fifth; his waistband split;  
The sixth; he burst five buttons off,  
And tumbled in a fit.

25

Ten days and nights, with sleepless eye,  
I watched that wretched man,  
And since, I never dare to write  
As funny as I can.

30

## THE PRODUCTIONS OF CEYLON

SYDNEY SMITH

Ceylon produces the elephant, the buffalo, tiger, elk, wild hog, rabbit, hare, flying-fox, and musk-rat. Many articles are rendered entirely useless by the smell of musk, which this latter animal communicates in merely running over them. Mr. Percival asserts, and the fact has been confirmed to us by the most respectable authority, that if it even pass over a bottle of wine, however well corked and sealed up, the wine becomes so strongly tainted with musk, that it cannot be used; and a whole cask may be rendered useless in the same manner. Among the great variety of birds, we were struck with Mr. Percival's account of the honey-bird, into whose body the soul of a common informer appears to have migrated. It makes a loud and shrill noise, to attract the notice of anybody whom it may perceive; and thus inducing him to follow the course it points out, leads him to the tree where the bees have concealed their treasure; after the apiary has been robbed, this

5

10

15

feathered scoundrel gleans his reward from the hive. The list of Ceylonese snakes is hideous; and we become <sup>20</sup> reconciled to the crude and cloudy land in which we live, from reflecting, that the indiscriminate activity of the sun generates what is loathsome, as well as what is lovely; that the asp reposes under the rose; and the scorpion crawls under the fragrant flower and the <sup>25</sup> luscious fruit.

The usual stories are repeated here of the immense size and voracious appetite of a certain species of serpent. The best history of this kind we ever remember to have read, was of a serpent killed near one of our <sup>30</sup> settlements, in the East Indies, in whose body they found the chaplain of the garrison, all in black, the Rev. Mr. ——— somebody or other, whose name we have forgotten, and who, after having been missing for above a week, was discovered in this very inconvenient situation. <sup>35</sup> The dominions of the King of Candy are partly defended by leeches, which abound in the woods, and from which our soldiers suffered in the most dreadful manner. The Ceylonese, in compensation for their animated plagues, are endowed with two vegetable blessings, the cocoanut <sup>40</sup> tree and the talipot tree. The latter affords a prodigious leaf, impenetrable to sun or rain, and large enough to shelter ten men. It is a natural umbrella, and is of as eminent service in that country as a great-coat tree would be in this. A leaf of the talipot tree is <sup>45</sup> a tent to the soldier, a parasol to the traveller, and a book to the scholar. The cocoanut tree affords bread, milk, oil, wine, spirits, vinegar, yeast, sugar, cloth, paper, huts, and ships.

Which sentences are serious, which humorous? Use care in judging of the last in the selection.

## THE LAST LEAF

I saw him once before  
As he passed by the door,  
    And again  
The pavement stones resound,  
As he totters o'er the ground  
    With his cane. 5

They say that in his prime,  
Ere the pruning-knife of Time  
    Cut him down,  
Not a better man was found 10  
By the Crier on his round  
    Through the town.

But now he walks the streets,  
And he looks at all he meets  
    Sad and wan, 15  
And he shakes his feeble head,  
That it seems as if he said,  
    "They are gone."

The mossy marbles rest  
On the lips that he has prest 20  
    In their bloom,  
And the names he loved to hear  
Have been carved for many a year  
    On the tomb.

My grandmamma has said — 25  
Poor old lady, she is dead  
    Long ago —

That he had a Roman nose,  
And his cheek was like a rose  
In the snow. 30

But now his nose is thin,  
And it rests upon his chin  
Like a staff,  
And a crook is in his back  
And a melancholy crack 35  
In his laugh.

I know it is a sin  
For me to sit and grin  
At him here;  
But the old three-cornered hat, 40  
And the breeches, and all that,  
Are so queer!

And if I should live to be  
The last leaf upon the tree  
In the spring, 45  
Let them smile as I do now,  
At the old forsaken bough  
Where I cling.

The skill shown in the metre and rhymes is very great. The exquisite fourth stanza is as natural as conversation. The poem is eminently worth learning.

**Plan of Summary.** — Reviewing the chapter, (1) enumerate the kinds of metre, designating them by the number of accents, and by the predominant foot. Then (2) say which poem is most noticeable for melody; (3) which for beauty of suggested sights; (4) which for pleasure of suggested sounds; (5) which for pleasure of suggested activity; (6) which for pleasure of suggested odors or tastes; (7) which is most easily understood; (8) which moves the reader most deeply; (9) which shows most skill in character drawing; (10) which has the best unity; (11) which, your critical judgment tells you, is the best piece of work; (12) which you like the best, — without regard to its deserved rank, or its fame.

## CHAPTER X

### THE FAR GOAL

AT fifteen life seems very long. To be of that age is like being up very early in the morning. If man's life of seventy years be likened to the day of twenty-four hours, then when one is fifteen years old it is only five o'clock in the morning. At that time of day, what may one not expect to happen before night!

The golden plans of the youth have always been dear to the poet, for the latter recognizes in them much that is of high promise. Even if the things dreamed of are very vague, still they are not to be despised. The boy who never owns air castles will never own granite castles. Lowell, in his poem of Aladdin, regrets the passing of the day when he possessed many a golden-roofed palace of dream-stuff. George William Curtis, in a very beautiful essay, lingers over his Spanish châteaux with the same affectionate remembrance. He finds that he is not the only man who holds large possessions in the sunset clouds. All around him are these capitalists, some happy in their dreams, though these never come true, some soured and sad because they can never reach their cloud-land estates.

There are countless dreams that must come to naught, for we know very little of human nature, and less of the plans of Providence. We expect to find money-making, or learning, or truth-telling, easier than these things are. We are constantly surprised to observe how rapidly our own wishes change. We tie ourselves down to a certain

place, expecting to pass our days there; next week we wonder why we ever set foot in that place. Nevertheless, dreams are a good thing. If we are sanguine about nothing, how shall we get anything done? If we do not believe there is much goodness in human nature, how shall we find any? Suppose life does cheat us and bully us; cheats and bullies can sometimes be bettered, and at heart they are never wholly bad.

The chief value of a dream, however, lies in the action that grows out of it when it is fading. This is the thought in Charles Kingsley's *One Grand Sweet Song*. When young people begin to awake from their day-dreams, they abandon the hope of reaching quite all their air-castles, but they have learned how to look ahead to a far goal. What can be said of this far goal as a sober possibility? Much, as we shall see.

One Grand  
Sweet  
Song,  
p. 397.

One of the main differences between the beast and the savage is that the latter is the more provident, looks farther ahead. The same difference holds in turn between the savage and the civilized man. The higher up we look, the more dread do we find of living from hand to mouth. The poor white trash who never know where their next meal is to come from are immeasurably the inferiors of men like the old fur-trader Astor, who see ahead for months and years. Such prudence sacrifices, if necessary, the happiness of the present moment to the future gain. We avoid excess of sweets to-day that we may have our teeth ten years hence. Shakspeare's old Adam, in *As You Like It*, declares that his old age is as a lusty winter because in youth he did not woo the means of weakness and debility. From this point of view virtue means foregoing a present pleasure in view of a greater one to come. Heaven itself is to be had for a small investment; and yet the famous Elizabethan poet Spenser had to argue himself into tak-

Sweet is the  
Rose,  
p. 397.

ing no account of the little pain that buys an endless pleasure.

On the whole, education is one of the most nobly prudent institutions that the human race has managed to develop. Going to school may be said to have two prime objects; objects like the mere acquisition of knowledge are secondary. The first prime object is to find out what one is good for in life, — to discover one's goal. The second is to get the strength to pursue that goal.

It is extraordinarily easy not to find out what one is good for. Relatives tried to make a merchant out of Irving, but his firm failed and a great humorist was thus rescued for the world. Relatives tried to make a lawyer out of Lowell, but he insisted that he was "a bookman" by nature, and a bookman he became. The number of able men who have missed their calling or have lacked the circumstances which develop great possibilities is hinted at in three famous stanzas of Gray's *Elegy Written in a Country Church Yard*.

Some persons miss their calling by a hasty choice, for which years will not atone. Others miss it from neglecting opportunity, and these are probably the larger number. The well-advised youth will seize on just the right chance, as Longfellow's artist seized upon the burning brand of oak from which to shape his image, or as the prince in Sill's poem seized the weapon a coward threw down: —

Then came the king's son, wounded, sore bestead,  
And weaponless, and saw the broken sword,  
Hilt-buried in the dry and trodden sand,  
And ran and snatched it, and with battle-shout  
Lifted afresh he hewed his enemy down,  
And saved a great cause that heroic day.

The second chief aim of going to school is to learn how, by training of will and intellect, to attain the far goal. Of these two forms of training, the first is the more important,



because it brings about the second, too. Tennyson exclaims, "O well for him whose will is strong." Truly. Will, p. 399. But will is like anything else in human nature—it may be cultivated. Just as an inaccurate person may become accurate, so a weak-willed person may become strong-willed. The secret lies in a habit of doing somewhat hard things. It does not matter so much what the things are. The point is that when the resolve has been made to do something a little hard, it must be carried into effect at once. The power of habit is brilliantly explained in a piece of prose by William James, a distinguished professor of psychology. Habit, p. 400. The nobility of a habit of self-restraint is the subject of Emerson's poem called *Forbearance*. Forbearance, p. 401.

Progress toward any goal seems slow if the goal is distant. The goal of a chicken is soon reached, and therefore nature gives him the satisfaction of seeming to get on fast. He can run alone as soon as he is out of the shell. The man's goal is infinitely distant, and therefore, as Professor John Fiske has shown, nature must give man a long infancy, developing one power at a time. The baby may not be able to run alone when a day old, but the time will come when he will be worth a wilderness of chickens. The strongest nations have been those which have developed slowly. Precocity is as dangerous a sign in a people as in a boy. See the deliberation with which the Saxon race has spread, "winning by inches, holding by clinches"—as Robert Collyer puts it.

A person who grows is not much conscious of the fact except as others tell him, or he looks back upon what he was long since. This is the thought in Clough's *Say not, the Struggle nought Availeth*. In the east the sun climbs slowly, but while you look at his imperceptible ascent the western land behind you has become bright. It is a curious fact that we think ourselves to-day the same persons Say not, the Struggle nought Availeth, p. 401

The Ladder of Saint Augustine, p. 402.

we were ten years ago. Yet to our friends we were probably very different then, and, the chances are, much more disagreeable. By exercise of the will we do come after a while to the acquisition of power. The great theologian of the early Latin church put this truth into poetic form when he declared that every evil impulse conquered may be made a round in a ladder. Longfellow has set Augustine's thought in good verse.

It is desirable to find out what one is good for in life; it is delightful to find out that one is good for something more than one thought. The boy who aims to get a year of school-life (it must not be forgotten that school *is* life) does well if by Christmas he learns that he cannot get along without two years. The girl who wishes to be a nurse does well if she discloses real capacity for being a doctor. The youth who goes into business is fortunate if he early learns that he must have more training, more sympathy with education, and science, and civic life, and religion, and literature, and art, if he is to be a man among men, or capable of enjoying his money. He is a human being before he is a business man. If he does not learn this he will become a mere cog in the world's machinery.

Dr. Holmes's best poem has aspiration for its theme. He saw one day a section of the shell called the chambered nautilus. While wondering at the delicacy of its irised interior, he reflected on the way the spiral grew. The dim, dreaming life of the little tenant spent itself in building each year a new and larger cell. It

Stole with soft step the shining archway through,  
Built up its idle door,  
Stretched in its last-found home, and knew the old no more.

The sight of this series of abandoned dwellings stirs within the poet a high aspiration, and he calls upon his soul to

forget the low ideals of the past, and to build a statelier mansion with each returning season.

Whittier has a poem on this theme, or one very similar. He and his friends pursued through the woods the noise of a waterfall, and seemed to catch glimpses of its signals, the white scarfs of its foam; but, search as they would, the waterfall eluded them. Meantime however they had seen every other lovely thing the landscape afforded.

The final poem in this chapter has a very different conception from any of the others. The figure of struggle and battle used so often before is now changed for the peaceful flight of a bird. The goal of a life sometimes seems too far away to be reached. Moving toward it is like moving through trackless air. Bryant asks of the Water-Fowl, whither lies its way through the depths of the evening sky. The bird could not answer if it heard. It cannot see the distant lake toward which it is moving steadily and swiftly. The bird is being guided by a Power. It is lone-wandering, but not lost.

To a  
Water-  
Fowl,  
p. 404.

## MY CHÂTEAUX<sup>1</sup>

GEORGE WILLIAM CURTIS

In Xanadu did Kubla Khan

A stately pleasure-dome decree. — COLERIDGE.

I am the owner of great estates. Many of them lie in the West, but the greater part are in Spain. You may see my western possessions any evening at sunset, when their spires and battlements flash against the horizon.

It gives me a feeling of pardonable importance, as a proprietor, that they are visible, to my eyes at least, from any part of the world in which I chance to be. In my

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from "Prue and I," by permission of Harper and Brothers.

long voyage around the Cape of Good Hope to India (the only voyage I ever made, when I was a boy and a super-cargo), if I fell homesick, or sank into a revery of all the pleasant homes I had left behind, I had but to wait until sunset, and then looking toward the west, I beheld my clustering pinnacles and towers brightly burnished as if to salute and welcome me. 10

So, in the city, if I get vexed and wearied, and cannot find my wonted solace in sallying forth at dinner-time to contemplate the gay world of youth and beauty hurrying to the congress of fashion — or if I observe that years are deepening their tracks around the eyes of my wife, Prue, I go quietly up to the housetop, toward evening, and refresh myself with a distant prospect of my estates. It is as dear to me as that of Eton to the poet Gray ; and, if I sometimes wonder at such moments whether I shall find those realms as fair as they appear, I am suddenly reminded that the night air may be noxious, and descending, I enter the little parlor where Prue sits stitching, and surprise that precious woman by exclaiming with the poet's pensive enthusiasm : — 15 25

Thought would destroy their Paradise,  
No more ; — where ignorance is bliss,  
'Tis folly to be wise.

30

Columbus, also, had possessions in the West ; and as I read aloud the romantic story of his life, my voice quivers when I come to the point in which it is related that sweet odors of the land mingled with the sea air, as the admiral's fleet approached the shores ; that tropical birds flew out and fluttered around the ships, glittering in the sun, the gorgeous promises of the new country ; that boughs, perhaps with blossoms not all decayed, floated out to welcome the strange wood from which the craft were 35 40

hollowed. Then I cannot restrain myself. I think of the gorgeous visions I have seen before I have even undertaken the journey to the West, and I cry aloud to Prue, —

“What sun-bright birds, and gorgeous blossoms, and 45  
celestial odors will float out to us, my Prue, as we approach our western possessions !”

The placid Prue raises her eyes to mine with a reproof so delicate that it could not be trusted to words ; and, after a moment, she resumes her knitting and I proceed. 50

These are my western estates, but my finest castles are in Spain. It is a country famously romantic, and my castles are all of perfect proportions, and appropriately set in the most picturesque situations. I have never been to Spain myself, but I have naturally conversed 55  
much with travellers to that country ; although, I must allow, without deriving from them much substantial information about my property there. The wisest of them told me that there were more holders of real estate in Spain than in any other region he had ever heard of, 60  
and they are all great proprietors. Every one of them possesses a multitude of the stateliest castles. From conversation with them you easily gather that each one considers his own castles much the largest and in the loveliest positions. And, after I had heard this said, I verified it, 65  
by discovering that all my immediate neighbors in the city were great Spanish proprietors.

One day as I raised my head from entering some long and tedious accounts in my books, and began to reflect that the quarter was expiring, and that I must begin to 70  
prepare the balance-sheet, I observed my subordinate, in office but not in years (for poor old Titbottom will never see sixty again !), leaning on his hand, and much abstracted.

"Are you not well, Titbottom?" asked I.

75

"Perfectly, but I was just building a castle in Spain," said he.

I looked at his rusty coat, his faded hands, his sad eye, and white hair, for a moment, in great surprise, and then inquired, —

80

"Is it possible that you own property there too?"

He shook his head silently; and still leaning on his hand, and with an expression in his eye as if he were looking upon the most fertile estate of Andalusia, he went on making his plans,—laying out his gardens, I suppose, 85 building terraces for the vines, determining a library with a southern exposure, and resolving which should be the tapestried chamber.

"What a singular whim," thought I, as I watched Titbottom and filled up a check for four hundred dollars, my 90 quarterly salary, "that a man who owns castles in Spain should be deputy bookkeeper at nine hundred dollars a year!"

When I went home I ate my dinner silently, and afterward sat for a long time upon the roof of the house, looking 95 at my western property, and thinking of Titbottom.

It is remarkable that none of the proprietors have ever been to Spain to take possession and report to the rest of us the state of our property there. I, of course, cannot go, I am too much engaged. So is Titbottom. And I 100 find it is the case with all the proprietors. We have so much to detain us at home that we cannot get away. But it is always so with rich men. Prue sighed once as she sat at the window and saw Bourne, the millionaire, the President of innumerable companies, and manager 105 and director of all the charitable societies in town, going by with wrinkled brow and hurried step. I asked her why she sighed.

"Because I was remembering that my mother used to tell me not to desire great riches, for they occasioned 110 great cares," said she.

"They do indeed," answered I, with emphasis, remembering Titbottom, and the impossibility of looking after my Spanish estates.

Prue turned and looked at me with mild surprise ; but 115 I saw that her mind had gone down the street with Bourne. I could never discover if he held much Spanish stock. But I think he does. All the Spanish proprietors have a certain expression. Bourne has it to a remarkable degree. It is a kind of look, as if, in fact, a man's mind were in 120 Spain. Bourne was an old lover of Prue's, and he is not married, which is strange for a man in his position.

It is not easy for me to say how I know so much, as I certainly do, about my castles in Spain. The sun always shines upon them. They stand lofty and fair in 125 a luminous, golden atmosphere, a little hazy and dreamy, perhaps, like the Indian summer, but in which no gales blow and there are no tempests. All the sublime mountains, and beautiful valleys, and soft landscape, that I have not yet seen, are to be found in the grounds. They 130 command a noble view of the Alps ; so fine, indeed, that I should be quite content with the prospect of them from the highest tower of my castle, and not care to go to Switzerland.

The neighboring ruins, too, are as picturesque as those 135 of Italy, and my desire of standing in the Coliseum, and of seeing the shattered arches of the Aqueducts stretching along the Campagna and melting into the Alban Mount, is entirely quenched. The rich gloom of my orange groves is gilded by fruit as brilliant of complexion 140 and exquisite of flavor as any that ever dark-eyed Sorrento girls, looking over the high plastered walls of

southern Italy, hand to the youthful travellers, climbing on donkeys up the narrow lane beneath.

The Nile flows through my grounds. The Desert lies <sup>145</sup> upon their edge, and Damascus stands in my garden. I am given to understand, also, that the Parthenon has been removed to my Spanish possessions. The Golden-Horn is my fish-preserve; my flocks of golden fleece are pastured on the plain of Marathon, and the honey of <sup>150</sup> Hymettus is distilled from the flowers that grow in the vale of Enna — all in my Spanish domains.

From the windows of those castles look the beautiful women whom I have never seen, whose portraits the poets have painted. They wait for me there, and chiefly <sup>155</sup> the fair-haired child, lost to my eyes so long ago, now bloomed into an impossible beauty. The lights that never shone, glance at evening in the vaulted halls, upon banquets that were never spread. The bands I have never collected, play all night long, and enchant the <sup>160</sup> brilliant company, that was never assembled, into silence.

In the long summer mornings the children that I never had, play in the gardens that I never planted. I hear their sweet voices sounding low and far away, calling “Father! father!” I see the lost fair-haired girl, grown <sup>165</sup> now into a woman, descending the stately stairs of my castle in Spain, stepping out upon the lawn, and playing with those children. They bound away together down the garden; but those voices linger, this time airily calling, “Mother! mother!” . . . <sup>170</sup>

As the years go by, I am not conscious that my interest diminishes. If I see that age is subtly sifting his snow in the dark hair of my Prue, I smile, contented, for her hair, dark and heavy as when I first saw it, is all carefully treasured in my castles in Spain. If I feel her arm more <sup>175</sup> heavily leaning upon mine, as we walk around the squares,



I press it closely to my side, for I know that the easy grace of her youth's motion will be restored by the elixir of that Spanish air. If her voice sometimes falls less clearly from her lips, it is no less sweet to me, for the music of her voice's prime fills, freshly as ever, those Spanish halls. If the light I love fades a little from her eyes, I know that the glances she gave me, in our youth, are the eternal sunshine of my castles in Spain.

## ONE GRAND SWEET SONG

CHARLES KINGSLEY

My fairest child, I have no song to give you,  
 No lark could sing 'neath skies so dull and gray,  
 But, if you will, a quiet hint I'll give you  
 For every day, for every day.

I'll teach you how to sing a clearer carol 5  
 Than lark that hails the dawn or breezy down;  
 To win yourself a purer poet's laurel  
 Than Shakspeare's crown.

Be good, sweet maid, and let who will be clever.  
 Do noble things, not dream them all day long; 10  
 And so make life, death, and that vast forever  
 One grand, sweet song.

## SWEET IS THE ROSE

EDMUND SPENSER

Sweet is the rose, but grows upon a brere;  
 Sweet is the juniper, but sharp his bough;  
 Sweet is the eglantine, but pricketh near;  
 Sweet is the firbloom, but his branches rough;

3. *near*, keenly.

Sweet is the cyprus, but his rind is tough; 5  
 Sweet is the nut, but bitter is his pill;  
 Sweet is the broom flower, but yet sour enough;  
 And sweet is moly, but his root is ill;  
 So, every sweet with sour is tempered still,  
 That maketh it be coveted the more: 10  
 For easy things that may be got at will  
 Most sorts of men do set but little store.  
 Why then should I account of little pain,  
 That endless pleasure shall unto me gain?

14. *That* = that which.

## GASPAR BECERRA

HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW

By his evening fire the artist  
 Pondered o'er his secret shame;  
 Baffled, weary, and disheartened,  
 Still he mused, and dreamed of fame.  
  
 'Twas an image of the Virgin 5  
 That had tasked his utmost skill;  
 But alas! his fair ideal  
 Vanished and escaped him still.  
  
 From a distant Eastern island  
 Had the precious wood been brought; 10  
 Day and night the anxious master  
 At his toil untiring wrought;  
  
 Till, discouraged and desponding,  
 Sat he now in shadows deep,  
 And the day's humiliation 15  
 Found oblivion in sleep.

Then a voice cried, "Rise, O master!  
 From the burning brand of oak  
 Shape the thought that stirs within thee!"  
 And the startled artist woke, — 20

Woke, and from the smoking embers  
 Seized and quenched the glowing wood;  
 And therefrom he carved an image,  
 And he saw that it was good.

O thou sculptor, painter, poet! 25  
 Take this lesson to thy heart:  
 That is best which lieth nearest;  
 Shape from that thy work of art.

## WILL

ALFRED TENNYSON

## I

O well for him whose will is strong!  
 He suffers, but he will not suffer long;  
 He suffers, but he cannot suffer wrong;  
 For him nor moves the loud world's random mock,  
 Nor all Calamity's hugest waves confound, 5  
 Who seems a promontory of rock,  
 That, compass'd round with turbulent sound,  
 In middle ocean meets the surging shock,  
 Tempest-buffeted, citadel-crown'd.

## II

But ill for him who, bettering not with time, 10  
 Corrupts the strength of heaven-descended Will,  
 And ever weaker grows thro' acted crime,  
 Or seeming-genial venial fault,

13. *genial* here means harmless.

Recurring and suggesting still!  
He seems as one whose footsteps halt, 15  
Toiling in immeasurable sand,  
And o'er a weary sultry land,  
Far beneath a blazing vault,  
Sown in a wrinkle of the monstrous hill,  
The city sparkles like a grain of salt. 20

HABIT<sup>1</sup>

WILLIAM JAMES

Habit is thus the enormous fly-wheel of society, its most precious conservative agent. It alone is what keeps us all within the bounds of ordinance, and saves the children of fortune from the envious uprisings of the poor. It alone prevents the hardest and most repulsive 5 walks of life from being deserted by those brought up to tread therein. It keeps the fisherman and the deck-hand at sea through the winter; it holds the miner in his darkness, and nails the countryman to his log-cabin and his lonely farm through all the months of snow; it 10 protects us from invasion by the natives of the desert and the frozen zone. It dooms us all to fight out the battle of life upon the lines of our nurture or our early choice, and to make the best of a pursuit that disagrees, because there is no other for which we are fitted, and it 15 is too late to begin again. It keeps different social strata from mixing. Already at the age of twenty-five you see the professional mannerism settling down on the young commercial traveller, on the young doctor, on the young minister, on the young counsellor-at-law. You 20

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from the "Principles of Psychology," by permission of Henry Holt & Co.

see the little lines of cleavage running through the character, the tricks of thought, the prejudices, the ways of the "shop," in a word, from which the man can by and by no more escape than his coat-sleeve can suddenly fall into a new set of folds. On the whole, it is best he <sup>25</sup> should not escape. It is well for the world that in most of us, by the age of thirty, the character has set like plaster, and will never soften again.

## FORBEARANCE

RALPH WALDO EMERSON

Hast thou named all the birds without a gun?  
 Loved the wood-rose, and left it on its stalk?  
 At rich men's tables eaten bread and pulse?  
 Unarmed, faced danger with a heart of trust?  
 And loved so well a high behavior, 5  
 In man or maid, that thou from speech refrained,  
 Nobility more nobly to repay?  
 Oh, be my friend, and teach me to be thine!

## SAY NOT, THE STRUGGLE NOUGHT AVAILETH

ARTHUR HUGH CLOUGH

Say not, the struggle nought availeth,  
 The labor and the wounds are vain,  
 The enemy faints not, nor faileth,  
 And as things have been they remain.

If hopes were dupes, fears may be liars; 5  
 It may be, in yon smoke concealed,  
 Your comrades chase e'en now the fliers,  
 And, but for you, possess the field.

For while the tired waves, vainly breaking,  
    Seem here no painful inch to gain, 10  
Far back, through creeks and inlets making,  
    Comes silent, flooding in, the main.

And not by eastern windows only,  
    When daylight comes, comes in the light;  
In front, the sun climbs slow, how slowly, 15  
    But westward, look, the land is bright.

### THE LADDER OF SAINT AUGUSTINE

HENRY WADSWORTH LONGFELLOW

Saint Augustine! well hast thou said,  
    That of our vices we can frame  
A ladder, if we will but tread  
    Beneath our feet each deed of shame!

All common things, each day's events, 5  
    That with the hour begin and end,  
Our pleasures and our discontents,  
    Are rounds by which we may ascend.

The low desire, the base design,  
    That makes another's virtues less; 10  
The revel of the treacherous wine,  
    And all occasions of excess;

The longing for ignoble things;  
    The strife for triumph more than truth;  
The hardening of the heart that brings 15  
    Irreverence for the dreams of youth;

All thoughts of ill; all evil deeds,  
That have their root in thoughts of ill;  
Whatever hinders or impedes  
The action of the nobler will:

20

All these must first be trampled down  
Beneath our feet, if we would gain  
In the bright fields of fair renown  
The right of eminent domain.

We have not wings, we cannot soar;  
But we have feet to scale and climb  
By slow degrees, by more and more,  
The cloudy summits of our time.

25

The mighty pyramids of stone  
That wedge-like cleave the desert airs,  
When nearer seen and better known,  
Are but gigantic flights of stairs.

30

The distant mountains that uprear  
Their solid bastions to the skies,  
Are crossed by pathways, that appear  
As we to higher levels rise.

35

The heights by great men reached and kept  
Were not attained by sudden flight,  
But they, while their companions slept,  
Were toiling upward in the night.

40

Standing on what too long we bore  
With shoulders bent, and downcast eyes,  
We may discern — unseen before —  
A path to higher destinies.

Nor deem the irrevocable Past  
 As wholly wasted, wholly vain,  
 If, rising on its wrecks, at last  
 To something nobler we attain.

45

## TO A WATER-FOWL

WILLIAM CULLEN BRYANT

Whither, midst falling dew,  
 While glow the heavens with the last steps of day,  
 Far, through their rosy depths, dost thou pursue  
 Thy solitary way?

Vainly the fowler's eye  
 Might mark thy distant flight to do thee wrong,  
 As, darkly painted on the crimson sky,  
 Thy figure floats along.

5

Seek'st thou the plashy brink  
 Of weedy lake, or marge of river wide,  
 Or where the rocking billows rise and sink  
 On the chafed ocean-side?

10

There is a Power whose care  
 Teaches thy way along that pathless coast —  
 The desert and illimitable air —  
 Lone wandering, but not lost.

15

All day thy wings have fanned,  
 At that far height, the cold, thin atmosphere,  
 Yet stoop not, weary, to the welcome land,  
 Though the dark night is near.

20

7-8. Bryant felt the difficulty of a "painting" that moves, but he decided not to change an image for which so much could be said.



And soon that toil shall end;  
Soon shalt thou find a summer home, and rest,  
And scream among thy fellows; reeds shall bend,  
Soon, o'er thy sheltered nest.

Thou'rt gone, the abyss of heaven  
Hath swallowed up thy form; yet, on my heart  
Deeply has sunk the lesson thou hast given,  
And shall not soon depart.

He who, from zone to zone,  
Guides through the boundless sky thy certain flight, 30  
In the long way that I must tread alone,  
Will lead my steps aright.

# CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF BRITISH AND AMERICAN AUTHORS

## SIXTEENTH CENTURY

AUTHOR.	DATE AND NAME OF FIRST WORK.	1 <sup>1</sup>	2	WORK IN PRESENT VOLUME, AND CHAPTER
Edmund Spenser	1569 Theatre of Voluptuous Worldlings	17	77	Sweet is the Rose VII
William Shakspeare	1588? Titus Andronicus	24	52	Hark, hark, the lark VII A Fop VIII

## SEVENTEENTH CENTURY

George Herbert	1631 The Temple	38	40	Sweet day, so cool VII
----------------	-----------------	----	----	------------------------

## EIGHTEENTH CENTURY

Benjamin Franklin	1725 Liberty and Necessity	19	84	Remarks concerning the Savages of North America VIII
Earl of Chatham	1736 (First speech in Parliament)	28	70	The American Revolution II
William Julius Mickle	1761 Knowledge, an Ode	26	53	There's nae luck .VI
Richard Brinsley Sheridan	1775 The Rivals	24	65	Mrs. Malaprop on Education IX

<sup>1</sup> The first number gives the age at which the author published his first volume; the second gives his age at death. There is a great deal of difference, in value, among the first works. For example, those of Herbert, Sheridan, Wordsworth, Scott, Lamb, Byron, Emerson, Ruskin, Barnes, Clough, Whitman, and Symonds are representative of their authors, while those of Mrs. Hemans, Bryant, Longfellow, Holmes, Lowell, and Patmore are crude juvenile performances, now forgotten. Bryant's best poem, *Thanatopsis*, was however written early enough (at 18) to entitle him to a place in the first of the lists just given. It must not be forgotten that some authors wrote much before they published. Some, like Mr. Watts-Dunton, Professor James, Miss Dickinson, and Mr. Canton seem to have courted obscurity as long as possible. A distinguished art critic, Mr. William James Stillman, recently published at seventy a volume of essays which, he

## NINETEENTH CENTURY, FIRST HALF

AUTHOR.	DATE AND NAME OF FIRST WORK.	1	2	WORK IN PRESENT VOLUME, AND CHAPTER.
Walter Savage Lander	1795 Poems	28	89	Rhodopè and Aesop VI
William Wordsworth	1798 Lyrical Ballads	28	80	March VII I wandered lonely VII My heart leaps up VII Helvellyn I
Sir Walter Scott	1805 Lay of the Last Minstrel	34	61	
Sydney Smith	1807 Peter Plimley's Letters	38	74	The Products of Ceylon IX
Charles Lamb	1807 Tales from Shakespeare	32	59	The Young Montagu VIII
Lord Byron	1807 Hours of Idleness	19	46	Swimming IV
Felicia Hemans	1808 Early Blossoms	14	41	Landing of the Pilgrim Fathers III
William Cullen Bryant	1808 The Embargo	14	84	The Twenty-Second of December III The Yellow Violet VII June VII The Death of the Flowers VII November VII To a Water-Fowl X The Sea VII
B. W. Procter (Barry Cornwall)	1820 A Sicilian Story	33	87	
Charles Wolfe	1825 Literary Remains		32	The Burial of Sir John Moore II
Charles Tennyson-Turner	1827 Poems by Two Brothers	19	71	The Lattice at Sunrise VII
Alfred, Lord Tennyson	1827 Poems by Two Brothers	20	83	The Charge of the Light Brigade II The <i>Revenge</i> II In the Children's Hospital III Sir Galahad VIII The Shell VII The Eagle VII

said, he should have been glad to defer another ten years if he had been reasonably sure of ten years. Contrast such solicitude for ripeness with the childish eagerness of Mrs. Hemans, Bryant, and Coventry Patmore! Of course, essays worth the reading imply greater maturity than lyric poetry, — in which the writer needs to express only his own feelings, not a wise judgment on many matters. It is a natural and excellent practice for boys and girls to express their feelings in verse. Yet even in lyric poetry children rarely produce what is worth printing. It is different in music; musical prodigies are common.

NINETEENTH CENTURY, FIRST HALF — *Continued.*

AUTHOR.	DATE AND NAME OF FIRST WORK.	1	2	WORK IN PRESENT VOLUME, AND CHAPTER.
Henry Wadsworth Longfellow	1826 Miscellaneous Poems, with other authors	19	75	The Voyage of Mael-dune V Will X The Arsenal at Springfield III Sand of the Desert in an Hour-Glass V The Secret of the Sea V Sunrise on the Hills VII Gaspar Becerra X The Ladder of Saint Augustine X
Oliver Wendell Holmes	1827 Poetic illustrations of the Athenæum Gallery, with other authors	16	85	The Height of the Ridiculous IX The Last Leaf IX
Edgar Allan Poe	1827 Tamerlane	17	38	The Haunted Palace IV
Caroline Norton	1829 The Sorrows of Rosalie	21	67	The King of Denmark's Ride I
John Greenleaf Whittier	1831 Legends of New England	23	85	The Angels of Buena Vista II Barclay of Ury III
Robert Browning	1833 Pauline	21	77	How they brought the Good News I Tray I Incident of the French Camp II Hervé Riel II Oh! our manhood's prime vigor IV
John Stuart Blackie	1834 Translation of Goethe's Faust	25	84	My Bath IV
Sir Francis Hastings Doyle	1834 Miscellaneous Verses	23	77	The Private of the Buffs II The Loss of the <i>Birkenhead</i> II
John Henry, Cardinal Newman	1835 Parochial Sermons	34	89	The Gentleman VIII
Robert Nicoll	1835 Poems and Lyrics	21	23	The Hero III
Ralph Waldo Emerson	1836 Nature	33	79	Concord Hymn II The Rhodora VII 'Twas one of the charmed days VII The Humble-Bee VII The Snow-Storm VII Tact VIII Forbearance X
William Makepeace Thackeray	1837 Yellowplush Papers	26	52	The End of the Play VIII When Moonlike IX

NINETEENTH CENTURY, FIRST HALF — *Continued*

AUTHOR.	DATE AND NAME OF FIRST WORK.	1	2	WORK IN PRESENT VOLUME, AND CHAPTER.
James Russell Lowell	1838 Class Poem	19	72	Incident of the Fire at Hamburg III To the Dandelion VII
John Ruskin	1843 Modern Painters, v. i	24		The Bird VII Of Vulgarly VIII
William Barnes	1844 Poems in the Dorsetshire dialect	43	85	Mary-Ann's Child VI
Charles Kingsley	1844 Village Sermons	25	56	The Three Fishers III The Old, Old Song VI The Merry Lark VI One Grand, Sweet Song X
Coventry Patmore	1844 Poems	11	73	The Toys VI
Matthew Arnold	1848 The Strayed Reveller	26	66	The Forsaken Merman VI Sohrab and Rustum VI
Arthur Hugh Clough	1848 The Bothie of Tober-Na-Vuolich	29	42	Say not, the struggle X
Sydney Dobell	1850 The Roman	26	50	How's my boy? VI

## NINETEENTH CENTURY, SECOND HALF

George William Curtis	1851 Nile Notes of a Howadji	27	68	My Châteaux X
Gerald Massey	1854 The Ballad of Babe Christabel	26		The Deserter from the Cause II
Richard Doddridge Blackmore	1854 Poems by Melanther	29		The Great Winter IV Driven beyond Endurance IV
Walt Whitman	1855 Leaves of Grass	36	72	Reconciliation III Patrolling Barnegat III The Runner IV Warble for Lilac-Time VII The Cow-Boy V Midshipman Lanyon II The Octopus of the Golden Isles VIII He is an Englishman IX
John Antrobus				
Theodore Watts-Dunton				
William Schwenk Gilbert				
Richard Garnett	1858 Primula	23		The Didactic Poem IX
Thomas Wentworth Higginson	1858 Woman and her Wishes	30		Decoration II
Thomas Ashe	1859 Poems	23	63	Sympathy VII Driving Home the Cows VI
Kate Putnam Osgood				
Robert Buchanan	1866 London Poems	25		Two Sons VI

NINETEENTH CENTURY, SECOND HALF — *Continued*

AUTHOR.	DATE AND NAME OF FIRST WORK.	1	2	WORK IN PRESENT VOLUME, AND CHAPTER.
Sidney Lanier	1867 Tiger Lilies	25	39	Song of the Chattahoochee VII
Sarah Williams	1868 Twilight Hours	27	27	Omâr and the Persian VIII
Andrew Lang	1872 Ballads and Lyrics of Old France	28		Scythe Song VII
George Cary Eggleston	1872 How to Educate Yourself	33		A Plantation Heroine III Two Gentlemen at Petersburg VIII A Breach of Etiquette VIII
Henry Morton Stanley	1872 How I found Livingstone	32		A Meeting in the Heart of Africa V
Richard Jefferies	1873 Reporting, Editing, etc.	25	39	The Physique of a Woodcutter IV The Lyra Prayer IV San Lorenzo Giustini-ani's Mother III
Alice Meynell	1875 Preludes			An Episode VI
John Addington Symonds	1875 The Renaissance in Italy	35	53	
Robert Louis Stevenson	1878 An Inland Voyage	28	44	Heather Ale II
William Watson	1880 The Prince's Quest	22		Changed Voices VII
Emily H. Hickey	1881 A Sculptor	36		A Sea Story III
James Kenneth Stephen	1885 International Law, etc.	26	33	Lapsus Calami IX
Charles Cracroft Lefroy	1885 Echoes of Theocritus	30	36	A Football Player IV Childhood and Youth IV
Arthur Christopher Benson	1886 Memories of Arthur Hamilton	24		Winter Harvests VII
Henry Woodfin Grady	1886 The New South	35	38	The Confederate Soldier after the War III
Rudyard Kipling	1886 Departmental Ditties	21		The Drums of the Fore and Aft II Soldier and Sailor Too II
William Canton	1887 A Lost Epic	42		The Crow VII
William Ernest Henley	1887 A Book of Verses	38		Enter Patient III Operation III
A. Conan Doyle	1888 A Study in Scarlet	29		'Ware Holes III
William James	1890 Principles of Psychology	48		Habit X
Emily Dickinson	1890 Poems (posthumous)		56.	The Railway Train VII The Humming-Bird VII
Norman Gale	1892 A Country Muse	30		Dawn and Dark VII
Ednah Proctor Clarke	1897 An Opal			Hannah the Quakeress III
Charlotte Perkins Stetson				A Man Must Live III

Unique in plan

Complete in treatment

# A First Book in Writing English

BY

EDWIN HERBERT LEWIS, Ph.D.

*Associate Professor of English in Lewis Institute and in the  
University of Chicago.*

---

12mo. Buckram. Price, 80 cents, net

---

“Among the recent educational books that have come to us from America this appears to be *one of the very best*. Every page shows that it is the *work of a practical teacher* who is able to combine a wide knowledge of the theory of composition and a cultivated taste with remarkable ingenuity and practical resource.”

— *English Educational Times.*

“The book is one of the best for high school use that we have seen, *clear in its statements, logical in its arrangements of material*, and provided with a great number of practical exercises and apt, illustrative quotations. — *Dial*.”

---

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

66 FIFTH AVENUE, NEW YORK

# From Chaucer to Arnold

TYPES OF LITERARY ART IN PROSE  
AND VERSE

*AN INTRODUCTION TO ENGLISH LITERATURE  
WITH PREFACE AND NOTES*

BY

ANDREW J. GEORGE, A.M.

*Department of English, High School, Newton, Mass.*

---

Cloth. 8vo. Price, \$1.00, net

---

# Principles of English Grammar

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS

BY

GEORGE R. CARPENTER

*Professor of Rhetoric and English Composition in  
Columbia University*

---

12mo. Half-leather. Price, 75 cents, net

---

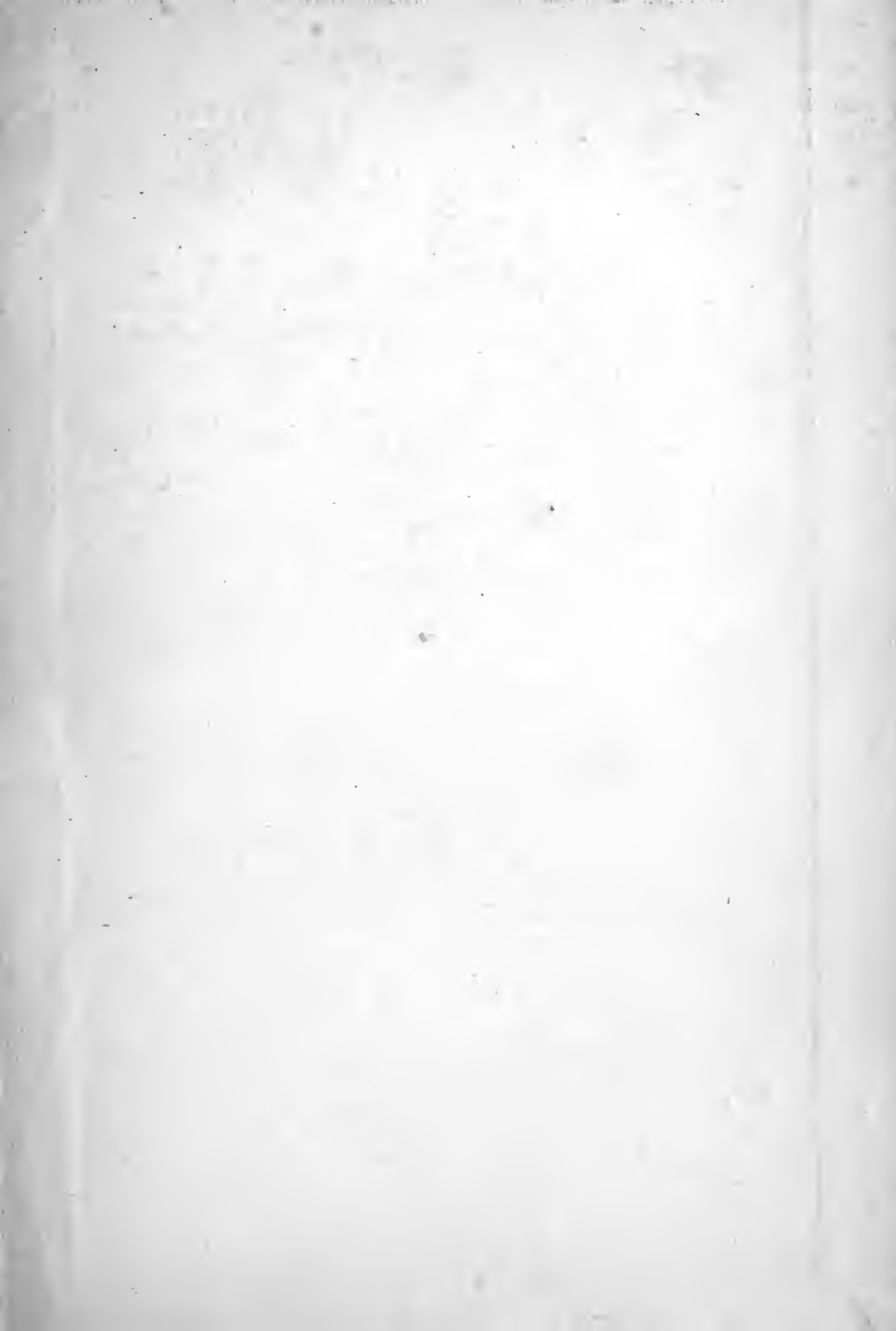
THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

66 FIFTH AVENUE, NEW YORK





MAR 28 1859



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 013 978 406 6